# Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 820SC.

- Read this guide thoroughly before using 820SC to ensure proper usage.
- After reading this guide, keep it on hand for later reference.
- Should you lose or damage this guide, contact Customer Service (●P.14-30).
- Accessible services may be limited by contract conditions or service area.
- SoftBank 820SC is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

### Notes

- Unauthorized copying of any part of this guide is prohibited.
- Contents are subject to change without prior notice.
- Some functions and services are not available in Japan.
- Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this guide. If you find inaccurate or missing information, contact Customer Service (◆P.14-30).
- SoftBank will replace missing/misplaced pages upon request.

Getting Started	1
Basic Operations	2
Calling	3
Messaging	4
Internet Services	5
Digital TV	6
Camera & Imaging	7
Media Player & S! Applications	8
Handy Extras	9
Communication Services	10
Handset Security	11
Connectivity & File Backup	12
Handset Customization	13
Appendix	14

# Chapter Contents At A Glance

Contentsii
Accessoriesv
About This Guidevi
Safety Precautionsviii
General Notes xviii
SAR Certificationxxiii
FCC RF Exposure Information xxiv
European RF Exposure Information xxv
Declaration of Conformity (R&TTE) xxvi

# **Getting Started**

Parts & Functions	1-2
Charging Battery	1-6
Power On/Off	1-9
Handling Precautions	1-9
Minding Mobile Manners	1-10
Security Codes	1-16
Emergency Numbers	1-17
Standby Window	1-18

# 2 Basic Operations

Selecting Functions	2-2
Common Operations	2-6
Standby Display Options	2-6
S! Familiar Usability (Japanese)	2-8
Text Entry	2-9

Text Entry Method	2-10
User's Dictionary	2-14
Phonebook	2-16
Using Phonebook	2-21
Account Details	2-23
Data Folder	2-24
Viewing Files	2-25
Managing Files/Folders	2-28
Face Link	2-32
Memory Card	2-35
Viewing Memory Status	2-37

## 3 Calling

Making a Call	3-2
Receiving a Call	3-3
Answering Machine	3-4
Video Call	3-5
Making a Video Call	3-5
Receiving a Video Call	3-6
Speed Dial	3-7
Call Time & Cost	
Call Log Records	3-9
Global Roaming Service	3-11
Optional Services	3-13
Voice Mail	3-14
Call Forwarding	3-16
Call Waiting	
-	

Conference Call	3-18
Call Barring	3-19
Caller ID	3-22

### 4 Messaging

Messaging Basics	4-2
Custom Mail Address	4-2
Sending S! Mail	4-3
Sending SMS Messages	4-8
Received Messages	4-9
Managing & Using Messages	4-12
Managing Folders	4-16

# 5 Internet Services

5-2
5-3
5-4
5-5
5-6
5-7
5-8
5-9
. 5-13
. 5-14

# 6 Digital TV

About Digital TV	6-2
Getting Started	6-2
Watching TV	6-6
Record/Playback Programs	6-8
TV Timer/TV Timer Recording	6-9

### Camera & Imaging

Mobile Camera	7-2
Camera Mode	7-4
Single Shot	7-5
Capturing Options	7-7
Video Mode	7-11
Recording Video	7-11
Editing Images	7-12
Printing Still Images	7-15
Capturing Options Video Mode Recording Video Editing Images	7-7 7-11 7-11 7-12

### 8 Media Player & S! Applications

Media Player	8-2
Playing Music	8-4
Playing Video	8-6
Using Playlist	8-8
Editing Videos	8-9
S! Applications	8-10
Downloading S! Appli	8-11

### 9 Handy Extras

Alarms	
Saving Calendar Entries	9-3
Calculator	9-5
Currency or Unit Converter	9-5
World Clock	9-7
Notepad	9-7
Tasks	
Voice Recorder	9-9
Voice Recognition	9-10
Bar Code Reader	
Stopwatch	9-14
Dictionary	
File Viewer	9-15
BookSurfing <sup>®</sup> (Japanese)	9-16

### **10** Communication Services

S! Friend's Status	10-2
S! Friend's Status Members List	10-3
S! Circle Talk	10-6
Near Chat (Japanese)	10-10

### 11 Handset Security

Changing Phone Password	11-2
Setting PINs	11-2

Setting USIM Lock	11-4
Locking & Restricting Handset Operations	11-4
Facial Recognition	11-8
Using Facial Recognition	11-8
Restoring Default Settings	11-11

### 12 Connectivity & File Backup

Connectivity	12-2
Infrared	12-2
Infrared Data Transmission	12-3
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup>	12-5
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> Data Transmission	12-6
USB Connection	12-9
Memory Card Backup	. 12-10
Mass Storage	. 12-12
S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)	. 12-13

### 13 Handset Customization

Messaging Settings	13-2
Internet Settings	13-5
Media Player Settings	13-7
Mobile Camera Settings	13-8
S! Appli Settings	13-9
Digital TV Settings	13-9
Phonebook Settings	13-11
Standby Window Settings	13-12

Sounds & Alerts Settings	13-14
Manner Mode Settings	13-15
Display Settings	13-16
Phone Settings	13-18
Security Settings	13-20
Call Settings	13-21
Mode Settings	13-26
Connectivity Settings	13-26
Memory Settings	

# 14 Appendix

Battery & Charger	14-2
USIM Card	14-4
Troubleshooting	14-7
Software Update	14-10
Function List	
Key List for Text Entry	14-14
Symbols & Pictograms	14-15
Memory List	
Specifications	14-17
Index	
Objective Index	14-26
Advanced Settings Index	14-28
Warranty & Service	
Customer Service	

# Accessories

Make sure the following accessories are included in the package with handset. These accessories are sold separately. For details on accessories or optional items, contact Customer Service ( $\bigcirc$  P.14-30).



- 1 Utility Software updates/upgrades may become available via SoftBank Website (http://www.softbank.jp) without prior notice. Please check for the newest versions of Utility Software and download as required.
- 2 Connect to AC Charger ( P.1-6). Two Connector Adapters are included.
- \* Use only specified Charger (Optional) for charging.
- 820SC takes microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Card (not included). Purchase one to use Memory Card functions.
- microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Card is referred to as "Memory Card" in this manual.

# **About This Guide**

In this guide, SoftBank 820SC is referred to as 820SC/handset. Instructions are described using mainly default settings. When settings are changed, screen shots or handset responses may differ from those depicted in this guide.

### Screen Shots and 820SC Illustrations

Screen shots appearing in this guide are for reference only and may differ from actual Display images. Product illustrations may differ from actual product appearances.

### **Confirmations & Warning Messages**

Messages not described in this guide may appear; read all handset confirmations and warning messages carefully.

### **Japanese Functions & Services**

When "(Japanese)" appears in a title, Japanese ability is required to use full range of the function or service.

### Symbols

In this guide, graphics represent 820SC keys; see "Parts & Functions" (OP.1-2). Softkey and Multi Selector operations are indicated as follows.

### Softkeys

Operation options appear at the bottom of Display. Press the corresponding Softkey to execute assigned functions.



### **Softkey Operations**



### **Multi Selector Operations**

Use Multi Selector to select menu items, move cursor, and scroll, etc. In this guide, Multi Selector operations are indicated as shown below.

### **Basic Multi Selector Operations**

· Press □, , , , , or □



### Highlighting

In this guide, "to highlight" means to move cursor to an item.

### **Menu Operations**

Main Menu/Menu operations are simplified with arrows.

### Main Menu



For details, see "Selecting Functions from Main Menu" (●P.2-2).

### Menu



# **Safety Precautions**

- Read these safety precautions before using handset.
- Observe all precautions to avoid injury to yourself and others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage resulting from use of this product.

### **Before Using Handset**

• Symbols

Make sure you thoroughly understand these symbols before reading on. Symbols and their meanings are described below:

<u>∧</u> Danger	Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use
<b>A</b> Warning	Risk of death or serious injury from improper use
<b>A</b> Caution	Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use

### • Symbols



# <u>∧</u>Danger

### Handset, Battery, & Charger

### Use only specified battery and Charger (�P.v).

Using non-specified equipment may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating, or bursting.

### Do not short-circuit Charger Port.

Keep metal objects away from the Charger Port. Keep handset away from jewelry. Battery may leak, overheat, burst, or ignite causing injury. Use a case to carry handset.

### Battery

If battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Rinse with clean water and consult a doctor immediately.

Eyes may be severely damaged.



### Avoid battery leakage, breakage or fire injury. Do not:

- Heat or dispose of battery in a fire.
- Disassemble, modify, or break battery.
- Damage or solder on to battery.
- Use a damaged or deformed battery.
- Use a non-specified charger (●P.v).
- Force battery into handset.
- Charge or place battery near fire, heat sources or expose it to extreme heat.
- Use battery for other equipments.



# **∕**∰Warning

### Handset, Battery, & Charger

### Do not insert foreign objects into handset.

Do not place metal or flammable objects in handset or Charger. This may cause fire or electric shock. Keep handset out of the reach of children.

### Keep handset out of rain or extreme humidity.

Fire or electric shock may occur.

### Keep handset away from liquid-filled containers.

Keep handset and Charger away from chemicals/liquids. Fire or electric shock may result.

### Avoid sources of fire.

To prevent fire or explosion, do not use handset near gas or fine particles (Coal, dust, metal, etc.).

### Keep handset/Charger out of microwave ovens.

Battery or handset may leak, burst, overheat, or ignite.



### Do not disassemble or modify handset.

• Do not open the housing of handset or Charger; it may cause electric shock or injury. Contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance for repairs.



• Do not modify handset or Charger. Fire or electric shock may result.

### Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.

Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents. Use of controls, adjustments, or performance of procedure other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure. As the emission Record from Mobile Light LED used in this product is harmful to the eyes, do not attempt to disassemble the cabinet. Servicing is limited to qualified servicing station only. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance for repairs.

### If water or foreign matter gets inside handset:

Discontinue handset use to prevent fire or electric shock. Turn handset power off, remove battery, unplug Charger and contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.



### Do not subject handset to shocks.

Subjecting handset or Charger to shocks may cause malfunction or injury. Should handset break, remove battery and contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance. Discontinue handset use. Fire or electric shock may occur.

### If an abnormality occurs:



Should there be any unusual sound, smoke, or odor, discontinue handset use to avoid fire or electric shock. Turn

handset power off, remove battery, unplug the Charger, and contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance. Fire or electric shock may result.

```
Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near filling station or places with risk of fire/explosion.
```



Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may lead to fire or explosion.

### Handset

### **Preventing accidents**

 For safety, never use handset while driving. Pull over beforehand. Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law (Effective November 1 2004).



- Do not use headphones while driving or riding a bicycle. Accidents may result.
- Do not turn the volume up so high that ambient sounds cannot be heard, especially when walking in or around traffic to avoid accidents.

### Do not swing handset by the strap.

Injury or breakage may result.

 $\bigcirc$ 

**Turn handset power off before boarding aircraft.** Using wireless devices aboard aircraft may cause electronic malfunctions or endanger aircraft operation.

### **Ringtone & Vibration Settings**

0

Select settings carefully if you have a heart condition or wear a pacemaker/defibrillator.

# During thunderstorms, turn power off; move to a safe place.

There is a risk of a lightning strike or electric shock.

xii

### AC Charger: AC 100V-240V Input SoftBank is not liable for problems caused by charging handset abroad.

Charger

• In-Car Charger: DC 12V/24V Input

Use only the specified voltage.

Do not use handset with wet hands.

Doing so may lead to electric shock or damage to 820SC.

Non-specified voltages may cause fire or electric shock.

### Do not use step up/down transformers.

Use of the AC Charger with step up/down transformers may cause fire, electric shock or damage.

### Do not use In-Car Charger inside vehicles with a positive earth.

Fire may result. Use In-Car Charger only inside vehicles with a

# negative earth.

### Do not touch plug blades with wet hands.

Do not plug multiple cords in one outlet.

Electric shock may occur.

Excess heat or fire may occur.



Do not bend, twist, pull, or set objects on the cord. Do not put heavy objects on the cords or heat or pull the cords.

Fire or electric shock may result.

### Do not short-circuit Charger Port.

Keep the metal away from Port. Overheating, fire, or electric shock may result.

Be sure to secure In-Car Charger. Avoid injury or accidents.

Do not use AC/In-Car Charger if the cord is damaged. Fire or electric shock may be caused. Contact the SoftBank Customer Assistance to replace the cord.

### During thunderstorms:

Unplug Charger to avoid damage, fire, or electric shock.

### Keep Charger out of the reach of children. Electric shock or injury may result.













### Battery

**If battery does not charge properly, stop charging.** Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.



If there is leakage or abnormal odor, keep battery away from fire sources.

It may catch fire or burst.

If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration, or distortion, remove battery from handset.



It may leak, overheat, or explode.

### Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

### People with implanted pacemakers/defibrillators should keep handset more than 22 cm away. Implanted pacemakers/defibrillators may malfunction due to

radio waves.

Turn handset power off in crowded places such as trains. People with implanted pacemakers/ defibrillators may be near.



Implanted pacemakers/defibrillators may malfunction due to radio waves.

Observe these rules inside medical facilities:

• Do not take handset into operating rooms or Intensive or Coronary Care Units.



- Keep handset off in hospitals.
- Keep handset off in hospital lobbies. Electronic equipment may be near.
- Obey rules regarding mobile phone use in medical facilities.

Consult the manufacturer of other electronic medical equipment about radio wave effects.



# Caution

### Handset, Battery, & Charger

### Handset Care

- Place 820SC on stable surfaces to avoid malfunction or injury.
- Keep 820SC away from oily smoke or steam. Fire or accidents may result.
- Cold air from air conditioners may condense, resulting in leakage, or burnout.
- Keep 820SC away from direct sunlight (Inside vehicles, etc.) or heat sources. Distortion, discoloration, or fire may occur. Battery shape may be affected.
- Keep 820SC out of extremely cold places to avoid malfunction or accidents
- Keep 820SC away from fire sources to avoid malfunction or accidents.

### **Usage Environment**

- Excessive dust may prevent heat release and cause burnout or fire.
- Avoid using 820SC on the beach. Sand may cause malfunction or accidents.
- Keep 820SC away from credit cards, phone cards, etc. to avoid data loss.

### Handset

### 820SC temperature



820SC may become hot while in use. Avoid prolonged contact with skin especially at high temperature. May cause burn iniuries.

Avoid leaving 820SC in extreme heat (Inside vehicles, etc.).

Handset may heat up and lead to burns.

### Volume settings

Keep handset volume moderate.

Excessive volume may cause damage to your hearing.

### Headphones

- Do not unplug by pulling the cord: may damage the cord.



• Keep the plug clean to avoid noise or malfunction.

### Inside vehicles:

Handset use may cause other electronic equipment to malfunction.



# Should skin irritation occur, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.



Skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness may result depending on your physical condition.

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (Display side)	PC
Housing (Sub Display side)	PC + GF40%
Housing (Keys side)	PC + GF20%
Keypad	PC
Multi Selector	PC + Acrylic
Earpiece Ornament	SUS
Charger/External Device Port Cover	PC + Urethane
Battery Cover	PC + ABS
Side keys	ABS + Urethane
CAMERA DECO	PC + ABS

### Charger

### Charger & In-Car Charger

- Grasp the plug (not the cord) to disconnect Charger. Otherwise, fire or electric shock may result.
- Keep the cord away from heaters. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.
- Stop use if the plug is hot or improperly connected. Fire or electric shock may result.



 $\overline{\mathcal{S}}$ 

• Keep In-Car Charger socket clean. If might overheat and cause injury.

### Use only the specified fuse.

A 1A fuse is specified for In-Car Charger. An improper fuse may cause damage or fire.

Always charge 820SC in a well-ventilated area. Avoid covering/wrapping Charger; may cause damage or fire.

**Do not use In-Car Charger when engine is off.** Start engine before use; may weaken car battery.

# Disconnect AC/In-Car Charger during long periods of disuse.



### Handset Maintenance

When cleaning, disconnect AC/In-Car Charger to prevent shock or injury.

### Installing In-Car Charger

Properly position the cable for safe driving to avoid injury or accidents.



### Battery

### Keep battery out of the reach of children.

They may sustain injuries. And when using, do not let them remove battery from handset.



### Do not leave battery in direct sunlight or inside vehicles.



Overheating or fire may occur and performance may be reduced

### Do not expose battery to liquids.

Performance may deteriorate.

If battery fluid makes contact with skin or clothes:

Rinse with clean water immediately.



Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse.

Tape over battery terminals before disposal, or bring them to a SoftBank shop. Follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.

Do not throw or abuse battery. Battery may overheat, burst, or ignite.

Charge battery within a range of 5°C- 40°C. Battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.

If a child is using handset, explain all these instructions and supervise handset's usage.

If there is any abnormal odor or excessive heat, stop using battery and call the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

Do not leave battery uncharged.

Charge at least once every six months.



xvii





# **General Notes**

### **General Use**

- SoftBank is not liable for any damage resulting from accidental loss/ alteration of any data on handset/Memory Card. Please keep separate records of Phonebook entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels, or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.

### • Beware of eavesdropping.

Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.

### Eavesdropping

Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

### **Inside Vehicles**

- Never use handset while driving.
- Do not park illegally to use handset.
- Handset use may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

### **Aboard Aircraft**

• Never use handset aboard aircraft (Keep the power off). Handset use may impair aircraft operation.

### **Function Usage Limits**

- The following functions are disabled after handset upgrade/ replacement or service cancellation:
  - Camera
  - Media Player
  - S! Appli
  - TV
- After a long period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; establish a Network connection to restore usability.

### **Handset Care**

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damage.
- Use handset between 5°C 40°C. Avoid extreme temperatures/direct sunlight.
- Exposing the lens to direct sunlight may damage the color filter and affect image color.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- Clean handset with a dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Do not expose handset to rain, snow, or high humidity.
- Never disassemble or modify handset.
- Avoid scratching Display.
- When closing handset, keep straps, etc. outside to avoid damaging Display.
- When using headphones, moderate the volume to avoid sound bleed.

- Handset is not water-proof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.
  - Keep handset away from precipitation.
  - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
  - Avoid placing handset in damp places (Restrooms, bath/shower rooms, etc.).
  - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
  - Perspiration may get inside handset causing malfunction.
- Heavy objects or excessive pressure should be avoided. This may cause malfunction or injury.
  - Do not sit down with handset in a back pocket.
  - Do not place heavy objects on handset in a bag.
- Insert only specified devices into Headphone Port. Malfunction or damage may result.
- Always turn power off before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.

### Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials for copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only.

Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

The software contained in 820SC is copy protected material; copyright, moral right, and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile, or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

### Trademarks

 Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307	5,490,165	5,056,109	5,504,773	5,101,501
5,506,865	5,109,390	5,511,073	5,228,054	5,535,239
5,267,261	5,544,196	5,267,262	5,568,483	5,337,338
5,600,754	5,414,796	5,657,420	5,416,797	5,659,569
5,710,784	5,778,338			

- Video Call, S! Mail, PC site browser, S! Quick News, S! Town, S! Loop, S! Appli, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Near Chat, S! Addressbook Back-up, S! Familiar Usability, Arrange Mail and 3D Pictogram are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
- "BookSurfing<sup>®</sup>" is a trademark or registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY Inc.
- "SOFTBANK", SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.
- "Yahoo!", the "Yahoo!" and "Y!" logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

 This product contains ACCESS Co., Ltd.'s NetFront Internet browser software. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and in other countries.

### A@@ESS NetFront

- Part of the software in this product incorporates a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.
- Contains Macromedia<sup>®</sup> Flash<sup>®</sup> Flash Lite<sup>™</sup> technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated.
- Copyright© 1995-2005 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.

- Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash, and Macromedia Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.
- JBlend<sup>™</sup> is incorporated in this product. JBlend<sup>™</sup> is a Java<sup>™</sup> execution environment developed by Aplix Corporation for implementing advanced performance and fast operation on small-memory systems.
- Powered by JBlend<sup>™</sup> Technology.
   JBlend and JBlend logos are registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.



- Powered by JBlend<sup>™</sup>, ©1997-2006 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
- JBlend and all JBlend-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



- "Chaku-Uta<sup>®</sup>" and "Chaku-Uta Full<sup>®</sup>" are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment Corp.
- microSD<sup>™</sup> is a trademark of SD Association.



- Bluetooth is a trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Samsung Electronics is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.
- Powered by SwiftDecoder<sup>™</sup> Copyright ©1996-2007, Omniplanar, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

### Bluetooth®

In the frequency band of the Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> functions of 820SC, Industrial, scientific or medical equipments such as microwave ovens or in-house radio stations such as the ones used in production lines or by amateur radio stations (Referred to as "other radio stations" hereafter) are used. In order to prevent radio interference with other radio equipments, follow the points listed below in using handset.

- Before using Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> functions, confirm there are no "other radio stations" operating near you.
- In case there is a radio interference with "other radio stations," move to some other place or stop the Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> functions (Stop emitting the radio waves) immediately.
- If you have any questions or problems with Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> emissions, contact SoftBank as listed below:

### Contact: SoftBank Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial 157 (toll free) for General Information. See "Customer Service" (€P.14-30) for landline numbers by service area.

820SC transmits on the 2.4 GHz band, employing frequency-hopping spread spectrum (FHSS) modulation, with resistance to radio frequency interference between 1.5 - 5 meters, depending on usage environment.

# **SAR Certification**

820SC meets the technical standards of Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) regarding radio wave absorption by a human body.

These technical standards are established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones that are used close to human head from affecting human health. These standards assure that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed the permissive value of 2W/kg\*. This value includes a substantial safety margin designated to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

The highest SAR value for 820SC is 0.056 W/kg. This value is obtained in accordance with the MIC testing procedure with the mobile phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in the SAR levels depending on phones, they all meet the MIC's permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to employ the minimum power level required for the communication with the base station, the SAR of the phone during a call is usually below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

MIC: http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/j/ele/index.htm

ARIB: http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html

\* The guideline is defined by relevant laws and regulations associated with the Radio Law (No. 2 of Article 14 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment).

# **FCC RF Exposure Information**

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver.

It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organisations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g., at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model handset when tested for use at the ear is 0.077 W/kg and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 0.171 W/kg.

Body-worn Operation; This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and

the back of the handset. The use of belt clips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorisation for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid after searching on FCC ID A3L820SC.

Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website at http://www.phonefacts.net.

# **European RF Exposure Information**

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when tested at the ear was 0.138 W/kg\*. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide. In this case, the highest tested SAR value is 0.482 W/kg.

As SAR is measured utilizing the devices highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a hands-free device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body. \* The tests are carried out in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

VVVV	
~~~	L

SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS

SAMSUNG

# Declaration of Conformity (R&TTE)

We,

# Electronics Samsung

declare under our sole responsibility that the product

# 820SC Phone : **GSM** Mobile

to which this declaration relates, is in conformity with the following standards and/or other normative documents.

SAFETY	EN 60950-1:2001+A11:2004
EMC	EN 301 489- 01 V1.5.1 (11-2004) EN 301 489- 07 V1.2.1 (08-2002) EN 301 489- 17 V1.2.1 (08-2002) EN 301 489- 24 V1.2.1 (11-2002)
SAR	EN 50360 : 2001 EN 62209-1 : 2006
RADIO	EN 301 511 V9.0.2 (03-2003) EN 300 328 V1.6.1 (11-2004) EN 301 908- 1 V2.2.1 (10-2003) EN 301 908- 2 V2.2.1 (10-2003)

We hereby declare that [all essential radio test suites have been carried out and that] the above named product is in conformity to all the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC.

The conformity assessment procedure referred to in Article 10 and detailed in Annex[ $\mathrm{IV}$ ] of Directive 1999/5/EC has been followed with the involvement of the following Notified Body(ies):

Walton-on-Thames, Surrey, KT12 2TD, UK \* BABT, Balfour House, Churchfield Road, Identification mark: 0168

The technical documentation kept at :

€€0168

Samsung Electronics QA Lab.

which will be made available upon request. (Representative in the EU)

Samsung Electronics Euro QA Lab. Blackbushe Business Park, Saxony Way, Yateley, Hampshire, GU46 6GG, UK \*\*

R i pa

Yong-Sang Park / S. Manager

(place and date of issue)

2008.01.04

(name and signature of authorised person)

nber of Samsung # It is not the address of Samsung Service Centre. For the address or the phone number of Service Centre, see the warranty card or contact the retailer where you purchased your ph

# **Getting Started**

Parts & Functions
Handset
Display Indicators
Sub Display
Display Positions
Charging Battery1-6
AC Charger
In-Car Charger (Optional)
Power On/Off
Handling Precautions
Key Lock
Minding Mobile Manners
Manner Related Functions 1-10
Offline Mode
Manner Key
Mode Settings
Changing Mode Settings
Security Codes1-16
Phone Password
Center Access Code 1-16
Network Password 1-17
Emergency Numbers1-17



Standby Window
Standby Window Settings
Standby Window Modes
Shortcut Mode
News Mode 1-20
Communication Mode
Advanced Settings
Standby Window Settings 1-22

### Parts & Functions

Handset





26 27

28

29

30 81



- Internal Camera Capture your own image or make Video Calls.
- 3 Touch Key

Activate Digital TV or Camera in Viewer Position.

- Oisplay
- Deft Softkey/Mail Key Open Messaging menu or execute Left Softkey command/function.
- Media Player/Character Key Activate Media Player or toggle text entry modes.
- Clear/Back Key
   Delete entered text or return to the previous operation step.

8 Start Key Make and receive Voice Calls.

9 (★:) ★ Key

Enter pictograms or press for 1+ seconds to open My status.

10 Internal Antenna



Select menu items, move cursor, scroll window.

P r Right Softkey/Yahoo! Keitai Key Open Messaging menu or execute Right Softkey command/function.

### (B) Center Key

Open Main Menu or execute Center Softkey command/function

- 🚯 🔝 Switch Bar Key Open Switch Bar (
  P.2-3).
- 1 Power/End Kev Turn power on/off or end operations.
- 16 🗔 🖃 👘 Keypad Enter numbers or characters and select menu items
- 1 # #/Manner Key Enter symbols or press for 1+ seconds to activate or

cancel Manner mode

- 18 Microphone
- 19 External Light Flashes for Missed Call or Incoming Call/Mail; illuminates red while charging.
- 20 Strap Eyelet
- (2) Infrared Port Use for infrared data transmissions.
- 22 Sub Display
- 23 Mobile Light

Use as a strobe when capturing images in low light.

24 External Camera

Capture images or send video during a Video Call.

23 External Antenna Use for Digital TV reception.

### 26 Battery Cover

Open to insert or remove Battery or USIM/Memory Card

20 Charger/External Device Port

Connect Charger, Stereo Earphone Microphone, etc here

2 🛍 Side Kev

Raise ringer or Media Player volume. Open S! Circle Talk members list or enlarge Video Call image.

2 🖻 Side Key

Lower ringer or Media Player volume, Reduce Video Call image.

👀 🧰 Camera Key

Press for 2+ seconds to activate Camera: press to capture image or record video.

3 🕲 TV Key

Internal Antenna

820SC transmits and receives signals via Internal Antenna There is no external antenna Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over the area containing Internal Antenna. Voice guality may vary by where/how handset is used.

### **Display Indicators**



- 1 YII Signal Strength (more bars II indicate stronger signal)
  - 圏外 Out-of-Range (Language set to Japanese)
  - Out Out-of-Range (Language set to English or か オ 어)
  - 划 Offline Mode
- 3G Network Connected
  - G 3G Network Connected (Ready)
  - G 3G Network Connected (In Use)
  - Packet Communication Unable
  - SSL Connected
  - GSM Network Connected
  - GSM Network Connected (Ready)
  - GSM Network Connected (In Use)
  - Voice Call in Progress
  - Video Call in Progress
  - Receiving S! Circle Talk
  - (0) My status Online
- 3 🖂 New Message 🗟 Downloading Content Key

**Getting Startec** 

### 4 🙉 S! Appli Active

- 🎮 S! Appli Paused
- Receiving S! Appli Request
- 📓 Music Playback
- 📕 Music Paused
- 💼 Recording TV program
- 🛅 Reservation Set
- 6 Memory Card Inserted
  - 🗟 Loading Memory Card Data
  - 🕼 Software Update Required
  - 💂 PC Site Browser Connected
  - Our Content of Cont
- 6 💹 (Blue) Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Activated
  - (Flashing in Blue & Red) Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Transmission
  - Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Packet Data in Transmission
  - Real in Progress with Bluetooth® Activated
  - (Blue) USB Connected
  - 📌 USB Connection
  - 🔊 (Gray) Infrared Data in Transmission
  - (Red) Infrared Data Transmission Activated
  - $\odot$  Data Synchronized
- 7 🗑 Manner Mode
  - 🖚 Drive Mode
  - 🔛 Meeting Mode
  - 🟃 Outdoor Mode
- Battery Strong
   Battery Moderate
   Battery Low

(Flashing) Battery Weak (Charge Now)

- 9 Coice Mail/Call Forwarding (No reply) Activated
  - Answering Machine Activated
  - 🗟 S! Mail Memory Full
  - SMS Memory Full
  - Alarm Set
  - Unheard Answering Machine Message
  - 🟙 Unheard Voice Mail
  - 👸 All Keys Locked
  - Password Locked
  - Secret Mode Set
  - E S! Friend's Status Request
  - Unread S! Friend's Status Notification
  - Roaming Activated
- Other than Off for Voice call in Volume, and other than Off for Voice call in Vibration Set
  - Other than Off for Voice call in Volume, and Off for Voice call in Vibration Set
  - Off for Voice call in Volume, and other than Off for Voice call in Vibration Set
  - Off for Voice call in Volume, and Off for Voice call in Vibration Set

 When 平 (Red) appears, only Packet Communications and Outgoing S! Mail are available; Calls, Incoming S! Mail, and SMS Service are all disabled.

### **Sub Display**

When 820SC is closed, press Side Keys to illuminate Backlight; shows current time or incoming notifications.



- Signal Strength (more bars III Indicate stronger signal)
- 2 New Message
- Manner Mode, and other than Off for Voice call in Vibration Set
- 4 III Battery Strong
  - Battery Moderate
  - Battery Low
  - Battery Weak (Charge Now)
- The number of Missed Call, Incoming Mail, or Delivery Report (For Incoming Call/Mail, phone number or mail address with animation appears; while playing back music, track title appears.)

1

### **Display Positions**

Use 820SC with Display in one of the following three positions.

### **Closed Position**

Close 820SC with Display facing inward. Always carry or store handset in closed position.



### **Open Position**

Open 820SC with Display facing inward. Use Keypad to call, message, navigate menus, etc.



### **Viewer Position**

Open 820SC, rotate Display clockwise and close 820SC with Display facing outward. Set TV or Camera to activate automatically in Viewer Position (• P.13-19).

Use Side Keys or Touch Keys for TV or Camera operations.



### Note

- In Viewer Position, earphone microphone must be connected to answer calls. Change 820SC to Open Position to answer an incoming call.
- Carrying handset in Viewer Position may damage Display.

### **Charging Battery**

- If handset is on while Charger is connected, battery indicator shows charge level, charging as follows:
- $\square \rightarrow \square \rightarrow \square \rightarrow \square$  flashes when battery is fully charged. If handset is off, Charging ... appears while charging and when battery is charged, Battery full appears. External Light illuminates while charging.
- An empty battery requires 180 minutes (approx.) to charge with power off. Charging time may vary by ambient temperature.

### **AC Charger**



### Attach SBM Charger Connector Adapter to AC Charger

SBM Charger Connector Adapter AC Charger Connector

**Open Port Cover and insert** SBM Charger Connector Adapter into External Device Port



1



### Plug AC Charger into an AC 100 V outlet





### When battery is charged, disconnect handset, close Port Cover, and unplug AC Charger



### **USB Charging**

Connect 820SC to PC via USB Cable to charge battery. Battery will be charged when handset is connected. Connect handset to a PC via supplied USB Cable to charge battery.



- Open Port Cover and insert USB Cable Connector into External Device Port
- Insert USB Plug into a PC USB port
- 3
  - When battery is charged, disconnect handset, close Port Cover, and remove USB Plug
  - USB Charging takes longer; charging time varies by PC. A weak battery may not charge via USB.

### In-Car Charger (Optional)



Open Port Cover and insert Connector into External Device Port



Plug charger connector into

In-Car Charger socket

**3** Start the car's engine

When battery is charged, disconnect handset and then unplug In-Car Charger



• See In-Car Charger manual (Japanese) for details. For safety, use In-Car Holder with In-Car Charger.

### Note

- Do not charge battery inside a closed automobile in direct sunlight.
- Use In-Car Charger in cars with a negative earth only (DC 12/24V).

Charger Connector (with △ up) Port Cover

### Power On/Off

### Power On







Standby

### Note

 Gently open 820SC with both hands. Excessive force may cause damage.

 To confirm handset phone number, press **D**.<sup>m</sup>. Your phone number appears in Account details. Edit or use contents (€P.2-23).

 When handset is left open without operations, Display automatically shuts down to conserve power (€P.13-16).

- pressed or a function requiring a network connection is activated, Retrieve NW info confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions and choose Yes
  - Retrieve NW info confirmation appears after replacing USIM Card or executing All reset.
- Retrieving Network Info sets time and date. Network Services (Messaging, Yahoo! Keitai, S! Friend's Status, and S! Circle Talk) are available.
- Retrieve Network Info manually (●P.13-27).
- This guide describes operations with time and date set unless noted otherwise.

(2+ seconds)

### Power Off



 SoftBank logo appears and 820SC powers off

Note

• When powering off, be sure to press 📀 for 2+ seconds.

### **Handling Precautions**

Note these precautions when handling 820SC.

- Avoid carrying open handset to prevent damage.
- Lock keys before carrying 820SC in a pocket.
- When carrying AC Charger, retract plug blades. Do not pull/twist power cord; doing so may damage the cord.

### **Key Lock**

Activate or cancel Key Lock in Standby with 820SC open.



- When keys are locked, 🙀 appears in Standby. When any key is pressed, Unlock Keys message appears.
- In Standby, with 820SC in Open Position, press for 1+ seconds to cancel Key Lock.
- With 820SC in Open/Viewer Position, press for 2+ seconds. Unlock Keys message appears. Choose Yes to activate Camera
#### **Minding Mobile Manners**

Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset.

- Turn your handset off in theaters, museums, and other places where silence is the norm.
- Keep your handset off aboard airplanes, inside hospitals, or in other places where handset use is prohibited.
- Refrain from using your handset in quiet places such as restaurants, hotel lobbies, or elevators.
- Observe announcements or posted instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from handset use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

#### **Manner Related Functions**

820SC offers two manner-related modes.

Manner mode

Mute handset sounds and activate Vibration for all alerts, tones, and alarms. Use Manner Key to activate or cancel Manner mode.

Offline mode

Temporarily suspends all handset transmissions. Other functions may be used. Without activating Manner mode or Offline mode, activate Vibration or mute handset tones from *Sounds & Alerts*.

#### **Offline Mode**





#### 2 On or Off

 If handset powers off in Offline mode, Offline mode activation confirmation appears the next time 820SC powers on. Press r (No) for Normal mode.

#### Manner Key

Use Manner Key to toggle Manner mode. In Standby, press # , for 1+ seconds to activate or cancel Manner mode. Using # , to cancel Manner mode returns 820SC to whatever mode was previously in use.



- When Manner mode is active, 🗒 appears.
- Even when Manner mode is active, shutter click sounds for Camera.

# Getting Started

#### **Mode Settings**

820SC features five modes, including Manner.

1	$\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Mode$
	settings



Normal, Manner, Drive, Meeting, or Outdoor

#### Modes

Select mode by usage; edit Normal mode or Manner mode settings as required (€P.1-11).

Mode	Description
4	All Sounds & Alerts settings
Normal Mode <sup>*</sup>	apply
😭 Manner Mode	Mutes 820SC system sounds
Crive Mode	Mutes ringer; plays Driving Message and activates Answer
bille liloae	Phone for calls
1	Mutes Ringtones & Keypad
Meeting Mode	tones
🔆 Outdoor Mode	Maximizes tone volume

\* Normal mode indicator does not appear in Standby.

#### **Changing Mode Settings**

Change incoming transmission response by mode.



#### ■ To set ringtone for Voice Call, Video Call, or S! Circle Talk

 $\begin{array}{l} \textit{Ringtone} \rightarrow \textit{Voice call, Video call,} \\ \textit{or S! Circle Talk} \rightarrow \textit{Select a file} \\ \textit{location} \rightarrow \textit{Highlight a file} \rightarrow \textcircled{P} \\ \textit{(Play)} \rightarrow \fbox{Y} \\ \textit{(Select)} \end{array}$ 

#### To set other ringtones

#### duration

Ringtone → Message, S! Friend's Status, Missed call notification, S! Quick News, or Delivery report → Duration → Enter a time To set Vibration

 $\begin{array}{l} \textit{Vibration} \rightarrow \textit{Select item to set} \rightarrow \\ \textit{Off or Pattern 1 to Pattern 5} \rightarrow \\ \hline \end{tabular} (\textit{Play}) \rightarrow \hline \end{tabular} (\textit{Select}) \end{array}$ 

#### To set Keypad tones

Phone sounds  $\rightarrow$  Keypad tones  $\rightarrow$  Beep, Xylophone, or Off

#### ■ To set System sounds for S! Circle Talk

Phone sounds  $\rightarrow$  S! Circle Talk  $\rightarrow$ Animal, Bird, Fantasy, Game, Joke, Xylophone, or P1  $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Play)  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Select) **To set System sounds** 

*Phone sounds*  $\rightarrow$  *System sounds* 

 $\rightarrow$  Check item to set  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save)

#### To set External light

External light  $\rightarrow$  Incoming or Notification  $\rightarrow$  Select an item  $\rightarrow$ On or Off

For details on items, see Mode Settings
 (●P.1-13) and System Sounds (●P.1-16).

- If *Ringtone reducer* is *On*, ringtone volume is reduced to Level 1 for the first two seconds, regardless of Ringtone volume set for Voice/Video Call.
- Use 圖/ to adjust ringtone volume while 820SC rings.
- To mute Voice/Video Call or Message tones, set Volume and Vibration to Off. 🕅 appears.
- Open Sounds & Alerts to change sounds for Normal mode. Settings cannot be changed for other modes.
- Open *Manner mode settings* to change Manner settings.

#### Mode Settings

Available items vary by mode. Defaults are as listed below.

Mode	Normal	Manner	Drive	Meeting	Outdoor
Volume					
Voice call	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Video call	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Message	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
S! Friend's Status	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
S! Circle Talk	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Missed call notification	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
S! Quick News	Off	N/A	N/A	Off	Off
Delivery report	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Phone sounds	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Ringtone		•	•		
Assign tone					
Voice call	Right Here.mmf	N/A	N/A	Right Here.mmf	Right Here.mmf
Video call	Revelation.mmf	N/A	N/A	Revelation.mmf	Revelation.mmf
Message	Sunny day.mp4	N/A	N/A	Sunny day.mp4	Sunny day.mp4
S! Friend's Status	Sunny day.mp4	N/A	N/A	Sunny day.mp4	Sunny day.mp4
S! Circle Talk	Sunny day.mp4	N/A	N/A	Sunny day.mp4	Sunny day.mp4
Missed call notification	Sunny day.mp4	N/A	N/A	Sunny day.mp4	Sunny day.mp4
S! Quick News	Sunny day.mp4	N/A	N/A	Sunny day.mp4	Sunny day.mp4
Delivery report	Sunny day.mp4	N/A	N/A	Sunny day.mp4	Sunny day.mp4

1

Mode	e Normal	Manner	Drive	Meeting	Outdoor
Ringtone					
Duration					
Message	5 seconds	N/A	N/A	5 seconds	5 seconds
S! Friend's Status	5 seconds	N/A	N/A	5 seconds	5 seconds
Missed call notification	5 seconds	N/A	N/A	5 seconds	5 seconds
S! Quick News	5 seconds	N/A	N/A	5 seconds	5 seconds
Delivery report	5 seconds	N/A	N/A	5 seconds	5 seconds
Vibration					
Voice call	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Video call	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Message	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
S! Friend's Status	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
S! Circle Talk	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Missed call notification	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
S! Quick News	Off	Off	N/A	Off	Off
Delivery report	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Phone sounds	•	•	•	•	•
Keypad tones	Xylophone	N/A	N/A	Xylophone	Xylophone
S! Circle Talk	Xylophone	N/A	N/A	Xylophone	Xylophone
System sounds	Several tones on	Alerts on call	N/A	Alerts on call	Several tones on

1

1-14

Mode	Normal	Manner	Drive	Meeting	Outdoor
External light					
Incoming					
Voice call	On	On	On	On	On
Video call	On	On	On	On	On
Message	On	On	On	On	On
S! Friend's Status	On	On	On	On	On
S! Circle Talk	On	On	On	On	On
Missed call notification	On	On	On	On	On
Notification					
Missed call	On	On	On	On	On
Message	On	On	On	On	On
Answering Machine	On	On	On	On	On
S! Friend's Status	On	On	On	On	On
Missed call notification	On	On	On	On	On
Answering Machine	Off	On	On*	Off	Off

1

\* Answering Machine activates automatically in Drive mode and cannot be disabled.

#### System Sounds

Available items vary by mode. Volume level set in *System sounds* applies to all Phone sounds.

Item	Description
All	Check/uncheck all items.
Popup box alerts	Sounds for confirmations/ warnings.
Minute minder	Sounds about once a minute during calls.
Call connect tone	Sounds before called phone rings to notify the call is going to be connected.
Call end tone	Sounds when a call ends.
Power on	Sounds when the power is turned on.
Power off	Sounds when power is turned off.
Open/Close folder	Sounds when 820SC is opened/closed.
Alerts on call	Sounds for alarms/incoming transmissions during a call.

#### Advanced

#### Settings

- Adjust volume ( P.13-14)
- Set ringtone other than Voice Call (IPP P.13-14)
- Set ringtone duration other than Voice Call (IPP P.13-14)
- Set Vibration (IPP P.13-14, P.13-15)
- Set Keypad tones (IPP P.13-14)
- Set system sounds for S! Circle Talk (IPP P.13-14)
- Set system sounds (IPP P.13-14, P.13-15)
- Illuminate External Light for incoming transmissions (IPP P.13-14, P.13-15)
- Illuminate External Light for missed calls (IPP.13-14, P.13-15)
- Set Answering Machine (IPP P.13-15)
- Activate or cancel automatic ringer reduction (IPP P.13-25)
- Change mode (IPP P.13-26)

#### **Security Codes**

Phone Password, Center Access Code and Network Password are required are required to use 820SC.

#### **Phone Password**

The 4-digit number (9999 by default) is required to operate/change some handset functions.

- Entered Phone Password digits are represented with \*.
- If incorrect, an error message appears. Try again
- Phone Password can be changed on 820SC (●P.11-2).

#### **Center Access Code**

4-digit number specified at subscription; required to change service subscriptions or to operate handset from landlines.

#### **Network Password**

4-digit number specified at subscription, required to restrict handset services. Entering incorrect Network Password 3 consecutive times locks Call Barring settings. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact Customer Service (●P.14-30).

 Network Password can be changed on 820SC (OP.3-21).

#### Note

 Write down Phone Password, Center Access Code, and Network Password. If you lose a code, contact Customer Service (€P.14-30).
 Do not reveal Phone Password, Center Access Code, or Network Password to others. SoftBank is not liable for damage caused by misuse of these codes by others.

#### **Emergency Numbers**

Call 110 (Police), 119 (Fire & Ambulance) or 118 (Maritime Safety Agency). These numbers can be dialed even when certain Call Barring settings are active. See details below.

820SC Status	Emergency Numbers
Offline mode activated ( ◆P.1-10)	None
Call Cost limit exceeded (●P.13-23)	110, 119, 118
Phone lock activated (€P.11-4)	None
Password lock activated (€P.11-5)	110, 119, 118
Required PIN not entered (●P.11-2)	None
USIM Card not be authenticated (€P.11-4)	None
Outgoing Call Barring activated (●P.3-19)	110, 119, 118

#### **Emergency Location Report**

When calls are placed to Police or other emergency agencies from 820SC, handset location information is automatically sent to the corresponding agency. 820SC transmits location based on base station positioning information.

- Location accuracy may vary by geography or signal conditions. Always verify your location with address or nearby landmark.
- Base station positioning accuracy ranges from several hundred meters to 10 kilometers. This information may differ from actual location due to distance of the closest base station location.
- This function is only available if the agency receiving an emergency call has implemented infrastructure for receiving location information.
- If you hide Caller ID by dialing 184 before calling an emergency number, your location information is not sent. However, authorities may access this information when necessary.
- No subscription/communication fee required.

#### Note

• Emergency calls may not be possible outside Japan due to the available wireless network, signal conditions or handset settings.

#### **Standby Window**

View Shortcut icons (♥P.1-19), S! Friend's Status members list (♥P.10-2) or news received via S! Quick News (♥P.5-9). Access the following three view modes:



News content



News Mode



\* Available when Shortcut, Member, News is set.

#### Note

• To use S! Friend's Status or S! Quick News, subscription and setting are required.

#### Standby Window Settings

Change Standby Window settings.

window

 $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Standby







#### Select a setting

- To show Standby Window On (always)
- To toggle Standby Window manually

#### On (manually)

• Press 💿 to show/hide Standby Window.

#### To hide Standby Window

Off

1

# Getting Started

#### **Standby Window Modes**

Select Shortcut. News or Communication mode.

### $\square$

#### for Standby Window $\rightarrow$ (Switch)



• Press 🖾 (Switch) to toggle modes.

#### Shortcut Mode

#### Setting Shortcut Mode

Select items to show from templates. In Shortcut mode, show News, Function/Yahoo! Keitai bookmark shortcut, or S! Friend's Status.



#### for Standby Window $\rightarrow$ Ď (Switch) for Shortcut l⊠ mode



Change templates

Change templates	
<ul> <li>Shortcut, Member,</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Shortcut, Member</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Shortcut, News</li> </ul>	
Member, News	
Shortcut	
Member	
●News(Only text)	
News	
Preview Select	



#### Select an item

#### For all

Shortcut, Member, News

For Shortcut and S! Friend's Status

Shortcut, Member

For Shortcut and News

Shortcut. News

For S! Friend's Status and News Member. News

#### For a single item

Shortcut, Member, News (Only text). or News

• To change template after previewing, press (Preview) then (Select).

#### Using Shortcut Mode

Access Functions via Shortcuts or Mobile Web pages via Bookmarks; view received news or S! Friend's Status.



(Select)

#### Adding & Overwriting Shortcut

1

Adding Shortcuts to preinstalled Shortcut positions overwrites the preinstalled Shortcut.

☐ for Standby Window →
 ☑ (Switch) for Shortcut
 mode → Highlight position





**Y**!

 $\rightarrow$  Set shortcut





#### Select a setting

#### To set function

Add application → Highlight

function  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save)

To add Bookmark

Add bookmark  $\rightarrow$  Select entry  $\rightarrow$  Select an icon

• Save Bookmark entries beforehand.

#### **News Mode**

#### **Adding News Content**

Add news content to show on the list.



Ifor Standby Window → Ifor Standby Window → Ifor News mode

→ Highlight insert position



 $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Add \ content \rightarrow \mathsf{Follow}$ onscreen instructions

# **Getting Startec**

#### **Using News Mode**

In News mode, view news contents,



#### \_\_\_\_\_ for Standby Window → (Switch) for News mode

#### → Highlight news

	ニューフ サービス?	
電話に登 情報を定	5!速報ニコ ニュンテン のすったたり 録的に ビスて	<ul> <li>お気に入</li> <li>ツを携帯</li> <li>すで、最新</li> <li>ぎ面面に配</li> </ul>
ンツリス	を選択し トからサー できます! シツリス Go to	

#### **Communication Mode**

#### Adding S! Friend's Status Member

Add from S! Friend's Status members list or Phonebook.



#### for Standby Window $\rightarrow$ Ď 🖂 (Switch) for

Communication mode  $\rightarrow$ Highlight position





 $\rightarrow$  Add member

	:Tei	f.6	0.0	2 Å
9			101-	
2	1			
	1			
12		d mem		11
i n	From	CI C	rond	0



#### Add member

#### To add from Member List

From S! Friend's Status → Select member

#### To add from Phonebook

*From Phonebook*  $\rightarrow$  Search Phonebook and select entry  $(\bigcirc P.2-21) \rightarrow$  Select a phone number

#### Using Communication Mode

Check SI Friend's Status



4 for Standby Window → 🖂 (Switch) for

Communication mode  $\rightarrow$  Use to highlight S! Friend's Status





→ Show details

#### Advance

- Advanced Settings IP.1-22
- Changing S! Friend's Status Member Icon
- Adjusting Standby Window Settings
- Updating News Content Manually
- Removing News Content
- Updating News Content Automatically
- Setting My Status

#### **₹** Settings

- Show or hide Standby Window (IPP P.13-12)
- Set/cancel Shortcut mode (IPP P.13-12)
- Add functions to Shortcut (IPP P.13-12)
- Add Yahoo! Keitai bookmark to Shortcut (IPP P.13-12)
- Cancel Shortcut mode (IPP P.13-12)
- Add S! Friend's Status member to the list in Shortcut mode (IPP P.13-12)
- Cancel S! Friend's Status member in Shortcut mode (IPP P.13-12)
- Add contents in Shortcut mode (IPP P.13-12)
- Remove content from Shortcut mode (IPP P.13-12)
- Add S! Loop topic in Shortcut mode (IPP P.13-12)
- Remove S! Loop topic from Shortcut mode (IPP.13-12)
- Change template for Shortcut mode (IPP P.13-12)
- Change marquee speed for news (IPP P.13-12)
- Change display type for news (IPP P.13-12)
- Refresh newsflash (IPP P.13-13)
- Refresh general contents in Shortcut mode (IPP.13-13)
- Select S! Loop auto refresh setting (IPP P.13-13)

- Set/cancel News mode (IPP P.13-13)
- Add News mode contents (IPP P.13-13)
- Remove News mode contents (IPP P.13-13)
- Refresh newsflash in News mode (IPP P.13-13)
- Refresh general contents in News mode (IPP P.13-13)
- Refresh S! Loop in News mode (IPP P.13-13)
- Set/cancel Communication mode (IPP P.13-13)
- Add S! Friend's Status members from list (IPP P.13-13)
- Remove S! Friend's Status members (IPP P.13-13)

#### **\** Advanced Settings

#### Standby Window Settings

#### Removing Shortcut

ⓑ for Standby Window → 🖾 (Switch) for Shortcut mode → Highlight item → 🐨 → Set shortcut → Remove application or Remove bookmark → Yes

#### Adding S! Friend's Status Member

➡ for Standby Window → ➡ (Switch) for Shortcut mode → Highlight position → ➡ Add member → Add

#### To add from S! Friend's Status

From S! Friend's Status → Select member

#### To add from Phonebook

From Phonebook  $\rightarrow$  Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21)  $\rightarrow$  Select phone number

#### Removing S! Friend's Status Member

▲ for Standby Window → 🖻 (Switch) for Shortcut mode → Highlight member icon → 🐨 → Add member → Remove → Yes

#### Adding S! Quick News Content

ⓑ for Standby Window → 🖻 (Switch) for Shortcut mode → Highlight news → 🗹 → Add S! Quick News → Add content → Follow onscreen instructions

#### Removing S! Quick News Content

for Standby Window  $\rightarrow \square$  (Switch) for Shortcut mode  $\rightarrow$  Highlight news  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$   $\rightarrow$  Add S! Quick News  $\rightarrow$  Remove content

#### To delete an entry

Highlight entry  $\rightarrow \square$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow Yes$ 

#### To delete multiple entries

 $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Multiple \rightarrow Check entries \rightarrow$  $\square$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow$  Yes

#### To delete all entries

 $\mathbf{x}_{?} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow All \rightarrow Enter Phone Password$  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Yes

for Standby Window  $\rightarrow \square$  (Switch) for Shortcut mode  $\rightarrow$  Highlight news  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Add S! Quick$ News  $\rightarrow$  Add S! Loop  $\rightarrow$  Follow onscreen instructions

#### Removing S! Loop

for Standby Window  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Switch) for Shortcut mode  $\rightarrow$  Highlight news  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Add S! Quick$ News → Remove S! Loop To delete an entry Highlight entry  $\rightarrow \square$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow Yes$ To delete multiple entries  $\mathbf{x}_{\prime} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Multiple \rightarrow Check entries \rightarrow$  $\square$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow$  Yes To delete all entries  $\mathbf{x}_{?} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow All \rightarrow Enter Phone Password$  $\rightarrow$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Yes

Changing S! Friend's Status Member Icon	Updating News Content
for Standby Window $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Switch) for Shortcut	占 for Standby Window -
mode/Communication mode $\rightarrow$ Highlight member icon	mode $ ightarrow$ Highlight news $ ightarrow$
$\rightarrow$ $\mathbf{Y}'$ $\rightarrow$ Change icon $\rightarrow$ Select an icon	To set update interv
Adjusting Standby Window Settings	Flash news $\rightarrow$ $\blacksquare$ (0
	4 hours, 8 hours, or C
for Standby Window $\rightarrow \mathbf{x} \rightarrow Standby window$	To set automatic upo
settings $\rightarrow$ Select item	General $\rightarrow$ $\square$ (OK) -
• Set the following items. Items are the same as	Calling or Messaging or
Standby window in Settings ( $\bigcirc$ P.13-12).	for Standby Window -
- On/Off - Shortcut	Communication mode $\rightarrow$ H
	member
- News headline	To make a Call
- Communication	Use 🗖 to select 🔝
Updating News Content Manually	call
$\square$ for Standby Window $\rightarrow \square$ (Switch) for News	To send message
mode $\rightarrow$ Highlight news $\rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Manual update \rightarrow$	Use 🗖 to select 🖂
Update selected or Update all	3 Sending S! Mail 🜀, I
Removing News Content	Messages (5)
Removing News Content	To use S! Circle Talk
$\square$ for Standby Window $\rightarrow \square$ (Switch) for News	Use 🗖 to select 🐌
mode $\rightarrow$ $\mathbf{x}_{?}$ $\rightarrow$ Remove content	<ul> <li>S! Circle Talk is not av</li> </ul>
To delete an entry	status for S! Friend's S
Highlight entry $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Delete) $\rightarrow$ Yes	Setting My Status
■ To delete multiple entries	-
$\mathbf{\overline{x}} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Multiple \rightarrow Check \text{ entries} \rightarrow \mathbf{\overline{y}}$	for Standby Window -
$\square (Delete) \rightarrow Yes$	Communication mode $\rightarrow$
■ To delete all entries	$\rightarrow$ Show or Hide
$\mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{r}} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow All \rightarrow \text{Enter Phone Password}$	
$\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$   (OK) $\rightarrow$ Yes	

→ 🖾 (Switch) for News  $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Auto refresh$ al of Newsflash

- $OK) \rightarrow 1$  hour, 2 hours, ff
- date for general content  $\rightarrow On \text{ or } Off$

Using S! Circle Talk

→ 🖾 (Switch) for lighlight S! Friend's Status

→ Voice call or Video

 $\rightarrow$  S! Mail or SMS ( $\bigcirc$  P.4-P.4-8 Sending SMS

→ 
(Call) (●P.10-6)

ailable when the answer itatus member shows 🗞.

→ 🖾 (Switch) for

 $\mathbf{x}$   $\rightarrow$  My status setting

## **Basic Operations**

Selecting Functions	2-2
Selecting Functions from Main Menu	
Using Shortcuts in Standby	
Selecting Functions with Switch Bar	
Searching Keyword with Multi Search	
Common Operations	
Menu Options	
Selecting/Canceling Multiple Items	
Standby Display Options	
Wallpaper	
Slide Show	
Sub Display	
S! Familiar Usability (Japanese)	2-8
Downloading S! Familiar Usability	
Activating SI Familiar Usability.	
Canceling S! Familiar Usability	
Text Entry	
Text Entry Window	
Changing Entry Mode	
Text Entry Method	
Hiragana/Kanji	
Katakana, Alphanumerics and Numbers	
Symbols	2-12
Pictograms and Emotions	2-13
Line Breaks	2-13
Hangul	
Deleting & Editing Text	
User's Dictionary	
Saving to User's Dictionary	

Phonebook	2-16
Phonebook Entry Items	2-16
Phonebook Entry Tabs	2-18
Creating New Entries	
Saving from Call Log Records	
Using Phonebook.	
Searching Phonebook	
Calling from Phonebook	
Deleting Phonebook Entries	
Account Details	
Data Folder	2-24
Default Folders	2-24
Viewing Files	2-25
Viewing Images with Picture Browser	2-26
SVG-T/Flash <sup>®</sup> Viewer	2-27
Managing Files/Folders	
Creating Folders	2-28
Renaming File/Folder	2-28
Moving Files/Folders	
Copying Files/Folders	2-30
Deleting Files/Folders	2-31
Face Link	2-32
Saving Face Link Data	2-32
Using Face Link	
Memory Card	2-35
Precautions	2-35
Inserting & Removing	2-36
Viewing Memory Status	2-37



#### Advanced Settings

Basic Operations 2-38
Slide Show
Text Entry
User's Dictionary 2-40
Phonebook 2-40
Account Details
Viewing Files
File/Folder Management
Face Link 2-47
Memory Status 2-47

#### **Selecting Functions**

Selecting Functions from Main Menu



Main Menu



Highlight an item → ■ (Select)



target function

#### Example: Selecting Wallpaper

(Select)



- Press on to exit menu. 820SC returns to Standby. If multiple functions are active, active window appears.
- Press 
   to cancel menu. Handset returns to Standby or previous window. In some menus, a confirmation appears.
- When Popup menu (◆P.13-17) is On, sub menu pops up after operations 
   Different sub menus appear for each menu.
- When numbered items appear in menu or list window, use Keypad to select an item.

2

**Basic Operations** 

#### **Using Shortcuts in Standby**

Кеу	Corresponding Menu/Function	
	Open Messaging menu	
(1+ seconds)	Open Create Message window	
¥?	Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu	
بعر (1+ seconds)	Open Yahoo! Keitai menu	
27 27	Open Media Player window	
A/a	Activate Switch Bar	
4	Standby Window	
7	Phonebook list	
(1+ seconds)	Open Phonebook Entry window	
•	Call log (Received)	
	Call log (Dialed)	
CLEAR //FB	Recordings list	
(1+ seconds)	Toggle Answering Machine On/Off	
(1 + seconds)	My Status Details	
(1+ seconds)	Toggle Manner mode On/Off	
6	S! Circle Talk member list	

Key	Corresponding Menu/Function	
(2+ seconds)	Activate Camera	
Ø	Open TV menu	
(2+ seconds)	Activate TV	

#### Selecting Functions with Switch Bar

Select Multi Search, Call, Messaging, Yahoo! Keitai or Media Player. Use multiple functions at the same time (e.g. listen to music while messaging or talk to a friend or colleague while browsing Internet sites).

#### In Standby or active function, **₽** A∕a



#### Use but to highlight an item

- (Select)
- To exit a function, show it and press 🔊
- To exit all, highlight 📑 and press (Yes).

- When exiting all, confirmation may appear for some functions: choose Yes or No.
- Activate other functions while creating a message. After exiting all, Create Message window appears.

#### Searching Keyword with Multi Search

Search 820SC or Memory Card files/functions: Phonebook, Messages, Call Log, Data Folder, Memo/Schedule or Menu.

#### In Standby or active function, A/a



Use 🔄 to highlight *Multi Search*  $\rightarrow$   $\square$  (Select)

Multi Search
Keyword:
Phonebook
✓ Messages
✓Call log
✓Data Folder
✓ Memo/Schedule
✓ Menu
Search Select



#### Check functions $\rightarrow$ Select **Keyword field**



#### Enter keyword



#### To enter keyword

*Enter keyword*  $\rightarrow$  Enter keyword

#### To select from recent history

Recent keyword → Select keyword

#### To search frequent keyword

Frequent keyword → Select keyword



#### (Search)

				_
Pho	one	Sea	rch	
ALL 🔊	$\boxtimes$	勖		۳·
🗵 Sato				
🕓 Naka	mura			
🕓 Koba	yash			
🕒 lto				
🗵 Suzu	ki			
🖳 Taka	hash			
🕓 Tana	ka			
Memory	Sel	ect		Menu



#### 6

#### View 820SC search result

- Use to switch tabs and view result.
- To search new keyword, press 😒 and select New Search.

2

#### Searching with Multi Search

Fu	nction/Search with	Search Criteria			
Phor	Phonebook				
	Name	Search with first letter of first/last name			
	Mail address	Search with portion separated by @ or .			
	Phone number	Search with the beginning/ end of phone number			
Mes	Messages				
	Sender/ recipient	Search with the beginning of first/last name or mail address			
	Subject	Search with the first word of the subject (N/A for Hangul)			
Call	Call log				
	Phone number	Search with the beginning/ end of phone number			
	Name	Search with the first letter of first/last name			
Data Folder					
	File name, extension	Search with letter/extension within file name			

Fu	nction/Search with	Search Criteria			
Men	Memo/Schedule				
	Notepad/Tasks/ Schedule	Search with the first word in details (N/A for Hangul)			
Men	Menu				
	Function name	Search with the first letter of function name			
Memory Card					
	File name	Search with letters included in file name			

- Search results appear by function tab: Phonebook, Messages, Call Log, Data Folder, Memo/Schedule and Menu. Select a tab to see it or use function.
- Some keywords may not be searchable.
- If Memory Card is inserted after 820SC search, press 🖾 to search Memory Card.
- If Memory Card is inserted and item is not found on 820SC, a search Memory Card confirmation appears. Choose Yes to search Memory Card.
- Secret entries cannot be searched.

#### Advance

**\ Advanced Settings** IP.2-38

- Searching from Multi Search Result
- Creating Message from Multi Search Result
- Using Functions from Multi Search Result
- Viewing Multi Search Result Details

#### **Common Operations**

#### **Menu Options**

When *Menu* appears as Right Softkey label, press roopen Menu. To execute an item, highlight it and press (select).

#### Selecting/Canceling Multiple Items

Press  $\mathbf{\overline{x}}$  (Mark all) or  $\mathbf{\overline{x}}$  (Unmark all) to check/ uncheck all items to delete or move.

- Available operations vary by function.
- Enter Phone Password to delete multiple items.

#### **Standby Display Options**

#### Wallpaper

Set still image, animation or Slide Show to appear in Standby. Alternatively, hide still image.

## $\bullet \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Display$ <br/>settings $\rightarrow Wallpaper$



Set Wallpaper

#### To set an image in Data Folder

Select a folder  $\rightarrow$  Select a file  $\rightarrow$  (Set)

To set Slide show

Slide show  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-6 Slide Show

#### To set none

None

#### **Slide Show**

Set up to nine images to appear in sequence in Standby.



2



Select a file location  $\rightarrow$  Check images to use  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Done)





5

#### Edit Slide show

#### To preview

 $\square$  (Preview)  $\rightarrow$  Yes (Fit to screen) or No (Original proportion)

#### To set effect

Highlight Effect field  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\frown$  to switch settings

#### To change playback time for a still image

Use  $\frown$  to highlight Duration field  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\frown$  to switch settings

**(Set)**  $\rightarrow$  *Yes* (Fit to screen) or *No* (Original proportion)

#### • To adjust slide size

To fit image to Display, choose *Yes* in Step **()**. For original proportion, choose *No*.

#### Sub Display

Set still image in Data Folder as Wallpaper.

#### Cover design 1 Preset picture 2 Pictures 3 None Select



#### Select a folder $\rightarrow$ Select a file

#### To crop image

Use 🛃 to place frame

#### To fit image

Use 🖾 (Zoom out) or 室 (Zoom in) to adjust size



#### Advanced

Advanced Settings IP.2-38

#### **₹** Settings

Change Wallpaper (IPP P.13-16)

#### S! Familiar Usability (Japanese)

Download and install legacy handset user interfaces for use on 820SC.

• 820SC is compatible with S! Familiar Usability.

#### Note

• S! Familiar Usability does not convert all handset operations and menus.

#### **Downloading S! Familiar Usability**

Download applications from websites.







Download S! Familiar Usability

Follow onscreen instructions.

#### **Activating S! Familiar Usability**

Download application beforehand.

 $\bullet \to \boxdot (Style) \to S! Familiar Usability$ 





#### **Canceling S! Familiar Usability**



■ → Settings → Display settings → S! Familiar Usability





#### **Highlight contents**





Press  $\blacksquare$  (Release)  $\rightarrow$  Yes

• Alternatively, while setting S! Familiar Usability, press 😒 to cancel the setting temporarily.

2

 Font size setting does not affect S! Familiar Usability menus (♥P.13-16, 13-16). English and Hangul are not available (♥P.13-18).

#### **Text Entry**

Enter Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana (single-/doublebyte), alphanumerics (single-/double-byte), symbols (single-/double-byte), pictograms, emoticons or Hangul.

#### **Text Entry Window**



No. of characters entered (byte)/No. of characters available (byte)



- \* Suggestions do not appear in Katakana, alphanumeric, and number input modes. If Prediction entry function is canceled, suggestions appear when characters are converted with (Convert) or (EngNumカナ) in Kanji/Katakana input mode.
- When Voice Call or Video Call arrives while entering text, simply answer the call. When the call ends, text entry window returns. When Alarm is activated, end Alarm to return to text entry window.
- For Date field in Day and Time or Time field in Alarm which can only enter numbers, text entry window does not appear. Enter numbers directly in Entry field.

# Basic Operations

#### **Changing Entry Mode**

Text entry modes may be limited by status.



#### Select entry mode to switch

 In text entry window, press # ) to switch to Symbols, \* is to toggle Pictograms and Emoticons.

#### Advanced

#### **۲** Settings

 Activate or cancel S! Familiar Input (Japanese) (IPP P.13-18)

#### **Text Entry Method**

#### Hiragana/Kanji

Use predictive entry to convert and enter characters. Alternatively, convert entered hiragana directly. Katakana or pictograms may appear in Suggestions.

Example: Enter "鈴木"





Men

Cancel



・"き" is entered.



- When conversion fails, try another reading. When multiple Kanji characters do not convert together, try to convert them separately.
- While Suggestions appear, press 
   (Convert) for conversion alternatives. While conversion alternatives appear, press 
   (Predict) to return to Suggestions.

#### Katakana, Alphanumerics and Numbers In text entry window, Message © 0'30K ↓ ↓ 2. カナ 7. 12 3. カt 8. 1 @ # 4. Ap 9. 10 #

0. Pictog.

\*. Emoti\_ #. Hangul



5 Ah

2

- 2 Basic
- After entering hiragana, press  $\left[ \begin{array}{c} \star_{ach}^{**} \\ \star_{ach}^{**} \end{array} \right]$  to add  $\begin{array}{c} \star \\ \end{array}$  or
- After entering katakana or roman letters, press to toggle kana size or case.
  - Press real to cancel a misentry.
  - If you over-toggle target character, press **t** to toggle in reverse.
  - To enter same character continuously, press to move the cursor to the right.
  - In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter characters and press ビ (EngNumカナ) to toggle katakana/ alphanumerics/numbers entry mode. Example: Enter "くも" and press ビ (EngNumカ ナ). クモ, C, or 22277777 appears in Suggestions.

#### Symbols

2





• Press # ; or r until the target symbol appears.





- To enter symbols continuously, press 
   (Continue) instead of 
   (Select).
- Once entered double-byte symbols remain in history and appear in Suggestions at first. Press

   # 
   #

   to toggle Suggestions: double-byte symbol
   logs → double-byte symbols → single-byte
   symbols. In single-byte katakana, single-byte
   alphanumerics, single-byte numbers or Hangul
   entry mode, Suggestions appear: double-byte symbols.
   → single-byte symbols → double-byte symbols.

- In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter characters and press
- (Convert) to convert to symbols.
- Example: Enter " $\subset h$ " and press 🖾 (Convert),
- $\cdot \text{ or } \cdots$  appear among Suggestions.

## 2 **Basic Operations**

#### **Pictograms and Emotions**

In text entry window, 🗱





#### Highlight target character in Suggestions $\rightarrow$ $\blacksquare$ (Select)

- To enter additional pictograms or emotions, press 🖾 (Continue) instead of 🔳 (Select).
- Once entered pictograms remain as history and appear in Suggestions at first. Pressing 🗱 switches Suggestions between pictogram logs → pictograms → emoticons.
- •In Kanii/Kana entry mode, enter "はーと", "で んわ" and press 🖾 (Convert) to switch to pictograms. Similarly, "わーい" or "えーん" can be converted to emoticons.

#### Line Breaks

Use these steps to enter Line break in any entry mode





- Select line break symbol and press | | (Select)
  - Alternatively, press 🔽.
- In some entry windows, line break cannot be inserted

#### Hangul



In text entry window,  $\square \rightarrow$ Hangul

Add Mer	no 🙀	0/200
1. ]	2. •	3. —
4.73	5.L2	6.CE
7.ㅂㅍ	8.人言	9. ~ *
*. 絵	0.00	#.記號
Cance I	OK	Meni



#### Enter characters

 Press number keys to enter assigned character units that appear; combine several consonants and vowels.

C	Consonant Example (Key assignment)		
٦	(once) (ace)		
٦	ط قرار (twice)		
п	ط ﷺ) (3 times)		
	Vowel Example (Key assignment)		
아	$\square_{n+1}^{\circ}\square_{n+1}^{\circ}(1), \square_{n+1}^{\circ}(\cdot)$		
어	$\square_{A+A}^{\circ} \supseteq A_{A+A}^{\circ} (\cdot), \square_{A+A}^{\circ} (\cdot) $		
오	$\square_{ABC}^{C} = \left( \cdot \right), \exists_{ABC}^{C} (-)$		
야			
ਕ			
ይ			
왜	$\begin{array}{c} \square \stackrel{\circ}{} 2 \stackrel{\circ}{\xrightarrow{\otimes}} (\cdot), \exists \stackrel{\circ}{} (-), 1 \stackrel{\circ}{} (1), \\ 2 \stackrel{\circ}{\xrightarrow{\otimes}} (\cdot), 1 \stackrel{\circ}{} (1) \end{array}$		

 Hangul appears in received S! Mail, however Hangul cannot be inserted into a reply or forwarded.

Del	eting & Editing Text	
0	Use 🛃 to move cursor to	
	character to delete, and $\begin{tabular}{clear} \end{tabular}$	
	Message 医 4/30K 玩画	
	Cancel OK Menu	

- When a space is highlighted, the character before cursor is deleted.

#### Advanced

- Advanced Settings P.2-39
- Deleting Text Template
- Specify Range to Copy/Cut
- Pasting Copied or Cut Text
- Undoing Text Entry
- Jump to Top/End
- Quoting Saved Text Template
- Entering E-mail Address & URL to Phonebook Quickly

#### ⊀ Settings

Reset entry history to default (IPP P.13-19)

#### **User's Dictionary**

Save frequently used words/phrases of up to 20 characters; entries appear in Suggestions when Reading is entered.



 $\rightarrow$  New entry



Select Word field → Enter word or sentence





Select Reading field → Enter reading



|⊠ (Save)

In text entry window,  $\mathbf{\bar{r}} \rightarrow$ Add to dictionary 漢 8/30 Message ケータイ Cancel Start UserDi Use 🛃 to move cursor to 2 the first letter of adding character, and **(**Start) 漢 ケータイ End • Press 🖅 (UserDic) to open User's Dictionary

Saving to User's Dictionary

menu and view added entries.

Use 🛃 to select the range 3 (End) New entry Nord ケータイ Reading Select Select Reading field → Enter Δ text New entry Nord ケータイ Reading けいたい Save Select ⊠ (Save) • If selecting the range which includes a line break, character strings before the line break are saved.

• Press real and select *Edit entry* in Step **2** to view currently saved word list.

#### Advanced

Advanced Settings IP.2-40

Setting & Canceling Prediction Entry Function

#### **۲** Settings

- Save entries to User's Dictionary (IPP P.13-18)
- Edit User's Dictionary entries (IPP P.13-18)
- Delete User's Dictionary entries (IPP P.13-19)
- Reset entry history to default (IPP P.13-19)

#### Phonebook

#### **Phonebook Entry Items**

Create up to 1,000 entries. The number of items that can be saved varies by USIM Card. Insert USIM Card into compatible SoftBank handsets to use USIM Card Phonebook entries.

Each Phonebook entry contains items listed below.

	Item/Description	Location			
Last	Last name				
	Double/single-byte	820SC: Yes			
	(Saved as "Name" in	(up to 50 byte)			
	USIM Card Phonebook)	USIM Card: Yes <sup>2</sup>			
First	First name				
	Double/single-byte	820SC: Yes			
	(Saved as "Name" in	(up to 50-byte)			
	USIM Card Phonebook)	USIM Card: Yes <sup>2</sup>			
Reading last name					
	Single-byte	820SC: Yes			
	(Saved as "Name" in	(up to 50-byte)			
	USIM Card Phonebook)	USIM Card: Yes <sup>2</sup>			

	Item/Description	Location		
Read	Reading first name			
	Single-byte	820SC: Yes		
	(Saved as "Name" in	(up to 50-byte)		
	USIM Card Phonebook)	USIM Card: Yes <sup>2</sup>		
Add	phone number			
		820SC: Yes		
	Saved with area code	(5 entries/up to 32-byte)		
		USIM Card: Yes <sup>1 2</sup>		
Pho	ne icon			
		820SC: Yes		
	Select one of seven icons	USIM Card: No		
		(1 icon)		
Add	E-mail address			
		820SC: Yes		
	Single-byte	(5 entries/up to 128-byte)		
	alphanumerics	USIM Card: Yes <sup>2</sup>		
		(1 entry)		
E-m	E-mail address icon			
		820SC: Yes		
	Select one of four icons	USIM Card: No		
		(1 icon)		

Item/Description	Location	
Picture		
Still image appears for	820SC: Yes	
incoming calls Select a Data Folder image or capture with Camera	USIM Card: No	
Ringtone settings		
Voice Call/Video Call/	820SC: Yes	
Messages/S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk Select from Data Folder	USIM Card: No	
Vibration settings		
Set vibration for all	820SC: Yes	
incoming transmissions	USIM Card: No	
Group	•	
Colort from 20 mount	820SC: Yes	
Select from 20 groups	USIM Card: Yes <sup>1</sup>	
Secret mode		
On/Off	820SC: Yes	
01/01	USIM Card: No	

	Item/Description	Location	
Birth	Birthday		
	Data of hinth	820SC: Yes	
	Date of birth	USIM Card: No	
Bloc	d type		
	Colort one of four times	820SC: Yes	
	Select one of four types	USIM Card: No	
Hob	by		
	Enter up to 100 bytes	820SC: Yes	
	Enter up to 100 bytes	USIM Card: No	
Com	Company		
	Enter up to 64 bytes	820SC: Yes	
	Enter up to 64 bytes	USIM Card: No	
Job	title		
	Up to 64-byte	820SC: Yes	
	ор то 64-руге	USIM Card: No	
Add	address		
	Post code (40 bytes),	820SC: Yes	
	Country (64 bytes),	(2 entries)	
	Province, City, Street and Additional information (128 bytes)	USIM Card: No	

	Item/Description	Location		
Add	Add homepage			
		820SC: Yes		
	Enter up to 1,024 bytes	(2 entries)		
		USIM Card: No		
Hom	Homepage icon			
	Select one of three icons	820SC: Yes		
	Select one of three icons	USIM Card: No		
Men	Memo			
	Up to E12 buto	820SC: Yes		
	Up to 512-byte	USIM Card: No		

Number of savable items varies by USIM Card.
 Number of savable characters varies by USIM Card.

 When using Phonebook entries for the first time after replacing USIM Card, a confirmation appears; choose Yes to copy USIM Card entries to 820SC.

#### Note

 Protect important information Phonebook entries may be lost/altered if battery is removed or left uncharged for an extended period; accidents/malfunctions may also affect entries. Back-up entries and store separately. SoftBank is not liable for damage from lost information. 2

**Basic Operations** 

#### Phonebook Entry Tabs

Phonebook entry information is divided into three tabs. Toggle Tabs to view desired information.







				4		r	
	Sa	atoT	aku	ya			
	/@	<u></u>	,a	6	÷		
- -		comp					
	<add< th=""><th>job</th><th></th><th>le&gt;</th><th></th><th></th><th></th></add<>	job		le>			
7	<add< th=""><th>addr</th><th>ess</th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th></add<>	addr	ess				
È.	<add< th=""><th>home</th><th>epage</th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th></add<>	home	epage				
P -	<add< th=""><th>memo</th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th></add<>	memo					
Edi					Mer	าน	

#### **Creating New Entries**

Default data location for Phonebook is *Phone*. Set to USIM Card as required (●P.13-11).



Example: Creating a new entry and saving Name, Reading, Phone Number and E-mail Address.





#### Select Last name field → Enter last name

Create new entry
🖉 Sato
🖾 First name
🔢 Sato
🔢 Reading first name
🛃 Add phone number
👰 Add E-mail address
Save Select



#### Select First name field → Enter first name

	Create new entry
	1/0 2,5 4
	Sato
2	Takuya
	Sato
	Takuya
	Add phone number
a) M	Add E-mail address
Sar	ve Select

2

1



#### Select Reading last name field → Edit as required

Create new entry
1/0 2,7 °C
🖾 Sato
📓 Takuya
謳 Sato
🔢 Takuya
Add phone number
👰 Add E-mail address
Save Select



## Select Reading first name field $\rightarrow$ Edit as required

Create new entry
🕅 Sato
📓 Takuya
🔢 Sato
🔢 Takuya
🛃 Add phone number
👰 Add E-mail address
Save Select



#### Select Add phone number

field  $\rightarrow$  Enter number  $\rightarrow$  Select an icon

Create new entry
6/0 <u>2</u> ,5 <del>4</del> 2
🖾 Sato
🖾 Takuya
🔢 Sato
🔢 Takuya
8 090******
🛃 Add phone number
👰 Add E-mail address
Save Select

Select Add E-mail address field  $\rightarrow$  Enter address  $\rightarrow$ Select an icon

Create new entry
1/0 <u>2,7 4</u> 2
💯 Sato
📓 Takuya
🔢 Sato
🔢 Takuya
090******
🛃 Add phone number
🖳 takuya@*****. jp
Save Select



#### • Valid Phone Field Characters

Enter 0 through 9, #,\*, -, P (Pause), and + (International Code). Press \*\*\*\* to toggle \*, - and P. Press •\*\*\* for 1+ seconds to enter +.

- If a Memory Card file is selected for Incoming Image or Ringtone, copy file to 820SC confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move confirmation appears. Choose Yes to complete setting.
- When using Samsung PC Studio to synchronize Phonebook entries with a PC, Secret entries are not synchronized to PC. If an entry is changed to a Secret entry, it can no longer be synchronized and is deleted from PC. For Samsung PC Studio information, see the user guide on the CD-ROM.

#### Saving from Call Log Records

Save numbers from Call Log records to new or existing Phonebook entries.

## □ (Received calls) or□ (Dialed calls)



Highlight an entry  $\rightarrow \mathbf{x}' - Add$  to Phonebook





#### Select saving method

To save as a new entry

New

To update existing entry

 $Update \rightarrow$  Search and select an entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21)

To enter each item, follow Steps 2 to 3 in "Saving to Phonebook" (⊕P.2-18).

#### Advanced

#### Advanced Settings I P.2-40

- Creating Message from Phonebook
- Adding Phonebook Entry to Speed Dial
- Adding S! Friend's Status Member from Phonebook
- Viewing S! Friend's Status
- New Group (USIM Card)
- Adding Member to Group
- Removing Member from Group
- Showing or Hiding Caller ID
- Sending Phonebook as vFile
- Creating and Saving vFiles
- Copying Entries between Phone & USIM
- Copying Items
- Setting Default Phone Number or Mail Address
- Printing Phonebook Details via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>
- Viewing USIM Card Service Number
- Canceling Phonebook Secret Mode Temporarily

- Checking Memory Status
- Enter and Save Phone Number
- Renaming Group

#### ۲ Settings

- Select Phonebook Save Location (IPP P.13-11)
- Change Phonebook preference (Phone/USIM) (IPP P.13-11)
- Change Search Method (IPP P.13-11)
- Backup Phonebook entries (IBP P.13-11)
- Change Phonebook font size (IPP P.13-11)
- Change font size for Phonebook menu (IPP P.13-16)

2

**Basic Operations** 

# Basic Operations

2

#### **Using Phonebook**

#### **Searching Phonebook**

Example: Using A-ka-sa-ta-na search



 To change search method, in Phonebook list, press x→ Settings → select Search method. The changed settings are saved.

2

Use • to navigate to the target entry



 Alternatively, enter name in abc field (first few letters) to search.



- For details, press 🔳 (Details/Select).
- If Secret mode is set to *Hide*, secret Phonebook entries do not appear. In Phonebook search window, press *m* and select *Unlock temporarily* to see secret entries.

#### **Calling from Phonebook**



 □ → Highlight the target entry in the list →
 □ (Details) → Highlight the target phone number





2

- Alternatively, highlight the target entry in the list and press , select *Call*, then select *Voice call*, *Video call*, *S! Circle Talk* or *International call*.
   When entry contains multiple numbers, Default Number is dialed if set; otherwise, first number listed is dialed. If Default number is *Not assigned*, Call window appears: select a number.
- Calling from Simple Search or search result If Simple Search (●P.13-19) is On, press number key to search entry starting with corresponding Reading. Name and phone number appears.
   Highlight phone number and press , or ■ (Select) and then ■ (Call) for Voice Call or for Video Call.
- Calling from phone number search or search result

Enter four digits to search for entry beginning or ending with those digits. Entry name and phone number appear. If Simple Search is *On*, press to to toggle Phone Number search and Simple Search. Highlight number and press , or (Select) and then (Call) for Voice Call or for Video Call.

#### **Changing Search Method**

In Standby, press  $\hfill \square$  to open the specified search window.





- A-ka-sa-ta-na, Reading, or Group
- Secret Phonebook entries do not appear. In Phonebook search window, press 🔽 and select Unlock temporarily to see secret entries.

#### **Deleting Phonebook Entries**

#### **Deleting an Entry**







```
• To delete from details, after Step \bigcirc, select \square
(Details) \rightarrow \mathbf{x} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Yes.
```
#### **Deleting Multiple Entries**



#### **Deleting All Entries**

Delete all Phonebook entries saved in 820SC or USIM Card at once



 Alternatively, in Standby, press Phonebook  $\rightarrow$  Account details.

Creating vFile and Save in Data Folder

**Account Details** 

View handset phone number in USIM Card. Add

Printing with Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Compatible Printer



NakamuraMa i

SatoTakuva Suzuk i Kaor i Takahashi Naoki TanakaMegumi YamamotoKenta Delete Select Unmark a

#### **Data Folder**

Organize handset files by file type here.

#### **Default Folders**

Data Folder contains 12 default folders. Files created with 820SC functions or acquired via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>, Internet or Mail are saved to appropriate folder by the file type/format. Create additional folders within default folders.

Default Folders

Data Folder
Pictures
🛅 My Pictograms
🕅 Ring songs · tones
S! Appli
🗀 Music
Videos
🗀 Books
S! Familiar Usability
S! Mail templates
🗀 Flash®
Flash® Ringtones
Cther documents
Memory status

	Folder/Description	File Type <sup>1</sup>
4	Pictures	
	Image files captured with 820SC Camera	JPEG, BMP, GIF, WBMP, PNG, Animation GIF
20	Digital camera	
	Still images captured with 820SC Camera (Insert Memory Card)	JPEG
ð	My Pictograms	
	Downloaded pictograms	GIF, GPK
۲	Ring songs · tones	
	Voice Recorder files, downloaded music, and other sound files	<ul> <li>SMAF/MIDI/SP-</li> <li>MIDI, MPEG4</li> <li>Audio, AMR,</li> <li>SMF, Mobile XMF</li> </ul>
3	S! Appli	
	S! Appli	JAVA
	Music	
	Downloaded Chaku-Uta <sup>®</sup>	MPEG4 Audio (mp4, m4a, aac, 3gp), smc
fo	Videos	
	820SC video files	<ul> <li>MPEG4 (mp4,</li> <li>3gp), H.263, H.264</li> </ul>
B	Books	
	Downloaded e-books, comics and photobooks	📖 CCF

	Folder/Description	File Type <sup>1</sup>
٩	S! Familiar Usability	_
	Downloaded user interfaces	UIE
	from other handset models	UIE
Ì	S! Mail templates	
	Templates created with	HMT
	S! Mail	
RANG	Flash <sup>®</sup>	
	Flash <sup>®</sup> files	SWF
H.S.	Flash <sup>®</sup> Ringtones	
	Ringtone assignable	SWF
	downloaded Flash $^{\ensuremath{\mathbb{R}}}$ files	500
	Other documents	
		SVG, SVGZ,
		🗺 vCard,
	De avera de la avera bia	🖻 vCalendar,
	Document or graphic	💮 vBookmark,
	files requiring File Viewer	📰 PDF, 🎽 XLS,
	for use on 820SC vFiles <sup>2</sup> ,	🎬 DOC, 🖺 PPT,
	etc.	Ξ TXT,
		G HTML,
		Unsupported file

- 1 Files are saved by type. Files cannot be moved to or saved in folders that do not support them.
- 2 Use vFiles to send or transfer handset files via S! Mail, etc. 820SC supports vCard (.vcf) for Phonebook entries, vCalendar (.vcs) for Task/ Schedule, and vBookmark (.vbm) for Bookmarks.

• Save up to 999 files/folders in each default folder.

- In a folder, use *Memory status* to confirm memory. Alternatively, confirm memory in *Settings* (OP.2-37).
- Comparison and the second secon









3 Hig Pla

Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (View, Play, Select, or Start)

- File List Indicators
  - Sec: Nontransferable
  - 56 : Nontransferable and unusable
- 🔒 : Protected
- ← : Copy Protected File (Transferable, Content Key Valid)
- se : Copy Protected File (Transferable, Content Key Expired)
- ➡: Copy Protected File (Transferable, Content Key Valid)
- Scopy Protected File (Transferable, Content Key Expired)
- Image: Set as Wallpaper (●P.2-46)
- . Set as Ringtone (€P.2-46)
- When a different USIM Card is installed, S! Appli does not run. Nontransferable/copy protected files other than preinstalled ones cannot be used.
- Activating Camera or Voice Recorder from Data Folder

Highlight *Pictures* or image captured with 820SC, press 🐨 and select *Take photo* to activate Camera in Camera mode. Similarly, highlight *Videos* or video captured with 820SC, press 😒 and select *Record Video* to activate Camera in

Video mode. Highlight *Ring songs · tones* or sound file recorded with 820SC, press **Y** and select *Record sound* to activate Voice recorder.

#### Note

 Files over 3 MB or larger than 1600 x 1600 pixels cannot be edited or zoomed. Files over 1.3 MB cannot be set as Incoming image or Alternative picture. Edit or zoom JPEG files smaller than 2560 x 2560.
 During playback, video file thumbnails do not appear in a list view for *Videos* folder etc.

#### **Viewing Images with Picture Browser**

→ Data Folder

tones

Men

View images in Normal or Full Screen View. Landscape images rotate for Full Screen View.



Normal View

Data Folder



**Pictures** 

View



Photo-0006.jpg
Folder
Pictograms Pictures
Set as FULL Menu
<ul> <li>Press</li></ul>
Use 🔤 to move image

- Some images may not be displayable.
- Select an image from *Pictures*; Picture Browser activates automatically.
- Use Person to sort Face Link images.

**Basic Operations** 

2

#### Sorting Images

Choose sorting rule from the following:

- By Folder
- By Composition
- By Color
- By Timeline
- By Person (with Face link setting)
- View images (€P.2-26 **Viewing Images with Picture** Browser).



2 Use 🗗 to select sorting rule



#### SVG-T/Flash<sup>®</sup> Viewer

View graphics/animation in Normal or Full Screen View. Use Menu and Shortcuts to navigate Display.



Normal View

#### → Data Folder





Select a folder → Select a file

Full Screen View

- View SVG, SVGZ, and SWF files in Data Folder.
- Some files may not be displayable.
- Selecting a compatible file from Data Folder automatically activates SVG-T/Flash<sup>®</sup> Viewer.
- To set an image to Wallpaper, press 🖾 (Set as) in Normal View, or press 😒 in Full Screen View and select Set as and select Wallpaper.

- Advanced Settings B P.2-44
- Viewing Slide Show
- Accessing Link in File
- Confirming File/Folder Details
- Toggling Memory Card and Phone Data Folder

#### **Managing Files/Folders**

#### **Creating Folders**

Create sub-folder in Default folders. Use *Set secret* to hide created folder.

#### ■ → Data Folder

Data Folder
Pictures
My Pictograms
Ring songs · tones
S! Appli 0 6
Memory Select Menu

Select default folder to create a sub-folder







#### Enter name

Δ

- New folder cannot be created in a created folder.
- Activate Secret data folder to see secret folders.

#### **Renaming File/Folder**



Select default folder → Highlight file or sub-folder to rename



2



Rename Folder	fol Ab	6/233
Cance I	0K	Menu



#### Enter a new name

- To rename S! Mail template, Select Rename and enter name.
- Protected files cannot be renamed.

#### **Moving Files/Folders**

When Memory Card is inserted, move files or folders between 820SC (Phone) and Memory Card.

► → Data Folder Data Folder Data Folder Data Folder Wy Pictograms Wy Pictograms Wy Pictograms 0 60 Construction Ring songs • tones SI Appli 0 1 6 Memory Select Menu

Select default folder → Highlight a file or sub-folder







#### Move files/folders

To move a file/folder

Selected

#### To move multiple files/folders

 $\begin{array}{c} Multiple \rightarrow \text{Check files or sub-}\\ \text{folders to move} \rightarrow \boxdot (\text{Move}) \end{array}$ 

To move all files/sub-folders in the same folder

All

#### Select a destination folder → Move here

• When Memory Card is inserted, select *Phone* or *Memory card*, then select a folder.

2

#### • Protected files cannot be moved.

- If target file/folder with the same name exists, text entry window appears; edit file/folder name.
- To move a file set for Wallpaper or Ringtone to Memory Card, a confirmation appears. Choose Yes to release the setting and move the file. When moving multiple or all files, choose No to move only files without set functions. Press to cancel moving.

#### Note

- Downloaded files may not appear/play properly if moved to another device or when a different USIM Card is inserted in 820SC.

#### **Copying Files/Folders**

Copy a file or folder and paste in the same or another folder. When Memory Card is inserted, copy folders between 820SC and Memory Card.

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Select$ a folder



Highlight file or folder to 2  $copy \rightarrow |\mathbf{Y}| \rightarrow Copy \text{ or } Copy$ folder





#### Copy files/folders

To copy a file/folder

Selected

**To copy multiple files/folders**  $Multiple \rightarrow Check files/folders to$ 

 $copy \rightarrow \square$  (Copy)

To move all files/folders in the same folder

All

**4** S

# Select a destination folder $\rightarrow$ *Paste here*

- When Memory Card is inserted, select *Phone* or *Memory card*, then select a folder.
- When pasting files/folders in the same location as the original, numbers such as "\_001" are automatically added to pasted file/folder names.
- When target file/folder with the same name exists, edit the name of the file/folder. Text entry window appears to enter new name.

#### Note

• Nontransferable files cannot be copied.

#### **Deleting Files/Folders**

#### **Deleting Files**

2





Highlight a file in the list  $\rightarrow$  $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Delete$ 





#### Delete files/folders

- To delete a file
  - Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes
- To delete multiple files

 $Multiple \rightarrow \text{Check files to delete} \rightarrow \square \text{ (Delete)} \rightarrow Yes$ 

To move all files in the same folder

- When deleting a file that is set to a function or protected, a confirmation appears. Choose Yes to cancel the setting and delete the file. When deleting multiple files, choose No to delete only files that are not set to functions and unprotected files.
- When deleting files with Content Key, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to delete both file and Content Key.

#### **Deleting Created Sub-folders**



**→** Data Folder



Select default folder  $\rightarrow$  Select created sub-folder  $\rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}_{7}} \rightarrow$ *Delete folder* 



- 3 Enter Phone Password  $\rightarrow$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Yes
  - Enter Phone Password only when the file is saved in sub-folder.

- 2 Basic Operations
- When deleting files that are set to a function or protected, of folders containing copy protected files a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to cancel setting and delete the file. Choose *No* to delete only files that are not set to functions and unprotected files; folders are unchanged.
- When a file in the folder has Content Key, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to delete both the file and Content Key.

#### Advanced

#### Advanced Settings IP.2-45

- Sending Files
- Printing Still Images via USB or Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>
- Selecting Folder List
- Sorting Files
- Canceling Secret Setting Temporarily
- Activating Camera Mode
- Activating Video Mode
- Recording Sound
- Setting & Canceling File Lock
- Setting Secret in Sub-folder

#### **Face Link**

#### Saving Face Link Data

Link Phonebook information to portrait still image, to make a call or send messages from image.

#### **Capturing and Setting Still Images**





#### $\rightarrow$ Use $\frown$ to highlight







- Available only when Face Link is On.
- If captured face is recognized, frame appears.
- If Face Link has been saved, name appears. If not, *Unknown* appears.
- If captured face is not recognized, frame does not appear. The image is saved and capture window reappears.



### $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Face \ Link$

#### To add from Phonebook

*Phonebook* → Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21)

To enter directly

Direct input → Enter name



#### Adding Data to Saved Image



 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Pictures$ 





Select a file















2



 $\blacksquare (OK) \rightarrow \boxdot (FaceLink)$ 

*Phonebook* → Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21)

To enter directly

Add data

Direct input → Enter name



• To view saved Face Link, select file and press \_\_\_\_\_ then \_\_\_\_, and select *Contact Info.*; saved entry detail appears.

• Memory Card files cannot be set as Face Link.



#### **Using Face Link**

Make a call or send message from Face Link image.

#### Make Calls & Send Messages from Saved Image











# Make a call or send a message

- To make a Voice Call Voice call
- To make a Video Call Video call
- To send a message
- $Message \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-3 \text{ Sending S!} \\ Mail ( 5)$

#### Sending Saved Face Link



# $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Pictures$











• Linked entry name appears; Face Link ready.

2



#### $|\mathbf{x}_{\prime}| \rightarrow Send \rightarrow Via\ message \rightarrow$ Confirmation appears, Yes or

#### No



• Choose Yes to attach image and Phonebook entry, choose No to attach only image.

Send (⊕P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 2)

#### Advanced

Advanced Settings I P.2-47

#### Memory Card

820SC is compatible with microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Card. Purchase microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Card to use Memory Card-related handset functions.

• SoftBank recommends 64, 128, 256, 512 MB, 1 GB, or 2 GB cards.

#### Note

Protect important information

Data saved in Memory Card may be lost or damaged by accident or malfunction. Backup entries and store separately. SoftBank is not liable for damage from lost or altered information.

 microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Cards do not have Write Protection Switch. There is a risk of accidental erasure or overwriting of files.

#### Precautions

Note the following precautions.

- Use only recommended Memory Card. Other Memory Cards may not perform properly.
- Do not place labels or stickers on Memory Card. These items may affect card performance or result in lost information
- Never disassemble or modify a Memory Card.
- Do not expose Memory Card to strong impacts, pressure or liquids.
- Do not touch Memory Card terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- Keep a Memory Card away from dust, high humidity. or excessive heat.
- Do not use in the presence of corrosive gases.
- Avoid heat sources and do not dispose of in fire.
- A Memory Card is a consumable item. Card performance deteriorates with usage.

#### **Inserting & Removing**

Turn handset power off before inserting or removing a Memory Card.

#### Inserting







With contacts down, insert Memory Card until it clicks



Replace Cover

#### Removing



Fully remove Cover, gently push down on card until it clicks









• If Memory Card Data Folder is open when Memory Card is removed, Phone Data Folder appears.

#### Note

- Do not apply excessive force when inserting/removing Memory Card; may damage Memory Card or handset.
- Take care not to lose removed Memory Card.
- Avoid touching/damaging Memory Card contacts when inserting/removing it.
- Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed; may damage handset/card or result in damaged/lost files.

#### Advanced

#### **ペ** Settings

- Check Memory Card details (IPP P.13-27)
- Format Memory Card (IPP P.13-27)
- Rename Memory Card (IPP P.13-27)
- Set Default Memory to Phone or Memory Card (IPP P.13-28)

#### **Viewing Memory Status**

View the following information.

- Available shared memory
- Status of SMS and S! Mail mailboxes
- Status of memory in Data Folder
- Status of Calendar items registered
- Status of Phonebooks (Handset and USIM Card)



#### $\rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow$ Memory

#### settings $\rightarrow$ Memory status



#### View each item

#### To view Shared memory

Shared memory

#### To view mail box status

Messaging  $\rightarrow$  S! Mail (By count), S! Mail (By size), or SMS

#### To view Data Folder status

Data Folder  $\rightarrow$  Phone memory or Memory card To view Calendar status

Calendar

To view Phonebook

Phonebook

#### Advanced

Advanced Settings IP.2-47

#### **ペ** Settings

- Clear Phone Memory (IPP P.13-28)
- View Memory status ( P.13-28)

#### **\** Advanced Settings

#### **Basic Operations**

#### Searching from Multi Search Result

In Multi Search result window,  $\textcircled{P} \rightarrow Search$  in results  $\rightarrow$  Enter keyword  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Search)

#### Voice or Video Call & S! Circle Talk from Multi Search Result

Highlight Phonebook entry or Call log in Multi Search

result  $\rightarrow \mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Call$ 

#### ■ To make a Voice/Video Call Voice call or Video call

#### To initiate S! Circle Talk

S! Circle Talk  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.10-7 Initiating S! Circle Talk ( $\bigcirc$ )

To make international call

International call  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.3-22)

#### Creating Message from Multi Search Result

Highlight Phonebook entry or Call log in Multi Search result  $\rightarrow \fbox \rightarrow Create message \rightarrow S! Mail or SMS$ ( $\bigcirc$  P.4-3 Sending S! Mail  $\bigcirc$ , P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages  $\bigcirc$ )

#### Using Functions from Multi Search Result

Highlight function items in Multi Search result  $\rightarrow \mathbf{x}$  $\rightarrow$  Go to Phonebook, Go to Messages, Go to Call Log, Go to Data folder, Go to Schedule, Go to Tasks, or Go to Notepad

#### Viewing Multi Search Result Details

Highlight Messages or Data Folder data in Multi Search result  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow$  Details

#### etting Main Menu

■ → 🖻 (Style) → Preset main menu → Magnifying Glass, Panorama world, ot Vivid Pixel

- Change menu appearance except Yahoo! Keitai menu.
- If Main menu is set, image set for Standby is released.

#### Slide Show

#### Editing Slide Show

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Camera \rightarrow Slide show$ To replace still image  $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Replace \rightarrow Check still image \rightarrow \mathbf{\Box}$  $(Done) \rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Set)  $\rightarrow$  Yes or No To change image order Highlight still image  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow$  Change order  $\rightarrow$ Use  $\blacksquare$  to change order  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Save)  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ (Set)  $\rightarrow$  Yes or No To delete still image Highlight still image  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}' \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow$ • (Set)  $\rightarrow$  Yes or No To add still image Highlight location with no still image set  $\rightarrow$  $\mathbf{x}$  (Add)  $\rightarrow$  Check still image  $\rightarrow \boldsymbol{\boxtimes}$  (Done)  $\rightarrow$ • (Set)  $\rightarrow$  Yes or No • Choose Yes to fit page to Display, or choose No for
- original proportion.

2 - 38

# 2 Basic Operations

#### **Text Entry**

#### Entering date/time

In text entry window, select Kanji/Kana entry mode and enter Hiragana  $\rightarrow$  M (EngNum $) \rightarrow$  Highlight conversion alternative  $\rightarrow$   $\fbox{O}$  (Select)

#### Toggling Double-byte and Single-byte Symbols

In text entry window, while conversion alternative for double/single byte symbols, **#**;

#### Adding Text to Templates

 $\square \rightarrow Templates \rightarrow Text \ templates$ 

To add the first entry

 $\square$  (Add new)  $\rightarrow$  Enter text

To add second or later entries

 $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Add \ new \rightarrow \text{Enter text}$ 

• Save up to 70 characters per template.

#### Editing Text Template

 $\square \rightarrow Templates \rightarrow Text \ templates \rightarrow Highlight$ template  $\rightarrow \square$  (Edit)  $\rightarrow$  Edit text

- $\rightarrow$  Templates  $\rightarrow$  Text templates To delete an entry Highlight template  $\rightarrow \mathbf{y} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Selected$  $\rightarrow$  Yes To delete multiple entries  $\mathbf{x}$   $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Multiple  $\rightarrow$  Check templates to delete  $\rightarrow \square$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow Yes$ To delete all templates  $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow All \rightarrow Enter Phone password$  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Yes Specify Range to Copy/Cut In text entry window,  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Copy$  or  $Cut \rightarrow Use$ to move cursor to the first character of the range to cut/copy and press  $\blacksquare$  (Start)  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\blacksquare$  to specify the range  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (End)
- To copy or cut all text in text entry window, press 😒 (All).
- Copied or cut text remains even after powered off.

#### Pasting Copied or Cut Tex

In text entry window, use F to move cursor to the position to paste  $\rightarrow$   $F \rightarrow Paste$ 

#### Undoing Text Entry

In text entry window,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Undo$ 

 In Kanji/Kana entry mode, undo operations immediately after performing such as Cut, Paste, or

Delete. Undoing conversion is also available.

#### ump to Top/End

In text entry window,  $\Sigma \rightarrow Cursor position \rightarrow Jump to top or Jump to end$ 

#### Quoting Saved Text Template

In S! Mail creation window,  $\mathbf{F} \rightarrow Text \ templates \rightarrow$  Select a template

## Quoting Phonebook or E-mail Address in Phonebook

In S! Mail creation window,  $\textcircled{P} \rightarrow Advanced \rightarrow Phonebook \rightarrow$  Search Phonebook and select entry (O P.2-21)  $\rightarrow$  Select an item

## Entering E-mail Address & URL to Phonebook Quickly



#### **User's Dictionary**



#### Phonebook



To save Address Use 🖂 to switch to → Select Address field  $\rightarrow$  Select Zip code field  $\rightarrow$  Enter Zip code  $\rightarrow$ Select Country field → Enter Country name → Select Province field → Enter Province name → Select City field → Enter City name → Select Street field  $\rightarrow$  Enter Street name  $\rightarrow$  Select Additional information field → Enter Additional information  $\rightarrow \square$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Select an icon  $\rightarrow \square$ (Save) To save URL Use 🖂 to switch to → Select Homepage field → Enter URL → Select an icon → Image: Save (Save) To save Memo Use  $\blacktriangleright$  to switch to  $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Select Memo field  $\rightarrow$  Enter Memo  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save) Items other than Group are unavailable in USIM Card Phonebook. Setting Incoming Image to Phonebook Entry  $\square \rightarrow \square$  (New)  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\square \rightarrow$  to switch to 2.0 → Select Picture field To set from saved still image *Pictures*  $\rightarrow$  Select a file  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save) With Memory Card inserted, select a file from Pictures or Digital camera folder. To set by capturing still image

Take photo  $\rightarrow$  Capture still image  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save)

#### To cancel set incoming image

 $Off \rightarrow \square$  (Save)

• When a file saved in Memory Card is set to incoming image or ringtone, a message appears asking whether to copy the file to 820SC before setting. When setting copy protected file, a confirmation appears asking whether to move file to 820SC before setting. Choose Yes to complete setting.

#### Setting Ringtone to Phonebook Entry

 $\square \rightarrow \square$  (New)  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\square$  to switch to ♣. → Select Ringtone settings field

#### To set Ringtone for Voice Call/Video Call/S! Circle Talk

*Voice call, Video call,* or *S*! *Circle Talk*  $\rightarrow$ Select a file location  $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow \square$  $(Play) \rightarrow \mathbf{x}$  (Select)  $\rightarrow \mathbf{\Box}$  (Done)  $\rightarrow \mathbf{\Box}$  (Save)

#### To set Ringtone for Message/S! Friend's Status

Messages, or S! Friend's Status → Assign tone  $\rightarrow$  Select a file location  $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$  $(Play) \rightarrow \mathbf{x}$  (Select)  $\rightarrow \mathbf{\square} (OK) \rightarrow \mathbf{\square} (Done)$  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save)

#### To set Ringtone duration for Message/S! Friend's Status

Messages, or S! Friend's Status → Duration  $\rightarrow$  Enter duration  $\rightarrow \square$  (OK)  $\rightarrow \square$  (Done)  $\rightarrow$ Image: Save (Save)

 When a file saved in Memory Card is set to incoming image or ringtone, a message appears asking whether to copy the file to 820SC before setting. When setting copy protected file, a confirmation appears asking whether to move file to 820SC before setting. Choose Yes to complete setting.

#### Setting Vibration to Phonebook Entry

 $\square \rightarrow \square$  (New)  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\square \rightarrow$  to switch to  $\square$ → Select Vibration settings field → Voice call, Video call, Messages, S! Friend's Status, or S! Circle Talk  $\rightarrow$  Off or Pattern 1 to Pattern 5  $\rightarrow \square$  (Play)  $\rightarrow$ 

■ (Select)  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Done)  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Save)

#### Adding International Code and Country Number to Phone Number in Phonebook

 $\Box \rightarrow$  Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21)  $\rightarrow$  Highlight phone number  $\rightarrow [\mathbf{x}_{l}] \rightarrow Call \rightarrow$ International call (OP.3-22 Making International Calls from Japan)

#### Creating Message from Phonebook

- $\square$   $\square$  Highlight Phonebook entry to send message
- $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Create message \rightarrow S! Mail or SMS \rightarrow$

(●P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ⑤, P.4-8 Sending SMS

Messages (5)

#### Adding Phonebook Entry to Speed Dial

- $\square$   $\square$  Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21)
- $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}_{i}$   $\rightarrow$  Add to Speed dial  $\rightarrow$  Select a field to add the entry

## Phonebook

 $\square$   $\rightarrow$  Highlight Phonebook entry  $\rightarrow$   $\square$   $\rightarrow$  Add to S! Friend's Status

 $\square$   $\rightarrow$  Highlight Phonebook entry  $\rightarrow$   $\square$   $\rightarrow$  View S! Friend's Status

- $\square \rightarrow \square \rightarrow New group \rightarrow Select Group name$
- field  $\rightarrow$  Enter group name  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save)
- Change search method to Group (●P.2-22) and view USIM Phonebook, to create new group (€P.2-42).

#### Adding Member to Group

- $\square$   $\rightarrow$  Select group to add member  $\rightarrow$   $\square$   $\rightarrow$  Add
- *member*  $\rightarrow$  Check member  $\rightarrow \square$  (Add)
- Set search method to Group to add (●P.2-22).

#### Removing Member from Group

- $\Box \rightarrow$  Select group to remove member  $\rightarrow \Xi \rightarrow$
- *Remove member*  $\rightarrow$  Check member  $\rightarrow \square$  (Remove)
- Set search method to Group to remove (●P.2-22).
- Removed member is not deleted from Phonebook.



 $\blacksquare \rightarrow \text{Highlight entry} \rightarrow \blacksquare' \rightarrow Copy \text{ to USIM or}$ 

Copy to phone

To delete an entry

Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes

- To copy entry details, press (Details) → Menu.
- To copy multiple entries

 $Multiple \rightarrow \text{Check entries} \rightarrow \boxdot (\text{Copy}) \rightarrow Yes$ 

■ To copy all Phone or USIM Card entries All → Yes

#### Copying Item

- $\square \rightarrow \text{Search Phonebook and select entry} (\bigcirc P.2-21)$
- $\rightarrow$  Highlight item  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow$  *Copy item*
- Paste copied item in text entry window.

#### Setting Default Phone Number or Mail Address

- $\square$   $\rightarrow$  Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21)
- →  $\mathbf{x}$  → Set default number → Voice call, Video call, or Messages → Select phone number or mail address →  $\mathbf{x}$  (Save)
- To leave default phone number or mail address undefined, highlight item and press 🔄 (Reset).

#### Printing Phonebook Details via Bluetooth®

- $\square$   $\rightarrow$  Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21)
- →  $\mathbf{x}_{i}$  → *Print via bluetooth* → ( $\mathbf{O}$  P.7-15 Printing via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> ( $\mathbf{S}$ )

#### Viewing USIM Card Service Number

 $\fbox{} \rightarrow \fbox{} \rightarrow \texttt{Service number}$ 

Toggling Phonebook View between USIM & Phone

- $\square \rightarrow \textcircled{r} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Change \ view \rightarrow Phone$ or USIM
- Change remains even if handset is powered off.

#### Changing Phonebook Search Method

 $\square \rightarrow \square' \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Search method$   $\blacksquare To search by reading$ 

*Reading*  $\rightarrow$  Enter first part of reading in text field  $\rightarrow$  View target Phonebook entry from search result

#### To search by group

 $Group \rightarrow$  Select a group  $\rightarrow$  Use [] to view target Phonebook entry from search result

• Alternatively, after selecting a group, enter first part of reading in text field.

#### Canceling Phonebook Secret Mode Temporarily

- $\square \rightarrow \textcircled{r} \rightarrow Unlock \ temporarily \rightarrow \texttt{Enter Phone}$ Password  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (OK)
- If *Secret mode* is set to *Hide*, Secret entries appear for current session only.

#### **Checking Memory Status**

 $\square \rightarrow \blacksquare' \rightarrow Memory status$ 

To delete viewed memory, press 
 47 Deleting Registered/Saved Data).

#### **Editing Phonebook**

- $\square$   $\rightarrow$  Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$ P.2-21)
- $\rightarrow \square$  (Edit)  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-18 Creating New Entries (2)
- To edit secret Phonebook entry, set *Secret mode* to *Show*.

2

#### Enter and Save Phone Number

Enter phone number  $\rightarrow \mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Add$  to Phonebook

#### To save new entry

 $New \rightarrow$  Enter each item  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Save)

#### To update entry

 $Update \rightarrow$  Search Phonebook and select entry

( $\bigcirc$ P.2-21) → Enter each item → 🖾 (Save)

- Alternatively, during a call, press read and select *Add* to *Phonebook*.
- Items other than Last name, Reading, E-mail address, and Group cannot be entered in entries for USIM Card.

#### **Renaming Group**

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Phonebook \rightarrow Group \ settings \rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow View \ from \ phone \ group \ of \ View \ from \ USIM \ group$ 

→ Select group to edit → Select Group name field → Enter group name →  $\bowtie$  (Save)

#### Changing Group Settings

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Phonebook \rightarrow Group \ settings \rightarrow Select$ group

#### To set Incoming image

Select Group image field  $\rightarrow$  Select a file location  $\rightarrow$  Select a file  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Save)

#### To set Ringtone for Voice Call/Video Call/S! Circle Talk

Select Ringtone settings field  $\rightarrow$  Voice call, Video call, or S! Circle Talk  $\rightarrow$  Select a file location  $\rightarrow$ Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$  (Play)  $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$  (Select)  $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$ (Done)  $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$  (Save)

#### To set Ringtone for Message/S! Friend's Status

Select Ringtone settings field  $\rightarrow$  Messages or S! Friend's Status  $\rightarrow$  Assign tone  $\rightarrow$  Select a file location  $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Play)  $\rightarrow \checkmark$ (Select)  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (OK)  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Done)  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Save)

To set Ringtone duration for Message/S! Friend's Status

Select Ringtone settings field  $\rightarrow$  Messages or S! Friend's Status  $\rightarrow$  Duration  $\rightarrow$  Enter duration

- $\rightarrow \boxtimes (\mathsf{OK}) \rightarrow \boxtimes (\mathsf{Done}) \rightarrow \boxtimes (\mathsf{Save})$
- To set Vibration

Select Vibration settings field  $\rightarrow$  Voice call, Video call, Messages, S! Friend's Status, or S! Circle Talk  $\rightarrow$  Off or Pattern 1 to Pattern  $5 \rightarrow$  $\boxdot$  (Play)  $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$  (Select)  $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$  (Done)  $\rightarrow$   $\bowtie$ (Save)

- To release set image or vibration and save the entry, highlight Image/Vibration field → x (Reset) → x (Save)
- To release set Ringtone and save the entry, select Ringtone field → highlight item to reset → ♥ (Reset) → ♥(Done) → ♥ (Save). To release all Ringtone, highlight Ringtone settings field → ♥ (Reset) → ♥ (Save).
- Set only for Phone group.
- Images and ringtones set for individual Phonebook entries take priority over those setting.

#### **Account Details**

#### Editing Account Details

■ →  $\square$ ... →  $\boxtimes$  (Edit) → Enter each item in the same way as Phonebook entry (O P.2-18 Creating New Entries (2) →  $\boxtimes$  (Save)

#### Sending Account Details as vFile

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow \blacksquare \Rightarrow \blacksquare \Rightarrow \blacksquare \Rightarrow Send Account details$  $\blacksquare To send via message$
- Ito send via message
- *Via message* → ( $\bigcirc$  P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ②)
- To send via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Via bluetooth  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.12-7 Sending (2)
- To send via infrared Via infrared (●P.12-3)

#### Resetting Account Details

- $\blacksquare \to \blacksquare_{...} \to \mathbf{x}' \to Reset \ account \ details \to Yes$
- All Account details other than phone number saved in USIM Card are reset.

#### Creating vFile and Save in Data Folder

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow \blacksquare_{n,r} \rightarrow \blacksquare \Rightarrow Save to Data Folder \rightarrow$ Phone of Memory card  $\rightarrow$  Yes
- The save location can be set to Memory card if inserted.

#### Copying Item in Account Details

#### Printing with Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Compatible Printer

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow \blacksquare \Rightarrow \blacksquare \Rightarrow \blacksquare' \Rightarrow Print via bluetooth \Rightarrow$   $(\textcircled{P},7-15 Printing via Bluetooth \textcircled{@}{5})$ 

#### Sending Message to E-mail Address in Account Details

■ →  $\square$ ... → Highlight E-mail address → ■ (Send) → ( $\bigcirc$  P.4-3 Sending S! Mail  $\bigcirc$ )

#### Accessing URL in Account Details

#### **Viewing Files**

#### Enlarging and Viewing Image

- → Data Folder → Pictures → Highlight a file
- $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (View)  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (FULL)  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Zoom)
- Use a or to enlarge or reduce image, or use to scroll.

#### /iewing Slide Show

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Pictures \rightarrow Highlight a file$
- $\rightarrow$  (View)  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow$  Slide show
- To pause/resume Slide show, press (Pause/ Restart).
- To stop Slide show, press 🖾 (Stop).

#### Changing Picture View of Group

- $\rightarrow$  (View)  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\frown$  to select sorting order  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\frown$  to move images by groups

#### Guide in Full Screen View

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Pictures \rightarrow Highlight a file$
- $\rightarrow \blacksquare (View) \rightarrow \blacksquare (FULL) \rightarrow \boxtimes$
- The guide disappears when about 3 seconds elapsed after image is displayed.

#### Viewing Graphics/Animation in SVG, SVGZ, & SWF

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Select \ a \ folder \rightarrow Select \ a$
- To toggle Full Screen/Normal view Full Screen view of Normal view

#### To zoom in/out

- $Zoom \rightarrow \text{Press} \boxtimes (\textcircled{R}), \boxdot (\textcircled{R}) \rightarrow \text{Use}$ to scroll  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\blacksquare$  to return to the previous display
- To pause/resume Flash<sup>®</sup> image Pause of Resume
- To change image quality
  - Quality  $\rightarrow$  High, Medium, or Low
- **To rotate screen by 90 degrees** Rotate  $\rightarrow$  90\*R or 90\*L

#### Accessing Link in File



 $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Browser\ access$ 

 Access linked site included in electronic comic/photo book files.

#### Confirming File/Folder Details

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Select a \ file/folder \rightarrow$ Highlight a file/folder  $\Rightarrow \ r \rightarrow Details$ 

#### Toggling Memory Card and Phone Data Folder

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Select a \ folder \rightarrow Highlight$
- a file  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow$  Memory card or Phone
- Available when Memory Card is inserted.

#### File/Folder Management

#### Creating Flash<sup>®</sup> Image from Still Image

■ → Data Folder → Select a folder → Select a file →  $\mathbf{Y}$  → Edit → Dynamic effect → (�P.7-14 Create Flash<sup>®</sup> 2)

#### Combining Image with Still Image

■ → Data Folder → Select a folder → Select a file →  $\mathbf{\nabla}$  → Edit → mPostcard → ( $\mathbf{O}$ P.7-13 Compositing Still Images (3)

#### Sending Files

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Select \ a \ folder \rightarrow Select \ a \ file \rightarrow \square \ Select \ a$ 

To send via message

*Via message*  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.4-3 Sending S! Mail  $\bigcirc$ )

To send via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>

*Via bluetooth*  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.12-7 Sending (2)

■ To send via infrared Via infrared (●P.12-3)

#### Printing Still Images via USB or Bluetooth®

■ → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$  → *Print via* 

#### USB

 $USB \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.7-15$  Printing via USB  $(\bigcirc)$ 

#### Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>

Bluetooth  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.7-15 Printing via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> (5)

#### Selecting Folder List

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Select a \ folder \rightarrow Highlight$
- a file  $\rightarrow$  **Y**  $\rightarrow$  *View by*  $\rightarrow$  *List* or *Thumbnail*

#### Sorting Files

- → Data Folder → Select a folder → Highlight
- a file  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow$  Sort by  $\rightarrow$  Select an item
- Sort by following order.
- Descending order of date (Date)
- File type (Type)
- File name (Name)
- Ascending order of file size (Size)
- Title (Title)
- Content Key status (Activation status)
- Folders appear at the top of list.
- When selecting *Type*, files are sorted in alphabetical order by file extension.
- When selecting *Name*, files are sorted in order of numerics → alphabets → Japanese syllabary.
- Files sorted by Title are Ring songs tones, Music, Videos, Books, S! Familiar Usability, and S! Mail templates.
- When selected Activation status, files appear as follows: Unrestricted → Nontransferable → Copyright Protected (Content Key valid) → Copyright Protected (Content Key expired) → Invalid Nontransferable.

#### Adding Files to Playlist

■ → Data Folder → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  $\mathbf{x}$  → Manage → Add to playlist

#### Showing & Hiding File/Folder Information

- → Data Folder → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  $\overrightarrow{\mathbf{v}}$  → Manage → Show file info or Hide file info
- In List window for Folder with thumbnail view, set to show folder/file name when highlighted.

#### Deleting Content Key

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Select a \ folder \rightarrow Highlight$
- a file  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow$  Manage  $\rightarrow$  Content key info

#### To delete an entry

- Highlight content key to delete  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow$  Delete
- $\rightarrow$  Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes
- To delete all entries

 $rac{}{r}$  → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone password →  $rac{}{=}$  (OK) → *Yes* 

#### Managing Content Key in Data Fold



#### Canceling Secret Setting Temporarily

■ → Data Folder → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  $\boxed{\mathbf{y}}$  → Unlock temporarily → Enter Phone Password →  $\boxed{\mathbf{u}}$  (OK)

#### Activating Camera Mode

■ → Data Folder → Pictures → In File list window,  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow Take \ photo$ 

#### Activating Video Mode

■ → Data Folder → Videos → In File list window,  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow Record$  video

#### **Recording Sound**

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Ring \ songs \cdot tones \rightarrow In$ File list window,  $\textcircled{r} \rightarrow Record \ sound$ 

#### Setting & Canceling File Lock

■ → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  $\mathbf{x}$  → *Lock* or *Unlock* 

• Set file lock to restrict renaming, moving, or deleting.

#### Setting Secret in Sub-folder

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Highlight \ created \ sub-folder$ 

- →  $\mathbf{x}$  → Set secret or Unset secret → Enter Phone password →  $\mathbf{\bullet}$  (OK)
- Set Secret data folder to Hide to hide created subfolders by Set secret. To cancel setting, set Secret data folder to Show.

#### Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key

■ → Data Folder → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  $\mathbf{x}$  → Manage → Download Content key

#### Setting Images to Wallpaper etc.

- → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Highlight a file → 🖾 (Set as)
- To set image to Wallpaper

*Wallpaper*  $\rightarrow$  Preview the image  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Set)

To set image to Incoming image

Caller ID → Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21) → • (Set)

- To set image to Alternative picture Still picture → ● (OK)
- When a file saved in Memory Card is set, a message appears asking whether to copy the file to 820SC before setting. When setting copy protected file, a confirmation appears asking whether to move file to 820SC before setting. Choose Yes to complete setting.

#### Setting Flash<sup>®</sup> File as Wallpaper

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Flash^{\textcircled{\mbox{$\mathbb{R}}$}} \rightarrow Highlight a file$
- →  $\boxdot$  (Set as) → *Wallpaper* → Preview the image →  $\blacksquare$  (Set)

#### Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode

■ → Data Folder → Select a folder → Highlight a file → 🖾 (Set as)

#### To set to Ringtone for each function

Voice ringtone, Video ringtone, Message ringtone, S! Friend's Status ringtone, S! Circle Talk ringtone, Missed call notification ringtone, S! Quick News ringtone, or Delivery report ringtone

#### To set to Ringtone for Phonebook

Caller ringtone  $\rightarrow$  Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21)

- When a file saved in Memory Card is set, a message appears asking whether to copy the file to 820SC before setting. When setting copy protected file, a confirmation appears asking whether to move file to 820SC before setting. Choose Yes to complete setting.
- Only Copyright protected MPEG4 AAC, AAC+, or Enhanced AAC+ files can be set.

#### Setting Video File to Ringtone in Normal Mode

■ → Data Folder → Select a folder → Highlight a file → 🖾 (Set as)

- To set to Ringtone for each function Voice ringtone or Video ringtone
- To set to Ringtone for Phonebook

Caller ringtone  $\rightarrow$  Select Phonebook entry to set ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21)

• Only Copyright protected MPEG4 (mp4, 3gp) AAC, AAC+, or Enhanced AAC+ files can be set.

#### Registering vFile to Other Functions

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Other \ documents \rightarrow Select$ vFile  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Resister)
- Register a vCard or vCalendar files saved in Data Folder to Phonebook or Calendar.

# 2 Basic Operations

#### **Face Link**

#### Making a Call & Sending Message from Face Linked Standby Image

In Standby with Face Link set,  $\frown$  (2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$  (Call)

#### To make a Call

Voice call or Video call

#### To send a message

 $Message \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-3 \text{ Sending S! Mail } \bigcirc)$ 

• Only available from images with Face Link set (♥P.2-6).

#### Setting Face Linked Image to Caller ID Image

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Select \ a \ folder \rightarrow Select \ a$
- file  $\rightarrow$   $\frown$   $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$  (Set as)  $\rightarrow$  *Caller ID*  $\rightarrow$  Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21)  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Set)
- The image is cut by Face Link frame and set to Caller ID image.

#### **Memory Status**

#### Deleting Registered/Saved Data

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Memory \ settings \rightarrow Memory$
- $status \rightarrow$  Select function  $\rightarrow$  Highlight item  $\rightarrow \boxdot$
- (Delete)  $\rightarrow$  Yes  $\rightarrow$  View item list

#### ■ To delete an entry/multiple entries Check item $\rightarrow \bowtie$ (Delete) $\rightarrow$ Yes

- To delete all entries  $\boxed{Y}$  (Mark all)  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{O}$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow$  Enter Phone Password  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{O}$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Yes
- Delete data in Mailbox, Data Folder, Calendar, or Phonebook.
- When the data contain contents that are locked or set for another function, a message appears asking whether to delete the file. If you choose *Yes*, the deletion is performed. If you choose *No*, only files without functions or locks set are deleted.

# Calling

Making a Call
Receiving a Call
Answering Machine
Activating & Canceling
Playing Recordings
Deleting Recordings
Video Call
Getting Started
Viewing Video Call Window
Making a Video Call
Receiving a Video Call
Speed Dial
Saving as Phone Numbers
Using Speed Dial
Call Time & Cost 3-8
Checking Call Time & Cost
Call Log Records
Viewing Call Log Records
Calling Call Log Records 3-9
Deleting Call Log Records 3-10
Global Roaming Service
Changing Network Mode 3-11
Setting Network
Making a Call Overseas
Optional Services
Voice Mail
Setting Voice Mail
Canceling Voice Mail
Listening to Voice Mail Message 3-15
Activating Incoming Call Notification
Call Forwarding
Activating Call Forwarding
Canceling Call Forwarding

/		
	5	

Call Waiting
Activating & Canceling Call Waiting
Receiving a Second Call
Conference Call
Making New Call during a Call
Switching Party
Talking with All Parties
Call Barring
Restricting Outgoing/Incoming Calls
Canceling All Barring
Checking Call Barring Status
Changing Network Password
Caller ID
Showing & Hiding Caller ID
Advanced Settings
Call
Video Call
Call Logs
Conference Call

#### Making a Call

See "Using Phonebook" (�P.2-21) to make a call from Phonebook, or see "Making a Video Call" (�P.3-5) to make a Video Call.

#### Enter a phone number including area code





Calling

Confirm entered phone number → <a>></a> or <a>></a> (Call)



- To correct entered digit, use to move cursor to the digit to be deleted, and press [[]]. Press [[]]]. for 1+ seconds to delete all.
- To enter "P (Pause)", press \*\*\*\* twice. To enter "+(International code)", press •\*\* for 1+ seconds.
- When the line is busy, press (a) to end the call and try again later. If *Auto Redial* (**O**P.13-25) is On, number is automatically redialed. Press (cancel) or (b) to cancel redialing.
- If Stereo Earphone Microphone is connected, set *Earphone call activate* to *On*, to call specified phone number by pressing the switch of Stereo Earphone Microphone for 1+ seconds. Press again for 1+ seconds to end the call.

#### Advanced

- **\. Advanced Settings** (B) P.3-22
- Initiating S! Circle Talk by Entering Phone Number
- Saving Entered Phone Number to Phonebook
- Creating New Message Addressed to Entered Number
- Switching Phone Number Entry Window to Phonebook Window
- Switching Phone Number Entry Window to Call Log Window
- Making International Calls from Japan
- Calling with Your Phone Number Shown
- Talking in Small Voice
- Switching Headset/Phone

- Setting Mute
- Making New Call during a Call
- Searching Phonebook during a Call
- Saving the Other Party's Phone Number to Phonebook
- Viewing Call Log during a Call
- Creating New Message Addressed to the Other Party's Phone Number
- Sending Push Tones
- Recording Hearing Voice
- Creating Text Memo during a Call
- Ending Call by Menu Operation

#### **ペ** Settings

- Show or hide your own number when placing calls (IPP P.13-25)
- Set 820SC to automatically redial busy numbers (IPP.13-25)

3

#### **Receiving a Call**



Voice Call window appears,



- To end the call, 🔊
- If Any key answer is On, press any key except ☑, ■, ☞, ☞, 個, and ☑ to accept call.
- To place caller on hold, press 🔊 . To connect the call, press 
  (Accept).
- To adjust ringer volume, press 🗟 or 🗟
- If Stereo Earphone Microphone is connected, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to accept Voice Calls. Press again for 1+ seconds to end the call

#### Ringtone

Specify ringtones by Phonebook entry or Category (●P.2-41, P.2-43). If not set, active Mode Setting applies (€P.1-11).

If Secret mode is set to *Hide* when a call from a Secret entry is received, active Mode Setting applies.

#### Incoming Call Window

If a caller sends Caller ID, phone number appears. If saved in Phonebook, name also appears. If caller hides Caller ID. Withheld appears.

If incoming image has been saved in Phonebook or for the group, the image also appears ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-40, P.2-43).

If Secret mode is set to *Hide* when a call from a Secret entry is received, only number appears.

#### Missed Call Window

Missed Call window appears for unanswered calls. Press (View) to view Received calls (OP.3-9).

#### • When you cannot answer a call

Use Call Forwarding or Voice Mail to handle calls. While handset rings/vibrates, press 🖾 (Forward) to forward call to Voice Mail or forwarding number (●P.3-14, P.3-16). Alternatively, press (Record) to record caller message on 820SC (€P.3-4).

#### Advanced

#### Advanced Settings B P.3-22

#### **K** Settings

- Set Any key answer (IPP P.13-19)
- Activate or cancel 820SC open-to-answer calls function ( @ P.13-19)
- Accept or reject calls from specified phone numbers ( P.13-25)
- Create or edit Black List (IPP P.13-25)
- Accept or reject calls from unknown numbers (IPP P.13-25)
- Accept or reject calls when number is withheld (IPP P.13-25)
- Accept or reject calls from payphones (IPP P.13-25)
- Accept or reject calls when number is unavailable (CPP.13-25)

#### **Answering Machine**

Handset records up to three 15-second caller messages.

#### **Activating & Canceling**





- When On, 🖾 appears in Standby.
- Alternatively, in Standby, press set for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Answering Machine.

#### Note

 Answering Machine is not available if 820SC is off, out-of-range, or in Offline mode. Use Voice Mail (separate subscription required) to handle missed incoming calls.
 If 820SC shared memory (\$P.14-17) is below 600 KB. Answering Machine cannot be used.

#### **Playing Recordings**



 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Call$ settings  $\rightarrow Answering$ 

#### machine → Recordings Recordings





Highlight a voice file  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Play)

- When a message is recorded, 🖾 appears in Standby.
- Alternatively, in Standby, press () to play recorded message.

#### **Deleting Recordings**



 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Call$ settings  $\rightarrow Answering$ machine  $\rightarrow Recordings$ 



# Delete recording To delete an entry Highlight content → ☑ (Delete) →

*Yes* 

■ IO delete all entries  $\mathbf{x}'$  (Delete all) → Enter Phone

Password  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Yes

3

#### **Video Call**

#### **Getting Started**

Exchange voice/video with compatible 3G handsets.

- It may be difficult to use Speaker Phone (
   P.3-24) with earpiece volume raised. Lower volume or use Stereo Earphone Microphone.
- Ambient noise may hamper voice quality. Use Stereo Earphone Microphone.
- Using Speaker Phone in public may disturb others; please mind your mobile manners.

#### Note

• Video Calls to incompatible handsets may be disconnected; charges apply.

#### **Viewing Video Call Window**



- 1 The other party's name or phone number
- 2 Large Image (Normally, Incoming Image)
- 3 Call duration
- 4 Small Display (Normally, Outgoing Image)
- 6 Video Call menu icons
  - 🕷 / 🐠 : Toggle Loudspeaker off/on
  - : Toggle Incoming Image size
  - III / Description: Toggle My Image paused/play

  - Image paused/play
  - 📸 : Toggle Internal Camera/External Camera
- O Description of the icon at cursor position

#### **Making a Video Call**

Call via Phonebook entries/Call Log records or dial directly.



## Enter a phone number including area code





• When Video Call cannot be connected

When confirmation appears, press (Retry)  $\rightarrow$ *Voice call* or *Create message*; or Select *View contact details* to open Phonebook; *Add to Phonebook* to save number to Phone or USIM Card.

- Set handset response when Video Call cannot be connected (IP P.13-24)
- Show or hide your own image for Video Calls (IPP P.13-24)
- Show or hide your own number when placing calls (IPP P.13-25)
- Set 820SC to automatically redial busy numbers (IPP P.13-25)

**Receiving a Video Call** 



Video Call window appears,



• Send My Image confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* or *No*.



To end the call,

- Press 🗟 or 🖻 to adjust ringer volume while 820SC rings.
- If Stereo Earphone Microphone is connected, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to answer the Video Call. Press again to end Call.
- To disconnect a Video Call without answering, press ☑ (Forward) or ☞ (Reject).

#### Advanced

#### Advanced Settings D-3-24

- Using Option Menu
- Showing or Hiding Caller ID
- Switching Headset/Handset Earpiece
- Putting a Video Call On Hold
- Searching Phonebook during a Video Call
- Saving the Other Party's Phone Number to Phonebook
- Sending Message Addressed to Phone Number
- Sending Push Tones
- Creating and Saving Text Memo in Video Call
- Viewing Phonebook Entry Details

#### **₹** Settings

- Set Alternative Picture to appear in place of My Image (IPP P.13-24)
- Adjust outgoing video quality (IPP P.13-24)
- Set Hold setting (IPP P.13-24)
- Activate or cancel Speaker Phone during Video Call (CPP P.13-24)
- Set Backlight ( P.13-24)

3

Calling

- After pressing or After pressing (Answer) in step (Ny Image appears, but is not sent. Confirmation appears, choose Yes to send My Image, or No to send Alternative Picture. When Video Call connects, My Image or Alternative Picture appears in small display.
- To adjust volume, press 🚺 during a Video Call.
- To enlarge or reduce outgoing image, press 🗟 or 🔄
- When outgoing image is canceled, Alternative picture is sent to the other party.

#### Advanced

#### **₹** Settings

- Set Alternative Picture to appear in place of My Image (IPP P.13-24)
- Adjust incoming video quality (IPP P.13-24)
- Activate or cancel voice muting for Video Call (IBP P.13-24)
- Answer Voice Call from specified party automatically (IPP P.13-24)
- Create Auto Answer List (IPP P.13-24)
- Accept or reject calls from specified phone numbers (IPP P.13-25)
- Create or edit Black List (IPP P.13-25)
- Accept or reject calls from unknown numbers (IPP P.13-25)
- Accept or reject calls when number is withheld (IPP P.13-25)
- Accept or reject calls from payphones (IPP P.13-25)
- Accept or reject calls when number is unavailable (IPP P.13-25)

#### **Speed Dial**

#### **Saving as Phone Numbers**

Save up to ten frequently used phone numbers.



 $\rightarrow$  Phonebook  $\rightarrow$  Speed

	Speed dial
0	
1	Empty
2	Empty
3	Empty
4	Empty
5	Empty
6	Empty
	Select

Select number to save



Search Phonebook and select entry (⊗P.2-21) → Select number

- To change saved phone number, highlight entry →
   (Change) → Yes → Search Phonebook and select entry (◆P.2-21) → Select number.
- To delete saved phone number, highlight entry  $\rightarrow$ **Select** *Delete*.
- To delete all, press  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow$  Select *Clear all*.
- Secret entry phone numbers cannot be saved as Speed Dial.
- Setting a Speed Dial number to Secret cancels Speed Dial setting automatically.

#### **Using Speed Dial**

C:Speed call C(long):Speed Video



Select from  $\Box_{\tilde{a}}^{p}$  to  $\Xi_{\tilde{a}}^{5}$ 

S! Mail 💕

- 🔁 🔳 ( 🚏 ) or 🦳
- After Step ①, press for 1+ seconds for Video Call, press (S! Mai) to compose a message.
- Enter Entry No. with Simple search On, for names and phone numbers. The display disappears in about 5 seconds. When for appears, make a call with Speed Dial.

#### **Call Time & Cost**

Call settings menu includes items below.

Set	Settings
All calls	Confirm approximate total call time / cost or reset it.
Last call	Confirm approximate call time/cost of the previous call.
Data counter	Confirm approximate incoming / outgoing data volume or reset it.
Show charge after call	Set whether to show call time/cost after ending a call.
Set currency	Set or change currency.
Set max cost limit	Set the limit for call cost.

 Show charge after call may not be available depending on service status. Set max cost limit is not available when Show charge after call is disabled.

#### **Checking Call Time & Cost**



 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Call$ settings  $\rightarrow Call$  time & cost

1 All calls 2 Last call 3 Data counter
2 Data counter
3 Data Counter
4 Show charge afte.
5 Set currency
6 Set max cost lim-
Select

Select item

• To reset item, highlight it and press 🖾 (Reset).

#### Advanced

#### **∢** Settings

- Check Call Time/Cost (IPP P.13-22)
- Check last Call Time/Cost (IPP P.13-23)
- Check Data Counter (IPP P.13-23)
- Show or hide Call Time/Cost after calls (IPP.13-23)
- Change Call Cost Currency (IPP P.13-23)
- Set Call Cost Limit (IPP P.13-23)
- Cancel Call Cost Limit (IPP P.13-23)

# Calling

3

#### **Call Log Records**

Select Received Calls or Dialed Calls. Confirm call type, number and call time & cost, or dial records directly. Call Log holds up to 500 Received Call and Dialed Call records each.

#### Viewing Call Log Records

0

(Received calls) or
 (Dialed calls)



Highlight record → ■ (Details)

- Call Log Record Icons Call Log Record Icons Call Log Record Icons Call Log Record Icons Call Log Received Call Call Log Received Video Call Call Log Received S! Circle Talk Call Log Received S! Circle Talk Call Log Received S! Circle Talk Call Log Received Video Call Call Log Received Video Call
  - E: Voice Mail Notification
  - E Received Call Notification
- If Secret mode is set to Hide, names do not appear in Call Log for Secret Phonebook entries.

#### **Calling Call Log Records**



(Received calls) or
 (Dialed calls)



#### Make a call

To make a call
 Highlight record → ☑ (Call) → Voice call

 To make a Video Call
 Highlight record → ☑ (Call) → Video call

 To make S! Circle Talk

Highlight record  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Call)  $\rightarrow$  *Call S! Circle Talk* 

#### **Deleting Call Log Records**

**Deleting a Single Records** 

Dec. 15 15:01 KobayashiDa Dec. 15 13:23 NakamuraMa

(Received calls) or
 (Dialed calls)
 Received calls

2 Highlight record  $\rightarrow \boxed{\mathbb{Y}} \rightarrow$ Delete  $\rightarrow$  Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes

To confirm and delete records one by one, after
 highlight record → 

 (Details) → Confirm and press 

 *T* → *Delete* → *Yes*

**Deleting Multiple Records** ▶□ (Received calls) or □◄ (Dialed calls) Received calls KobavashiDaisu... NakamuraMai  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Multiple Received calls 🛯 🏭 SatoTakuya SuzukiKaori (obavashiDaisuke NakamuraMai 📓 SatoTakuva NakamuraMai 🔲 🌆 KobayashiDaisuke 📲 Suzuk i Kaor i Select Mark al Check records Received calls 🗖 🏭 SatoTakuya 🛛 🔐 Suzuk i Kaor i 🗹 🔊 🖥 Kobavash i Da i suke 🛛 🎜 NakamuraMai 📓 SatoTakuva 🛛 🔐 NakamuraMai 🛛 ቭ KobayashiDaisuke 🔲 📲 Suzuk i Kaor i Delete Select Unmark a



#### **Deleting All Records**

Delete all records in each Call Log at once.



Received calls				
-	5		Ē	
📓 Sa	toTa	kuya		
📲 Su	zuki	Каог		•
Der				
🖌 Ko	baya	shiDa	aisu…	•
Der		13:23		6. m
l Na	kamu	гаМа		•
Der				
Call	۵	)etai	ils	Menu



Calling

3

#### Advanced

- Advanced Settings IP.3-26
- Making Video Calls from Call Log
- Calling S! Circle Talk from Call Log
- Rejoining S! Circle Talk
- Sending Message in Call Log
- Saving Call Log Numbers to Phonebook
- Saving Call Log Numbers to Black List
- Viewing Phonebook Entry Details via Call Log
- Adding International Code and Country Number to Phone Number in Call Log
- Showing Caller ID when Calling from Call Log

#### **Global Roaming Service**

Apply for Global Roaming Service beforehand. For information on overseas usage or to apply for service, see SoftBank Mobile Website: http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/global\_service/

#### **Changing Network Mode**

By default setting, network mode is to be activated automatically. Manual setting is also available.

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Call$ settings  $\rightarrow Optional services$
- $\rightarrow$  International call  $\rightarrow$  Select network
- Select network 1 Automatic 2 Manual Select



#### Select network mode

#### To activate automatically *Automatic*

To activate manually

Manual  $\rightarrow$  3G/GSM, 3G, or GSM

#### Network Mode Setting

Automatic: Automatically switches the mode according to network condition. *3G*: Use within 3G / UMTS service areas in and outside Japan. *GSM*: Use within GSM service areas outside Japan.

• Usually set Automatic.
# Setting Network

# Selecting Network to Access

Change network (service provider) for the area you use handset. Setting in Manual is also available.

> $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Call settings  $\rightarrow$  Optional services  $\rightarrow$  International call  $\rightarrow$  Select operator





# Select network mode

#### To set automatically

Automatic

To specify operator

 $Manual \rightarrow \text{Select item}$ 

# **Setting Preferred Network**

Edit network list preferentially selected when Automatic is set.

- $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Call settings  $\rightarrow$  Optional services  $\rightarrow$  International call  $\rightarrow$  Select

 $operator \rightarrow Preferred \ network$ 

Preferred network
2 Add operator
Select

- When added in Step 2, network is added above selected entry. When added from Add operator, it is added at the last of the list.
- Items to set in Add operator is as follows. Country number: Up to three digits Network code: Up to three digits Select operator: Select from GSM/3G

# **Edit Preferred network list**

# To select and add from list

Set preferred  $\rightarrow$  Select a network to insert  $\rightarrow$  Highlight a network to insert from Network list  $\rightarrow$ (Insert)

# To add network

Add operator  $\rightarrow$  Enter Country number  $\rightarrow$  Enter Network code  $\rightarrow$ GSM or 3G

3

Calling

# **Making a Call Overseas**



Enter a phone number

including area code  $\rightarrow$   $\frown$ 

Make a call

To make a call to Japan

To Japan

To make a call to a country other than Japan

 $Other \ country \rightarrow Select \ country \ to \ call$ 

To make a call to landline or handset in the country you stay Keep number

• To make a call by directly entering Country number, press D.: for 1+ seconds to enter "+". Enter Country number, phone number excluding the first "0", and press to dial. To make a call to Italy, include the first "0" if any.

• If "+ Country number" is included in the beginning of phone number, Step 2 is not required.

<b>Optional Services</b>	<b>Optional</b>	Services
--------------------------	-----------------	----------

Available optional services are as follows.

Service	Description
Voice Mail	Divert all or all unanswered calls to Voice Mail Center; access caller messages via handset from within the service area or via a touchtone phone anywhere.
	<ul> <li>Set Missed call notification to notify missed calls by SMS when handset is off or out-of-range.</li> <li>(€ P.3-15)</li> </ul>
Call Forwarding	When you know you will be unable to answer calls, automatically divert calls to a specified number.
Call Waiting <sup>*</sup>	Put the line on hold to answer another line or alternate between lines. Or you can toggle lines among multiple lines simultaneously.

Service	Description
Conference Call <sup>*</sup>	Open another line while one is engaged; toggle lines or talk on up to six parties simultaneously.
Call Barring	Restrict incoming or outgoing calls by condition.
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when making calls.

\* A separate subscription is required to use this service.

#### Note

 When *Out* appears, services are unavailable. For details on operations from landline phones or services, contact Customer Service (�P.14-30).

# **Voice Mail**

According to the following conditions, handset forwards incoming voice Call to Voice Mail Center.

Forwardi Conditio	Description	
Always	Handset does not ring/vibrate for incoming calls; calls are diverted automatically. Missed Call does not appear.	
No reply	Unanswered calls are diverted after the specified ring time, or when the line is busy or handset is out-of-range.	

#### Note

Calling

- Voice Mail and Call Forwarding cannot be activated at the same time.
- Activating Voice Mail cancels Call Forwarding previously activated.

# **Setting Voice Mail**



2

- $\bullet \quad \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Call$
- settings  $\rightarrow$  Optional services
- → Voice mail/Call forwarding
- $\rightarrow$  Voice mail on



- Select an item
- To transfer immediately Always (0 sec.)

To set duration before transfer

No reply (5 to 30 sec.)  $\rightarrow$  5 seconds, 10 seconds, 15 seconds, 20 seconds, 25 seconds, or 30 seconds

# **Canceling Voice Mail**



- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Call$ settings  $\rightarrow Optional services$
- $\rightarrow$  Voice mail/Call forwarding
- $\rightarrow$  Deactivate All  $\rightarrow$  Yes



#### Note

 Call Forwarding service previously activated is also canceled.

# Listening to Voice Mail Message

When a caller saves a Voice Mail message, a notification appears in Standby and 🗱 appears at the top of Display.



# Notification

When Notification Appears

Connect to Voice Mail Center as described below and follow voice guidance.



- To confirm the details of the message, press (View) while notification is displayed.
- Press **Y** (Cancel) to clear the notification without playing the message.
- Voice Mail indicator diagpears when messages are accessed via 820SC.

# When Notification does not Appear



# Activating Incoming Call Notification

SMS is delivered for unanswered calls because handset is outside service area or off. Alternatively, SMS is delivered when a caller saves a message at Voice Mail Center while the line is engaged.



• To call from landline phone in Japan, enter "090-665-1414" and press .



# Follow guidance

- SMS notification is saved as Received call.
- No charge is required for Incoming Call Notification.

# Advanced

#### Rettings

- Listen to Voice Mail message (IPP P.13-21)
- Set Missed Call Notification (IPP.13-22)

# **Call Forwarding**

Set forwarding condition and number, by call type (Voice Call or Video Call), beforehand, to divert incoming calls to a specified number.

# Note

- Call Forwarding and Voice Mail cannot be used at the same time.
- Activating Call Forwarding cancels Voice Mail previously activated.

# **Activating Call Forwarding**

Specify a forwarding number beforehand. Specify Forwarding number in, *Voice/Video call, Voice call, or Video call.* 

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Call$ 
  - settings → Optional services
  - → Voice mail/Call forwarding
  - → Call forwarding on





# Voice/Video call, Voice call, or Video call



# Always (0 sec.) or No reply (5 to 30 sec.)



# Set forwarding number

# To set previously forwarded number

Last set number  $\rightarrow$  Select previously forwarded number

# To set from Phonebook

*Phonebook* → Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$ P.2-21)

# To set by entering phone number

*Enter number*  $\rightarrow$  Enter phone number

# **Canceling Call Forwarding**

Cancel all Diverts services regardless of the condition.

- $\blacksquare \to Settings \to Call \\ settings \to Optional services$
- $\rightarrow$  Voice mail/Call forwarding
- $\rightarrow$  Deactivate All  $\rightarrow$  Yes



#### Note

• Voice Mail service previously activated is also canceled.

3-16

3

# Advanced

#### **۲** Settings

- Activate and set Forwarding (IPP P.13-21)
- Confirm current Voice Mail/Call Forwarding settings (IPP P.13-21)

# **Call Waiting**

A separate subscription is required to use this service. This function is only applicable to Voice Calls.

# Activating & Canceling Call Waiting

■ → Settings → Call settings → Optional services → Call waiting





• To check current status, select *Get status* in Step 2.

# **Receiving a Second Call**

When there is another incoming call during a call, a specific interrupt sound and display notifies. Place the current call on hold and answer the second call.



• To disconnect the current call to answer the new incoming call, select *End Active call*.



To switch party to talk, highlight party →

• (Multi talk)  $\rightarrow$  Switch



🚺 End a call

# To end selected call

Highlight party  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Multi talk)  $\rightarrow$  End this call

To end all calls

 $\blacksquare (Multi talk) \rightarrow End all calls$ 

- When Call Forwarding or Voice Mail is set and the second call is not answered, it is forwarded to a forwarding destination or Voice Mail Center. When the forwarding condition is set to *Always*, the Call Waiting service is unavailable.

# Advanced

# ۲**€ Settings**

- Confirm current Call Waiting settings (IPP.13-21)

# **Conference Call**

A separate subscription is required to use this service. Talk with a maximum of 6 parties simultaneously.

# Making New Call during a Call

When a new call is connected, first party is placed on hold.

Enter phone number during a call



• To select from Phonebook,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Phonebook \rightarrow$  search Phonebook and select entry ( $\mathbf{O}$ P.2-21).

 $(Call) \rightarrow Call with the party$ 



3



 When the connected party ends the call during Conference Call, a party on hold remains on-hold state. To talk with the party on hold, press (Answer) and cancel on-hold.

# **Talking with All Parties**

While connected with multiple parties, (Multi

talk)  $\rightarrow$  Call to all



- To talk with one party again, highlight party, press (Multi talk), and select Call to this person
- To end all calls, press 
  (Multi talk) and select *End all calls*.
- When one party ends the call during Conference Call, continue talking with remaining parties.

## Advanced

Advanced Settings IP.3-27

# Call Barring

Bar outgoing/incoming Voice, Video Calls or SMS by the conditions listed below.

	Item	Description	
Ou	tgoing Calls		
	Bar all outgoing calls	Deactivates sending calls and SMS sending, except emergency calls.	
	Bar all international calls	Deactivates making calls and SMS sending outside the country you stay.	
	Bar international calls	Deactivates making international calls and SMS sending except within the country you stay and to Japan.	
Inc	oming Calls		
	Bar all incoming calls	Deactivates reception of all calls and SMS receiving.	
	Bar all roaming calls	Deactivates reception of all calls and SMS receiving outside Japan.	

 Setting Call Barring requires Network Password (the 4-digit number dedicated to Call Barring service specified at the subscription). Network Password can be changed (◆P.3-21). Calling

3

 A message appears indicating that outgoing Call Barring is active. The message may appear after a while depending on service area.

# Note

 If incorrect Network Password is entered 3 consecutive times, Call Barring service is disabled. In this case, change Network Password and Center Access code. For details, contact Customer Service (€P.14-30).

# **Restricting Outgoing/Incoming Calls**

Set Call Barring for outgoing calls and/or incoming calls for each type of call (Voice, Video Calls, SMS)/ transmission.

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Call$ settings  $\rightarrow Optional services$
- $\rightarrow$  Call barring



# Select a restriction type

# For outgoing calls

Outgoing call  $\rightarrow$  Bar all outgoing calls, Bar all international calls, or Bar international calls

# For incoming calls

Incoming call  $\rightarrow$  Bar all incoming calls or Bar all roaming calls



# **Canceling All Barring**

Cancel all barring for outgoing or incoming calls.



 $\blacksquare$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Yes



3

# **Caller ID**

Show or hide your own phone number when calling from handset.

# Showing & Hiding Caller ID

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Call$ settings  $\rightarrow$  Show my number



- $On/Off \to On \text{ or } Off$
- After Step **1**, select *Get status* to confirm the current setting.
- Regardless of Show my number setting, you can show/hide your phone number every time when you make a call (●P.3-22).

# Advanced

#### **۲** Settings

 Show or hide your own number when placing calls (IPP P.13-25)

# **\** Advanced Settings

# Call

Initiating S! Circle Talk by Entering Phone Number

Enter a phone number  $\rightarrow \mathbf{x} \rightarrow S!$  Circle Talk  $\rightarrow$ Highlight member  $\rightarrow \mathbf{\Box}$  (Call)

Saving Entered Phone Number to Phonebook Enter a phone number including area code  $\rightarrow$  **x**  $\rightarrow$ 

Add to Phonebook  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-43 Enter and Save Phone Number)

# Creating New Message Addressed to Entered Number

Enter a phone number  $\rightarrow \fbox \rightarrow Create message \rightarrow S! Mail or SMS \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-3 Sending S! Mail <math>\bigcirc$ , P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages  $\bigcirc$ )

# Switching Phone Number Entry Window to Phonebook Window

On phone number entry window,  $\square \rightarrow Phonebook$ Switching Phone Number Entry Window to Call

Log Window

On phone number entry window,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Call \log$ 

#### Making International Calls from Japan

Enter a phone number including area code  $\rightarrow \fbox \rightarrow \frown$ *International call*  $\rightarrow$  Select a country / Select *Enter Code* and enter Country number  $\rightarrow$  Select where you call from  $\rightarrow$  Confirm phone number  $\rightarrow$   $\frown$ 

- A separate subscription is required for international calls. For details, contact Customer Service
   (● P.14-30).
- Calls to SoftBank handset abroad is available only by the phone number, regardless of the country where the receiver stays.

## Calling with Your Phone Number Shown

Enter a phone number including area code  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow$  *Hide/Show my ID* 

■ To follow Show my number setting

None  $\rightarrow$ 

To show phone number

Show my ID  $\rightarrow$ 

- To hide phone number
  - Hide my ID  $\rightarrow$
- Alternatively, enter 1.5 B ... G... → Enter phone number → , to make a call with your phone number shown.
- Alternatively, enter 1.5 □ 5 45 → Enter phone number → , to make a call with your phone number hidden.

3

#### Rejecting and Disconnecting Incoming Call

While handset is ringing, 🔽 (Reject)

- The rejected call is recorded in Call Log.
- Alternatively, if *Side key* is set to *Reject*, press **(a)** or for 1+ seconds to reject an incoming call.
- When Call Forwarding or Voice Mail is not used, press (Forward) while handset is ringing, to reject the incoming call. Message indicating "busy" appears on caller's handset before call is disconnected. If caller's handset is incompatible, call is simply disconnected.

# Adjusting Earpiece Volume

During a call, 🖣 or 🗟

 Adjust Earpiece or Earphone volume. Setting remains even after powered off.

# Putting a Call on Hold

During a call, 🔳 (Hold)

- When a call is put on hold, the party on hold hears a hold tone and neither party can hear the other's voice. A subscription to Call Waiting or Conference Call is required to use this function. If you do not subscripe to either service, this function is disabled.
- Press 🔳 (Answer) to reconnect the call.

## Switching to Speaker Phone

During a call,  $\square$  (())  $\rightarrow$  Yes

To cancel Speaker Phone, during a call, press ⊠
 (﴿).

#### Talking in Small Voice

During a call,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Whisper \text{ on or } Whisper \text{ off}$ 

• With *Whisper on*, the volume of sent sounds is raised on the other party's side.

## Switching Headset/Phone

During a call,  $\mathbf{\overline{y}} \rightarrow Switch$  to headset or Switch to phone

 Appears when Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>-compatible headset is in use.

#### Setting Mute

During a call,  $\boxdot \rightarrow Mute \rightarrow$  Check or uncheck Voice  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (OK)

# Making New Call during a Cal

- During a call,  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow New \ call \rightarrow Enter \ phone number \rightarrow \mathbf{\Box}$  (Call)
- To search Phonebook, after pressing  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow New$  call, press  $\blacksquare$  (Search).
- This function is available when Conference Call is in use.
- Searching Phonebook during a Call

During a call,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Phonebook \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.2-21$ Searching Phonebook  $\mathbf{2}$ )

# Saving the Other Party's Phone Number to Phonebook

During a call,  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow Add$  to Phonebook **To save new entry** 

 $New \rightarrow \text{Enter each item} \rightarrow \square$  (Save)

## To update entry

 $Update \rightarrow$  Search Phonebook and select entry

( $\bigcirc$ P.2-21) → Select phone number → 🖾 (Save)

#### Viewing Call Log during a Call

During a call,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Call \log$ 

# Creating New Message Addressed to the Other Party's Phone Number

During a call,  $\fbox{} \rightarrow$  *Create message*  $\rightarrow$  *S*! *Mail* or *SMS*  $\rightarrow$  ( $\clubsuit$ P.4-3 Sending S! Mail (**5**), P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages (**5**)

# Sending Push Tones

During a call,  $\mathbf{\Sigma}^{r} \rightarrow Send DTMF \rightarrow$  Enter digits  $\rightarrow$  (Send)

• To search Phonebook, press *Send DTMF* and then (Search). G Calling

#### **Recording Hearing Voice**

During a call,  $\mathbf{\underline{x}} \rightarrow Record \rightarrow \square$  (Record)  $\rightarrow \square$  (Stop)

- Record voice of up to 2 minutes during a call.
- To pause recording, press (Pause). Press (Record) to resume recording; press ☞ (Save) to save recording up to paused point.
- Recorded sound file is saved to *Ring songs* · *tones* in Data Folder.
- If Call Waiting is subscribed, recording stops by another incoming call, and incoming call window appears.
- Recording stops automatically after the call is ended, and voice file is saved.

#### Creating Text Memo during a Call

During a call,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Memo \rightarrow$  Enter text memo

#### Ending Call by Menu Operation

During a call,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow End \ call$ 

# Video Call

## Using Option Menu

Enter a phone number including area code  $\rightarrow$  **\mathbf{x}**  $\rightarrow$  *Video call* 

# Showing or Hiding Caller ID

Enter a phone number including area code  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}_{l} \rightarrow$  *Hide/Show my ID* 

- **To follow Show my number setting** None  $\rightarrow$   $\frown$  (1+ seconds)
- None  $\rightarrow$  (1 + second)

Show my  $ID \rightarrow \frown$  (1+ seconds)

To hide phone number

*Hide my ID*  $\rightarrow$   $\frown$  (1+ seconds)

- Alternatively, enter 1.5 B. 5.5 → Enter phone number → (1+ seconds), to make a call with your phone number shown.
- Alternatively, enter 1.5 B ≤ 4.5 → Enter phone number → (1+ seconds), to make a call with your phone number hidden.

# Switching Speaker/Phone

- During Video Call, highlight or  $\textcircled{} \rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Select)
- A confirmation appears to set *Loudspeaker on?* Choose *Yes* to switch to Speaker phone call.

#### Changing Image Size during Video Call

- During Video Call, highlight  $\square \rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Select) • Switch incoming image small and My image large, or incoming image large and My image small. During Video Call, highlight  $\blacksquare$  or  $\blacksquare \rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Select) Toggling Alternative Picture/My Image During Video Call, use 🗻 or 🚬 to highlight an item  $\rightarrow$  (Select) During Video Call, highlight  $\square$  or  $\square \rightarrow \square$  (Select) Toggling Internal/External Camera During Video Call, highlight  $\overrightarrow{a} \rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Select) During Video Call,  $\square$  (Mute)  $\rightarrow$  Check or uncheck *Voice* or *Camera*  $\rightarrow \square$  (Done) During Video Call,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Switch \ to \ handset$  or
- Switch to phone
- Appears when Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>-compatible headset is in use.

3

#### Putting a Video Call On Hold

During Video Call,  $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Hold$ 

- Alternative picture is sent during on hold and neither party can hear the other's voice.

#### Adjusting Outgoing Image Brightness

During Video Call,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Display \ settings \rightarrow Brightness \rightarrow Use$  **Construction** to adjust Brightness

#### Adjusting Outgoing Image Color

During Video Call,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Display \ settings \rightarrow Effects \rightarrow None, Black & White, or Sepia$ 

#### Setting Alternative Picture Instead of My Image

During Video Call,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Alternative picture$ 

# To restore default image

Preset picture  $\rightarrow$  (OK)

## To select image from Data Folder

 $Pictures \rightarrow Select image \rightarrow \blacksquare$  (OK)

• With Memory Card inserted, files can be selected from *Pictures* and *Digital camera* folders after *Pictures* selected.

#### Adjusting Incoming Video Quality

During Video Call,  $\boxdot \rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Incoming video quality  $\rightarrow$  Motion prioritized, Standard, or Quality prioritized

#### Adjusting Outgoing Video Quality

During Video Call,  $\fbox \to Settings \to Outgoing$ video quality  $\to Motion prioritized, Standard, of Quality prioritized$ 

#### Setting On Hold Picture

During Video call,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Hold setting$ 

To restore default image

Preset picture  $\rightarrow$  (OK)

- To select image from Data Folder
  - $Pictures \rightarrow Select image \rightarrow \blacksquare$  (OK)
  - With Memory Card inserted, files can be selected from *Pictures* and *Digital camera* folders after *Pictures* selected.

## Muting Handset Microphone

During Video Call,  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Mute my voice$  $\rightarrow On \text{ or } Off$ 

• Setting is not applied to the current Video Call. Effective from the next Video Call.

#### Switching Speaker/Phon

During Video Call,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Loud speaker \rightarrow On \text{ or } Off$ 

• Setting is not applied to the current Video Call. Effective from the next Video Call.

#### Adjusting Video Call Backlight Setting

During Video Call,  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Backlight \rightarrow On \text{ or } Off$ 

• Set backlight during video Call. When *Off* is set, Display becomes dim.

#### Adjusting Call Retry Setting

During Video Call,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Retry with \rightarrow Always ask, Voice call, Message, or None$ 

# Answering Voice Call from Specified Party Automatically

During Video Call,  $\bigtriangledown \rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Auto answer  $\rightarrow$  On/Off  $\rightarrow$  On or Off

 When a Video Call arrives from the specified party, a tone sounds and the call is automatically answered.

#### Creating Auto Answer Lis

During Video Call,  $[\mathbf{r}] \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Auto answer$  $\rightarrow Auto answer list \rightarrow [\mathbf{r}] \rightarrow Add \rightarrow$  Enter Phone Password  $\rightarrow [\bullet]$  (OK)

To enter phone number directly

Direct input → Enter phone number

- To select from Phonebook Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry (●P.2-21)
- To select from call log

Call  $log \rightarrow \boxdot$  (Received calls) or  $\boxdot$  (Dialed calls)  $\rightarrow$  Select log

 When a Video Call arrives from the specified party, a tone sounds and the call is automatically answered.

my voice Dire

#### Deleting Entry in Auto Answer List

During Video Call,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Auto answer$ 

→ Auto answer list

#### To delete selected entry

Highlight phone number  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow$ Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes

Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes

# To delete all entry

 $\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{x}_{!} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow All \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \text{Enter Phone} \\ \text{Password} \rightarrow \ensuremath{\blacksquare} \ensuremath{(OK)} \ensuremath{(OK)} \end{array}$ 

## Showing/Hiding My Image

During Video Call,  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Show my$ image  $\rightarrow On$  or Off

• Setting is not applied to the current Video Call. Effective from the next Video Call.

#### Searching Phonebook during a Video Call

During Video Call,  $\mathbf{r} \rightarrow Phonebook$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21 Searching Phonebook (**\bigcirc**)

Saving the Other Party's Phone Number to Phonebook

During Video Call,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Add$  to Phonebook

#### To save new entry

 $New \rightarrow$  Enter each item  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save)

#### To update entry

*Update* → Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21) → Enter each item → 🖾 (Save) Sending Message Addressed to Phone Number

During Video Call,  $\square \rightarrow Create message \rightarrow$  *S! Mail* or *SMS*  $\rightarrow$  ( $\square P.4-3$  Sending *S! Mail*  $\bigcirc$ , P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages  $\bigcirc$ )

# Sending Push Tones

During Video Call,  $[\Sigma^{r}] \rightarrow Send DTMF \rightarrow$  Enter digits  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Send)

To search Phonebook, select Send DTMF and then
 Search) to search Phonebook and select entry
 (◆ P.2-21).

#### Creating and Saving Text Memo in Video Call

During Video Call,  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow Memo \rightarrow$  Enter text memo

# Viewing Phonebook Entry Details

During Video Call,  $\mathbf{\overline{r'}} \rightarrow Details$ 

# Call Logs

 $\square$  (Received calls) or  $\square$  (Dialed calls)  $\rightarrow$  Highlight call  $\log \rightarrow \square$  (Call)  $\rightarrow$  Voice call  $\square$  (Received calls) or  $\square$  (Dialed calls)  $\rightarrow$  Highlight call  $\log \rightarrow \square$  (Call)  $\rightarrow$  Video call Calling S! Circle Talk from Call Log  $\square$  (Received calls) or  $\square$  (Dialed calls)  $\rightarrow$  Highlight call log  $\rightarrow \square$  (Call)  $\rightarrow$  Call S! Circle Talk **Rejoining S! Circle Talk** □ (Received calls) or □ (Dialed calls) → Highlight call logs to rejoin  $\rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}_{i}} \rightarrow Rejoin S!$  Circle Talk (€P.10-7)  $\square$  (Received calls) or  $\square$  (Dialed calls)  $\rightarrow$  Highlight call  $\log \rightarrow \bowtie$  (Call)  $\rightarrow$  Create message  $\rightarrow$  S! Mail or  $SMS \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-3 \text{ Sending S! Mail } \bigcirc, P.4-8$ Sending SMS Messages (5) Saving Call Log Numbers to Phonebook  $\square$  (Received calls) or  $\square$  (Dialed calls)  $\rightarrow$  Highlight call logs  $\rightarrow \mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Add$  to Phonebook  $\rightarrow (\bigcirc P.2-20)$ Saving from Call Log Records (3)

 $\fbox{\begin{tince} \begin{tince} $\mathbf{C}$ (Received calls) or $\mathbf{C}$ (Dialed calls) $\rightarrow$ Highlight call log $\rightarrow$ $\mathbf{F}$ : $\rightarrow$ Add to black list $\rightarrow$ Yes $ \end{tilde} \end{tilde} \end{tilde}$ 

Calling

# Viewing Phonebook Entry Details via Call Log $\square$ (Received calls) or $\square$ (Dialed calls) $\rightarrow$ Highlight call $\log \rightarrow \mathbf{x}' \rightarrow View phonebook details$ Adding International Code and Country Number to Phone Number in Call Log $\frown$ (Received calls) or $\Box$ (Dialed calls) $\rightarrow$ Highlight call log to make international call $\rightarrow$ $\mathbf{x}$ ? $\rightarrow$ International call -> Select a country or select Enter *Code* and enter Country number $\rightarrow$ Select country you call from $\rightarrow$ Confirm phone number $\rightarrow$ $\blacktriangleright$ (Received calls) or $\Box$ (Dialed calls) $\rightarrow$ Highlight call log to call $\rightarrow$ $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow$ *Hide/Show my ID* To follow Show my number setting None $\rightarrow \frown$ To show phone number Show my ID $\rightarrow$ To hide phone number Hide my ID $\rightarrow$

# **Conference Call**

# Ending Selected Cal

Highlight party to disconnect  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Multi talk)  $\rightarrow$  *End this call* 

# Putting All Calls on Hold

# Messaging

Messaging Basics	. 4-2
Custom Mail Address	
Changing Mail Address	. 4-2
Confirming New Mail Address	
Sending S! Mail	
Attaching Files	
Creating Arrange Mail	
Sending SMS Messages	
Received Messages	
Viewing New Messages.	
Retrieving Complete Messages	
Replying to Received Messages	
Forwarding Received Messages	
Managing & Using Messages	
Viewing from Message List	
Using Message Information	
Deleting Messages or Templates	
Managing Folders	
Creating Folders	
Moving Messages	
Sorting Messages	
Advanced Settings	
Sending S! Mail	4-18
Sending SMS.	
Received Messages	
Using & Managing Messages	
Folder Management	



# **Messaging Basics**

Use S! Mail and SMS services on 820SC.

#### S! Mail

Exchange long text messages with SoftBank and other e-mail compatible handsets, PCs and other mobile devices; attach media files for multimedia messaging.

Use Arrange Mail or Feeling Mail to add color and other graphic elements to S! Mail message text.

- Exchange Feeling Mail with compatible handsets.
- A separate subscription is required to use S! Mail and receive E-mail.

# SMS

Exchange short text messages with SoftBank handsets; use handset numbers as address.

Entry items and character limits vary as follows.

Item		S! Mail <sup>1</sup>	SMS			
Entry	Entry Item					
Address		Yes	Yes			
	Subject	Yes	No			
	Attachment	Yes	No			
	Text	Yes	Yes			

Item	S! Mail <sup>1</sup>	SMS
Character Limits	Up to 15,000 double-byte/ 30,000 single-byte characters (30 KB) <sup>2</sup>	Up to 70 single-/ double-byte characters, or up to 160 single-byte alphanumerics <sup>3</sup>

- Send up to 300 KB including address, subject and message text, as well as attachments (same limit applies to replies and forwarded S! Mail messages).
- 2 Entry limit varies by attachment size, etc.
- 3 When Char-code is set to GSM 7 bit (€P.13-5).
- If Retry Function is enabled, undeliverable mail (handset off or out-of-range) are saved at Mail Service Center and delivery reattempted regularly.

#### Note

• Messages created on 820SC may not appear on other party's handset correctly.

- Received Hangul messages are viewable. Use SMS to create new Hangul messages. Replying to/forwarding received S! Mail automatically deletes Hangul characters.
- Hangul may be deleted from sent SMS or appear as spaces on other party's handset.

# **Custom Mail Address**

Change the alphanumerics appearing before @ of handset Mail Address (Account Name). Default Account Name consists of random alphanumerics. For details, contact Customer Service (**O**P.14-30).

# **Changing Mail Address**

Customizing Mail Address may help reduce spam.



雪オリシ*ナル	メール設定	
u∿. <u>?∧⊮7*</u> ₩Englis	を入力して <   <u>h</u>	ださ
OK]		
	SoftBank	
Back	Select	Menu



# Select *English* and follow onscreen instructions

4

4

# **Confirming New Mail Address**

After Mail Address is changed, SoftBank sends a confirmation message.

 $|\square| \rightarrow Received messages \rightarrow$ Select a folder  $\rightarrow$  Select message from Information  $\rightarrow$ Yes or No



#### **𝕄** Settings

Customize or change handset mail address (IPP P.13-2)

# Sending S! Mail

Example: Sending S! Mail to a Phonebook entry.





Δ

*From Phonebook* → Select entry (⊖P.2-21 Searching Phonebook (2)



# Select number or address

Create msg[1KB]				
Subject				
Attach				
Attach [Enter Text]				
Send Select Menu				



# Select Subject field → Enter subject



 Alternatively, highlight Subject field and enter Subject text.

# Select Enter Text field → Enter text

		ate m		1KB] 190***.	
ĺ	Meet		Mailo	90***.	
	Atta	ach			
Please contact me.					
Ser	nd	Sel	ect	Mer	าน

 Alternatively, highlight Enter Text field and enter message text.



- Alternatively, in Standby, press 
   for 1+ seconds to open Create Message window.
- Enter SoftBank handset numbers or mail addresses in Recipient field. Add up to 20 recipients.

#### Note

 Received S! Mail Hangul is viewable, but is deleted from replies or forward messages (Hangul cannot be used to create S! Mail).

# **Attaching Files**

Send up to 300 KB including address, subject and text.

Attach up to 20 files per S! Mail message.

• During message creation, message size appears next to *Create msg* in Create Message window.

# Note

- Some attachments may be lost depending on recipient handset status. For supported file types, contact Customer Service (OP.14-30).
- When attaching a video, select a file recorded in For S! Mail (OP.7-18). If file is incompatible, a warning message appears.

# Attaching Files from Data Folder, etc.

Attach media files directly, or Phonebook/Calendar entries or Account details as vCard or vCalendar.



 $\square \rightarrow Create \ new \rightarrow Select$ Attach field

Create msg[OKB]
🖄 Recipient
ভ Subject
Attach
1.Data Folder
2. Phonebook detai
3.Calendar item
4. Account details
Select



# Attach file

Data Folder files Data Folder  $\rightarrow$  Select folder  $\rightarrow$ Select a file Phonebook entries (vCard) Phonebook details  $\rightarrow$  Search Phonebook and select an entry  $(\bigcirc P.2-21) \rightarrow \boxtimes (Add)$ Calendar entries (vCalendar) Calendar item  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\frown$  to select Schedule or Task  $\rightarrow$  Select an entry Account details (vCard) Account details  $\rightarrow \square$  (Add) • To add files, select Attach field  $\rightarrow Add$  file. When files are attached, file type indicators and file names appear in Attached file list. 🔏 : Image Sound
 Sound

# : vCalendar 🖉 · Video @:vCard

# Note

• When attaching Account details, Hobby cannot be attached.

Contraction and a contraction of the contraction of



Arrange Mail Entry Window

Font size $\rightarrow$ Large, Normal, 0
Small → Enter text
Message AD 192/30K E AS Where will you go tomorr ow?∢
Arrange Done Menu
• To continue, press 🖾 (Arrange).
$\square$ (Arrange) $\rightarrow$ <i>Background</i>
color
Message AD 192/30K Mare will you go tomorr ow?∢
Background color Select



6

Messaging

# Select a background color



Arrange Done



Meni



₩ Mhere will you go tomor ow?∢







- If Memory Card is inserted, select from *DCIM* folder.
- To capture image to insert, select Camera.
- If Memory Card is inserted, select *Pictures* and press (Memory) to select a Memory Card file.



# $\square \text{ (Arrange)} \rightarrow MYPICT \rightarrow Select a pictogram$



(Arrange) → ▼ (Select Area) → ↑ to move cursor to starting point and ■
 (Start) → ↑ to specify Arrange area → ■ (End) → Effect







4

# Right to left or Swing



 $12 \ \square \ (Quit) \rightarrow \blacksquare \ (Done)$ 

- In Arrange Mail entry window, Undo → Yes to undo most recent change.
- In Arrange Mail entry window, Cancel → Yes to cancel Arrange Mail and return message text only.

# Advanced

Advanced Settings P.4-18

- Changing Address Type to To, Cc, or Bcc
- Deleting Address
- Deleting Attached File
- Sending Feeling Mail
- Resetting Feeling Setting
- Saving S! Mail Being Created to Drafts
- Using Templates to Create S! Mail
- Deleting All Text
- Setting Scroll Unit in S! Mail Creation Window
- Jumping to Top/Bottom of Text
- Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending
- Setting Message Actions
- Using Arrange Settings
- Changing Font Color or Font Size
- Using Templates
- Using Bar Code Reader
- Moving Cursor to Top or End of Text
- Setting Conversion
- Inserting Information into S! Mail
- Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)
- Selecting Pictogram Setting
- Entering Address Quickly

## **۲** Settings

- Insert or hide Signature (IPP P.13-2)
- Show or hide transmission progress bar (IPP P.13-2)
- Set message sending priority (IPP P.13-3)
- Set sent message Mail Service Center expiry (IPP P.13-3)
- Select reply setting (IPP P.13-4)
- Set "reply to" address (IPP.13-4)

# Sending SMS Messages

Example: Sending SMS to a Phonebook entry.



1. From Phonebook

Select

Enter Number
 From group



From Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select an entry (⊙P.2-21 Searching Phonebook ②)



# A Select a phone number



# Select Enter Text field → Enter text



 Alternatively, with Enter Text field highlighted, enter text.



- Enter SoftBank handset numbers in Recipient field. Add up to 20 Recipients.
- When entered text exceeds entry limit (●P.4-2), S! Mail conversion confirmation appears. Choose Yes to switch to S! Mail. When Hangul text is included, a confirmation to delete Hangul text appears. Choose Yes to delete Hangul text and switch to S! Mail.

## Advanced

#### Advanced Settings P.4-21

- Deleting Recipient
- Saving SMS to Drafts
- Converting SMS to S! Mail
- Deleting All Text
- Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending
- Using Template to Send SMS

#### **ペ** Settings

- Insert or hide Signature (IPP P.13-2)
- Show or hide transmission progress bar (IPP.13-2)
- Select reply setting (IPP P.13-4)
- Set "reply to" address (IPP P.13-4)
- Set Mail Service Center message expiry time (IPP P.13-5)
- Set Message Center Number (IPP P.13-5)
- Edit Message Center Number (IPP P.13-5)

# **Received Messages**

# **Viewing New Messages**

When a message is received, notice appears in Standby. Number of messages, sender and reception dates/times appear.





Message List



# Select a new message

Received message 001
\*\*SatoTakuya(090\*\*\*\*\*
\*\*]
Tomorrow's schedule
12/15,15:30
Let's go to the zoo tom
prrow.
Reply
Message Window

Message Window (S! Mail)

• If 3D Pictograms confirmation appears, select Always, Only unread, or Disable.

#### 3D Pictograms

When viewing new/unread messages, message text appears in 3D animation.

If 3D pictograms (●P.13-3) is set to other than Disable, 3D animation appears. After animation stops or (○) (Stop) is pressed, Message window appears. Use Menu options in Message window.

 Sender Information in Notification Window Phone number or mail address appears. If sender is saved in Phonebook, name appears. If incoming image is saved or set for Group, image appears. For Secret entries, sender name/image does not appear if Secret mode is set to Secret mode - On. Messaging

- When a file is attached, a file name and thumbnail appear at the bottom of the message.
- If messages are received out of Standby, number of messages, sender numbers or mail addresses (names if saved in Phonebook), etc. scroll across Display top. Afterward appears (SP.1-3, P.13-2).
- When 820SC is closed, Mappears on Sub Display for new messages (OP.1-4).
- When a Delivery Report arrives, 🞇 flashes and disappears. In Standby, a notification appears.

# **Retrieving Complete Messages**

When Receiving options (OP.13-3) is set to Manual retrieval, S! Mail is temporarily stored on Mail Server; part of the received message is sent to 820SC as a reception notification. Retrieve complete messages from Mail Server.



# $|\square| \rightarrow Received messages$





# Select a folder → Select a notification



*Retrieve mail*  $\rightarrow$  Select a complete message



Read Message Notification 🔚 : Priority high : Priority standard 🙈 : Priority low

# **Replying to Received Messages**

Reply to the received messages.



Received message 001 m SatoTakuya[090****** **] Tomorrow's schedule 12/15, 15:30
Let's go to the zoo tom orrow.
Reply Menu

# (Reply) → S! Mail, S!Mail (History), SMS, or SMS

# (History)

Create msg[1KB]	l
SatoTakuya [090******	L
🗐 Re:Tomorrow's sched…	
/ Attach	
[Enter Text]	
Send Select Menu	

• To remain the received message text, select S! Mail (History) or SMS (History).

4 Create a message (€P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 5)

• Re: appears before Reply Subject automatically.

# Forwarding Received Messages Forward the received message to other recipients. $\square \square \rightarrow Received messages \rightarrow Select a folder$ Received Received SatoTakuya 12/15 15:30

Highlight a message  $\rightarrow \mathbf{x}_{2} \rightarrow Forward$ 

Men

Create msg[1KB]
Recipient
🗐 Fw:Tomorrow's sched…
🖉 Attach
Let's go to the zoo to morrow.
Select Menu

NakamuraMai 12/15 10:4

📌 Takahashi Na... 12/14 12:31

SuzukiKaori 12/13 21:4

Select

had a great time

leeting



- *Fw:* appears before forwarded S! Mail Subject automatically.
- To forward received SMS message, select S! Mail or SMS.

# Advanced

- Advanced Settings D.4-22
- Replying to All
- Forwarding Reception Notification or Server Mail
- Showing 3D Pictograms
- Adding Sender to Phonebook
- Viewing Sender and Recipient
- Copying Message Content
- Deleting Message
- Viewing Message Details
- Setting Attached Picture Appearance
- Setting Font Size
- Setting Character Code
- Setting Scroll Unit
- Moving to Top/Bottom of the Message
- Retrieving Complete Messages
- Stopping Server Mail Retrieval
- Replying to All

#### **₹** Settings

- Change scroll unit (IPP P.13-2)
- Request or cancel Delivery Report (IPP P.13-2)
- Set received message notice content or hide notice (IPP P.13-2)
- Select secret folder message notice setting (IPP P.13-2)
- Adjust 3D Pictogram auto play setting (IPP.13-3)
- Select 3D Pictogram color settings (IPP P.13-3)
- Select 3D Pictogram display speed (IPP.13-3)
- Set receiving options for S! Mail (
  P.13-3)
- Set receiving options for S! Mail while roaming (IPP P.13-4)
- Set Feeling Mail vibration (IPP.13-4)
- Set whether to sound 820SC when Feeling Mail arrives (IP.13-4)
- Set Feeling Mail ringtone (IPP P.13-4)
- Set Feeling Mail ringtone duration (IPP P.13-4)
- Set attached image appearance (IPP P.13-4)
- Set attached image auto playback (IPP P.13-4)
- Set attached sound auto playback (IPP P.13-4)

# Managing & Using Messages

Organize messages by type in five default folders.

Folder	Message Type
Received messages	Received messages
Drafts	Message drafts saved before completion
Templates	S! Mail or SMS saved as templates
Sent messages	Messages already sent
Unsent	Messages unsent because of failure or cancellation, or waiting to be sent

# Viewing from Message List

From list of Received messages, Unsent messages, or Unsent, view the messages.



# $\square \rightarrow Received messages,$

# Sent messages, or Unsent $\rightarrow$ Select a folder as required

Rece i ved	
SatoTakuya 12/15	
Tomorrow's schedu	
🖹 NakamuraMai 12/15	10:40
Meeting	
📄 Takahash i Na 12/14	12:30
Hello	
SuzukiKaori 12/13	21:40
l had a great tim	ie
Reply Select	Menu



# Select a message

- Secret folders do not appear when Secret mode is set to Hide. To show secret folders, press  $\textcircled{P} \rightarrow$ Unlock temporarily  $\rightarrow$  Enter Phone Password  $\rightarrow$   $\fbox{O}$  (OK).
- In Message window, press \*\*\*\*\* or \*\*\* for next/ previous message.

# Message List

These indicators appear in message lists.

Received SatoTakuye Tomorrow's schedule Maxamufwal 12/15 15:30 Tomorrow's schedule Maxamufwal 12/15 10:40 Meeting Subject or Message Top Subject or Message Top Hello Message Top Hello Subject or Message Top Hello Subject or Message Top Hello Subject or Message Top Hello Hell

#### Message List (Received messages)

Received Message Indicators
 Unread S! Mail
 Geometry Priority high
 Geometry Information
 Geometry Inf

Read S! Mail Priority high Priority standard Priority low 

#### Unread Message Notification : Priority high : Priority standard : Priority low

Read Message Notification : Priority high : Priority standard : Priority low

Unread SMS Series : Saved to Phone Card to USIM Card

Read SMS set : Saved to Phone set : Saved to USIM Card

Receiving SI SI Mail

Draft Message Indicators
 S! Mail
 Find: S! Mail
 Inserted video or sound

SMS Sms : SMS SMS SMS: SMS SMS : Saved to USIM Card

SMS SMS: SMS SMS: Saved to USIM Card

Delivery Report : Unread S! Mail : Unread SMS

• If Secret mode is active, only number or address appears for messages to/from Secret entries.

# **Using Message Information**

In a Message or Notification, highlight sender, recipient, phone number or mail address to save it to Phonebook, place a call, send mail, or open or bookmark a website

# Saving to Phonebook

 $|\square| \rightarrow Received messages \rightarrow$ Select a folder  $\rightarrow$  Select a message → Select phone number, E-mail address, or  $URL \rightarrow Add$  to phonebook





# Save a number to Phonebook

# To save as a new entry

 $New \rightarrow$  Enter each item ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-18) → 🖾 (Save)

# To update existing entry

 $Update \rightarrow$  Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21)  $\rightarrow$  Enter each item ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-18)  $\rightarrow \boxtimes$  (Save)

# Saving as Bookmark

 $|\Box| \rightarrow Received messages \rightarrow$ Select a folder → Select a message → Select URL → Add to bookmark



(Select)  $\rightarrow$  Enter a title (Save)  $\square$ 

# Using Page Links

Use sender's address, or a phone number, address, or URL embedded in message text.





Reply

# Use linked information

To make a Voice Call

Select a phone number  $\rightarrow$  *Voice call* 

To make a Video Call

Select a phone number  $\rightarrow$  *Video call* 

# To edit a number before call

Select a phone number  $\rightarrow Edit$ before call

To send a message

Select a phone number or an E-mail address  $\rightarrow$  Create message  $\rightarrow$  S! Mail or SMS (OP.4-3 Sending S! Mail (5), P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages (5)

Messaging

# Messaging

4

# To access the Internet

Select URL  $\rightarrow$  Go to URL  $\rightarrow$  Yes

 To select a phone number and send a message, select S! Mail or SMS and create a message.

# **Deleting Messages or Templates**

# Deleting Messages

Delete specified messages or all messages in Mailbox.

# $|\Box| \rightarrow Received messages,$ Drafts, Sent messages, or Unsent

→ Select a folder as required





# Delete message

# To delete a message

Highlight message  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Delete$  $\rightarrow$  Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes To delete multiple messages  $|\mathbf{x}_{!}| \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Multiple \rightarrow Check$ 

 $\overline{\text{messages}} \rightarrow \boxtimes \text{(Delete)} \rightarrow Yes$ 

# To delete all messages in the selected mailbox



# **Deleting Templates**

Delete specified templates or all saved templates.

# $|\Box| \rightarrow Templates \rightarrow S!$ Mail templates or Text templates





# To delete a template

Highlight S! Mail template or text template  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow$ Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes To delete multiple templates

 $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Multiple \rightarrow$ Check S! Mail templates or text templates  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow$  Yes

# To delete all templates

 $\mathbf{x}_{\prime} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow All \rightarrow Enter$ Phone Password  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Yes

#### Advanced Settings C P.4-23

- Editing & Sending Sent/Unsent Messages
- Saving Attached Files to Data Folder
- Saving Received/Sent S! Mail as Template
- Adding Address/Number to Phonebook
- Locking/Unlocking Messages
- Switching Message List View
- Sorting Messages
- Changing Messages to Read/Unread
- Moving SMS Messages to 820SC/USIM Card
- Viewing Message or Folder Details
- Saving S! Mail as Template
- Sending Saved Template via S! Mail
- Viewing Saved Template Details
- Sending Unsent Messages after Editing
- Viewing Unsent Message Details
- Forwarding Server Mail
- Deleting Mail List Messages

## ۲<br/> Settings

- Change message list view (IPP.13-2)
- Change received message view (IPP P.13-3)
- Change sent message view (IPP.13-3)

# **Managing Folders**

Create folders in Received messages and Sent messages, and set a rule to each folder to automatically sort messages. Set Security to personal folders. *Received messages* and *Sent messages* folders cannot be deleted; the settings cannot be changed.

# C

# Creating Folders

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages$  or *Sent messages* 

#### Received messages Received Folder 1 Folder 2 Folder 3 Folder 4 Folder 5 Folder 6 Unread 0 / Total 1 Select Met



**Y**?

# $\rightarrow$ Add new folder





# Edit folder name

# **Moving Messages**



 $\square \rightarrow Received messages$  or *Sent messages* 

Recei	ved	me	ssag	es
🔲 Rece i				
🔲 Fo I de	r 1			
📕 Folde				
Folde				
🔲 Folde				
📕 Folde				
Folde	r 6			
Unread			otal	
	Sel	ect	M	enu



Move message

## To move a message

Select a folder  $\rightarrow$  Highlight a message  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Move$  to folder  $\rightarrow Selected$  **To move multiple messages** Select a folder  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Move$  to folder  $\rightarrow Multiple \rightarrow Check$ messages  $\rightarrow \square (Move)$  **To move all messages** Select a folder  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Move$  to folder  $\rightarrow All$ **Select a destination folder**   By default, received messages are saved to *Received* folder, and sent messages are saved to *Sent* folder. To move back to the original folder after moving messages to another folder, select *Received* or *Sent* folder in Step 3.

# **Sorting Messages**

Sort and save the sent/received messages automatically by phone number, mail address, etc. to the specified folders. Also, sort messages by subject in S! Mail or text in SMS. Up to 20 rules can be set per folder.

1

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages$  or Sent messages

Receive	d messages
🔲 Rece i ver	
Folder 🗌	
Folder 1	
Folder :	
Folder -	
Folder	
Folder	
Unread	
Se	lect Men

2

# Highlight a folder to move to

 $\rightarrow |\mathbf{Y}| \rightarrow Auto \ sort$ 

Me	ssage	rule	
🕾 Frie	end		
🗋 B I ar	ık		
🗎 B1 ar	ık		
🗈 Blar	nk		
🗋 B I ar	ık		
🗋 B I ar	nk		
🖹 Blar	ık		
🗋 Blar	ık		
OK	Selec	ct Me	nu



# Set sorting rule

# To select phone number/E-mail address from Phonebook

Select Rule field  $\rightarrow$  Sender or Recipient  $\rightarrow$  From phonebook  $\rightarrow$ Search Phonebook and select an

entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21)  $\rightarrow$  Select phone number or E-mail address

# To enter phone number/E-mail address directly

Select Rule field  $\rightarrow$  Sender or Recipient  $\rightarrow$  Direct input  $\rightarrow$  Enter phone number or E-mail address

# To select phone number/E-mail address from Group in Phonebook

Select Rule field → Sender or Recipient

 $\rightarrow$  From group  $\rightarrow$  Select a group

• Groups saved on USIM Card cannot be set as a rule.

# To select a rule from text

Select Rule field  $\rightarrow$  Subject  $\rightarrow$  Enter text to set as a rule



## Advanced

#### Advanced Settings B.4-26

- Changing Folder Name
- Setting Secret to Folder
- Changing Sorting Rules
- Deleting Folders

#### **ペ** Settings

- Change received message view (IPP.13-3)
- Change sent message view (IPP.13-3)

# **\** Advanced Settings

# Sending S! Mail

# Entering Address from Other Than Phonebool

Select Recipient field in S! Mail creation window

- To enter address from Call Log records Select a record
- To enter phone number directly

*Enter Number* → Enter phone number

To enter E-mail address directly

Enter address → Enter mail address

- To select phone number from Group in Phonebook
  - From group → Select group
  - When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved in Phonebook, Selection window for address may appear. Select a phone number or an mail address.

## Adding Address

Select Recipient field in S! Mail creation window with

address already entered  $\rightarrow Add \ recipients$ 

To enter address from Call Log records

Select a record  $\rightarrow \square$  (Done)

## To select from Phonebook

From Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21) → Select phone number of E-mail address → 🖾 (Done)

#### To enter phone number directly

*Enter Number*  $\rightarrow$  Enter phone number  $\rightarrow \bowtie$  (Done)

To enter mail address directly

*Enter address*  $\rightarrow$  Enter mail address  $\rightarrow \square$  (Done)

- To select phone number from Group in Phonebook
  - $From \ group \rightarrow Select \ group \rightarrow igodot$  (Done)
  - When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved in Phonebook, Selection window for address may appear. Select a phone number or an mail address.
- When multiple addresses are saved, the number of addresses appears next to Recipient field and in Create Message window.

# Changing Address Type to To, Cc, or Bcc

Select Recipient field in S! Mail creation window  $\rightarrow$ Highlight address  $\rightarrow$   $\searrow$   $\rightarrow$  *Change to To, Change to Cc,* or *Change to Bcc*  $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$  (Done)

#### Deleting Address

Select Recipient field in S! Mail creation window

To delete an address

Highlight address  $\rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Remove \rightarrow Selected$ 

→ 🖾 (Done)

To delete all addresses

 $\mathbf{\overline{x'}} \to Remove \to All \to Yes \to \mathbf{\boxtimes} \text{ (Done)}$ 

## /iewing Attached File

Select Attach field in S! Mail creation window  $\rightarrow$  Select a file to view

# Deleting Attached File

Select Attach field in S! Mail creation window

- To delete a file Highlight file  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Remove \rightarrow Selected \rightarrow$  $\mathbf{x}'$  (Done)
- **To delete all files**  $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Remove \rightarrow All \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \mathbf{\square}$  (Done)

# Sending Feeling Mail

In S! Mail creation window, → *Feeling Setting* → *Happy/Glad, OK/Good, Sad/Sorry, NG/Bad*, or *Important/Notice* → Select pictogram

# Resetting Feeling Setting

In S! Mail creation window,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Reset feeling$ 

# Saving S! Mail Being Created to Drafts

In S! Mail creation window,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Save to Drafts$ 

• Only messages with recipient, subject, or text entered, or file attached can be saved.

## Using Templates to Create S! Mail

- In S! Mail creation window,  $\textcircled{P} \rightarrow Launch S! Mail template \rightarrow$  Select template
- When using a Template, delete text confirmation appears. Choose Yes to delete text and open the Template.

#### **Deleting All Text**

In S! Mail creation window, highlight Enter Text field

 $\rightarrow$  **Y**  $\rightarrow$  *Remove Text*  $\rightarrow$  *Yes* 

## Setting Scroll Unit in S! Mail Creation Window

In S! Mail creation window, highlight Enter Text field  $\rightarrow \fbox \rightarrow Scroll unit \rightarrow Single line, Half screen,$ or Whole screen

#### Jumping to Top/Bottom of Text

In S! Mail creation window, highlight Enter Text field  $\rightarrow$  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}_{i}} \rightarrow Scroll \ jump \rightarrow Jump \ to \ top \ or \ Jump \ to \ bottom$ 

#### Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending

In S! Mail creation window,  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow 3D$  Pictogram

#### Setting Message Actions

In S! Mail creation window,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Action \ settings$ 

To set whether to delete automatically after the other party reads the message

Set auto delete  $\rightarrow$  On or Off

#### To set Reply request

*Reply Request*  $\rightarrow$  *On/Off*  $\rightarrow$  *On*  $\rightarrow$  Enter Reply request message

• When On is set, select Edit message from Reply Request to edit a message.

#### To restrict message forwarding

Forward  $NG \rightarrow On/Off \rightarrow On \rightarrow$  Enter Forward NG message

• When *On* is set, select *Edit message* from *Forward NG* to edit a message.

#### To restrict message deletion

 $Delete NG \rightarrow On/Off \rightarrow On \rightarrow Delete NG$ message

- When *On* is set, select *Edit message* from *Delete NG* to edit a message.
- To restrict message access with a question Quiz → On/Off → Open question → Select Question field → Enter question → Select Answer
  - field  $\rightarrow$  Enter answer  $\rightarrow$  Select Message (Correct) field  $\rightarrow$  Enter message when answer is correct  $\rightarrow$ Select Message (Incorrect) field  $\rightarrow$  Enter message when answer is incorrect  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Done)
  - To edit question, select *Edit question* from *Quiz*.

#### To restrict message access with a multiple choice question

Quiz → On/Off → Multiple choice question → Select Question field → Enter question → Highlight Answer field → Use  $\Box$  to select correct number → Select Example1 to 4 field to enter choices → Select Message (Correct) field → Enter message when answer is correct → Select Message (Incorrect) field → Enter message when answer is incorrect →  $\Box$  (Done)

- To edit a question, select *Edit question* from *Quiz*.
- When *Action settings* are set, the recipient's action can be set.

#### Requesting S! Mail Delivery Report

In S! Mail creation window,  $\mathbf{\overline{s}} \rightarrow Sending options$ 

- $\rightarrow$  Delivery report  $\rightarrow$  On or Off
- Select On to receive a Delivery Report when a message is sent from Mail Server to the other party. This option can be set to the message being created.

# Setting Reply Settings

In S! Mail creation window,  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Sending options$ 

 $\rightarrow$  Reply settings  $\rightarrow$  On or Off

● Set the address "Reply to" address (●P.13-4).

# Setting Message Priority

- In S! Mail creation window, 🖅 → Sending options
- $\rightarrow$  Priority  $\rightarrow$  Urgent, Normal, or Low

# Setting Mail Server Expiry Time

In S! Mail creation window,  $\fbox \to Sending options \to Expiry time \to Maximum, 1 hour, 3 hours, 6 hours, 12 hours, 1 day, 3 days, or 1 week$ 

## Setting Delivery Time

In S! Mail creation window,  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Sending options$  $\rightarrow Delivery time \rightarrow Immediately, 1 hour, 3 hours, 6 hours, 12 hours, 1 day, 3 days, or 1 week$ 

#### Setting Remote Forward Action

In S! Mail creation window,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Sending options$ 

 $\rightarrow$  Remote Fwd Action  $\rightarrow$  Not Delete or Del, After Forward

 This function is available only when forwarding Server Mail message (●P.4-25).

#### Using Arrange Settings

In S! Mail creation window, select Enter Text field  $\rightarrow$ **\mathbf{x}**  $\rightarrow$  *Arrange* 

#### To insert BGM from Data Folder

Insert  $\rightarrow$  Insert BGM  $\rightarrow$  Ring songs  $\cdot$  tones or Music  $\rightarrow$  Select a file

#### To record BGM to insert

Insert  $\rightarrow$  Insert BGM  $\rightarrow$  Record sound  $\rightarrow$ ( $\bigcirc$  P.9-9 Recording Sound  $\bigcirc$ )

To insert Flash<sup>®</sup>

Insert → Insert Flash → Select a file

#### To insert line

Insert → Insert Line

#### Changing Font Color or Font Size

In S! Mail creation window with text entered, Select Enter Text field  $\rightarrow \textcircled{r} \rightarrow Arrange \rightarrow \fbox{}$  (Select Area)  $\rightarrow$  Use r to move cursor to the first character and  $\blacksquare$  (Start)  $\rightarrow$  Use r to select area  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$ (End)

#### To change Font color

Font color → Select color

#### To change Font size

Font size → Select size

#### Using Template

In S! Mail creation window,  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow Text \ templates \rightarrow$  Select a template

#### Using Bar Code Reade

In S! Mail creation window, select Enter Text field  $\rightarrow$   $\fbox \rightarrow Scan \rightarrow (\textcircled{P.9-11}$  Scanning Bar Code and QR Code (2)

# Moving Cursor to Top or End of Text

- In S! Mail creation window,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Cursor position$
- $\rightarrow$  Jump to top or Jump to end

# Setting Conversion

In S! Mail creation window,  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow Conversion$ 

■ To activate/cancel Prediction Prediction Off or Prediction On

- To activate/cancel Learning Learning Off or Learning On
- To reset User's dictionary Reset learning
- **To clear records of pictograms/symbols** *Clear history*

#### Inserting Information into S! Mail

In S! Mail creation window,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Advanced$ 

#### To insert signature

Signature

#### To insert phone number from Phonebook

*Phonebook* → Search Phonebook and select an entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21)

To insert Account details Account details

#### Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)

- In S! Mail creation window,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Add$  to dictionary
- $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-15 Saving to User's Dictionary (2)

#### Selecting Pictogram Setting

In S! Mail creation window,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Pict \ setting \rightarrow For \ DoCoMo, \ For \ au, \ For \ SoftBank, \ or \ Common$ 

#### Entering Address Quickly

In S! Mail creation window,  $\mathbf{r} \rightarrow Quick Address$ List  $\rightarrow$  Select an item

#### Jsing Template to Send S! Mail
# Messaging

# Sending SMS

### Entering Addresses from Sources

In SMS creation window, select Recipient field

# To enter address from log

Open log and select a record

### To enter phone number directly

Enter Number → Enter phone number

### To select Phonebook Group number in Phonebook

From group → Select group

- When multiple phone numbers or E-mail addresses are saved in Phonebook, Selection window may appear. Select a phone number.
- When E-mail address is set for Messages in Set default number, the entry cannot be set as recipient.

### Adding Recipient

Select Recipient field in SMS creation window with

address already entered  $\rightarrow Add \ recipients$ 

### To enter address from log

Select displayed log  $\rightarrow \square$  (Done)

### To select from Phonebook

From Phonebook  $\rightarrow$  Search Phonebook and select entry (OP.2-21)  $\rightarrow$  Select phone number  $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$  (Done)

### To enter phone number directly

*Enter Number*  $\rightarrow$  Enter phone number  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Done)

### To select Phonebook Group number

- From group  $\rightarrow$  Select group  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Done)
- When multiple phone numbers or E-mail addresses are saved in Phonebook, Selection window may appear. Select a phone number.
- When E-mail address is set for *Messages* in *Set default number*, the entry cannot be set.
- If multiple addresses are saved, a number appears next to Recipient field and in Create Message window.

### **Deleting Recipient**

In SMS creation window, select Recipient field

- To delete a recipient
   Highlight address → x → Remove → Selected
   → (Done)
   To delete all addresses
  - $\mathbf{Y}' \to Remove \to All \to Yes \to \mathbf{\square} \text{ (Done)}$

### Saving SMS to Drafts

### In SMS Mail creation window, $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Save to Drafts$

• Save to Drafts appears in menu only when either recipient or text is entered.

### Converting SMS to S! Mai

In SMS creation window,  $\mathbf{\overline{x'}} \rightarrow Change \ to \ S! \ Mail$ 

### Requesting SMS Delivery Report

In SMS creation window,  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}^{r}} \rightarrow Sending \ options \rightarrow Delivery \ report \rightarrow On \ or \ Off$ 

 Select On to receive a Delivery Report when a message is sent from Mail Server to the other party. This option can be set to the message being created.

### Setting Mail Server Expiry Time

In SMS creation window,  $\fbox \to Sending options \to Expiry time \to None, 1 hour, 6 hours, 12 hours, 1 day, or 3 days$ 

### Deleting All Text

In SMS creation window, highlight Enter Text field  $\rightarrow$  $\Im$   $\rightarrow$  Remove Text  $\rightarrow$  Yes

### Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending

In SMS creation window, highlight Enter Text field  $\rightarrow$ **Set**  $\rightarrow$  3D Pictogram

### Using Template to Send SMS

 $\square \rightarrow Templates \rightarrow Text \ templates \rightarrow Highlight$  $template \rightarrow \square \rightarrow Send$ 

# **Received Messages**

### Retrieving Messages Manually

 $\square \rightarrow Retrieve new$ 

### Replying to All

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages \rightarrow Select folder \rightarrow Select$  $message \rightarrow \square \rightarrow Reply to all \rightarrow S! Mail or S!$  $Mail (History) \rightarrow (\textcircled{P.4-3 Sending S! Mail (i)})$ 

### Forwarding Reception Notification or Server Mail

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages \rightarrow Select folder \rightarrow$ Highlight notification  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Forward \rightarrow Notific$  $forward or Remote forward <math>\rightarrow$  Create a message ( $\bigcirc$  P.4-3 Sending S! Mail  $\bigcirc$ )

### Showing 3D Pictogram

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages, Sent messages, or$ Unsent  $\rightarrow$  Select folder as required  $\rightarrow$  Select message  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow \square Pictogram$ 

### Adding Sender to Phonebook

 $\boxtimes \rightarrow Received messages \rightarrow Select \text{ folder } \rightarrow Select$  $message \rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Add to phonebook \rightarrow Select$ phone number or E-mail address

### To save as a new entry

 $New \rightarrow$  Enter each item ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-18 Creating New Entries  $\bigcirc$ )

### To update existing entry

Update → Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21) → Enter each item ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-18 Creating New Entries  $\bigcirc$ )

### Viewing Sender and Recipient

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages \text{ or } Sent messages \rightarrow$ Select folder as required  $\rightarrow$  Select message  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow$ *View mail address* 

### Copying Message Content

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages$  or Sent messages  $\rightarrow$ 

Select folder as required  $\rightarrow$  Select message  $\rightarrow \mathbf{x}_{l} \rightarrow Copy$ 

### To copy sender or recipient address

Address  $\rightarrow$  Select address to copy

- To copy subject Subject (●P.2-39 Specify Range to Copy/Cut)
- To copy text Message txt (●P.2-39 Specify Range to Copy/ Cut)

### Deleting Message

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages, Sent messages, or$ 

 $Unsent \rightarrow Select \text{ folder as required } \rightarrow Select message$ 

 $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Yes$ 

### /iewing Message Details

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages, Sent messages, or$ 

 $Unsent \rightarrow Select \text{ folder} \rightarrow Select message} \rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow$ 

Details

### Setting Attached Picture Appearance

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages \rightarrow Select folder \rightarrow Select$  $message \rightarrow \square \rightarrow Picture appearance \rightarrow Normal$ or Fit to screen

### Setting Font Size

 $\square$  → Received messages, Sent messages, or Unsent → Select folder as required → Select message →  $\square$  → Font size → Large, Standard, Small, or Tiny

### Setting Character Code

### Setting Scroll Unit

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages, Sent messages, or$  $Unsent <math>\rightarrow$  Select folder as required  $\rightarrow$  Select a message  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Scroll unit \rightarrow Single line, Half$ screen, or Whole screen

### Moving to Top/Bottom of the Message

 $\boxdot \rightarrow Received messages, Sent messages, or Unsent \rightarrow Select folder as required \rightarrow Select message$  $\rightarrow \textcircled{V} \rightarrow Scroll jump \rightarrow Jump to top or Jump to bottom$ 

### Viewing Attachmen

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages, Sent messages, or$  $Unsent \rightarrow Select folder as required \rightarrow Select message$  $\rightarrow Select file \rightarrow Open$ 

- To save a file to Data Folder before viewing, Select a file in Message window and select *Save*.
- To save attachment to vCard or vCalendar before viewing, select a file in Message window and select Register to Phonebook or Register to Calendar.
- To save vCard or vCalendar to Phonebook or Calendar after viewing, press 
  (Register).
- When a file requiring Content Key is attached, a confirmation appears. To view the file, choose Yes and purchase or acquire Content Key.
- When a file which allows to play/view only once is attached, a confirmation appears.

### **Retrieving Complete Messages**

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages \rightarrow Select \text{ folder} \rightarrow$ Highlight message  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Retrieve$ 

### Stopping Server Mail Retrieval

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages \rightarrow Select folder \rightarrow$ Highlight message  $\rightarrow \mathbf{x}_{!} \rightarrow Cancel retrieving$ 

### Replying to All

# **Using & Managing Messages**

### Editing & Sending Sent/Unsent Messages

- $\square \rightarrow Sent messages \text{ or } Unsent \rightarrow Select \text{ folder as}$ required  $\rightarrow$  Select message  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Edit \& send$
- → Create message ( $\bigcirc$ P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ②)

### Saving Attached Files to Data Folder

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages \text{ or } Sent messages \rightarrow$ Select folder as required  $\rightarrow$  Select message  $\rightarrow$   $\square \rightarrow$ Save items

To save a file

Highlight a file to save  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Select)

- To save multiple files
  - $\begin{array}{l} \mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Save \ multiple \rightarrow \mathsf{Check} \ \mathsf{files} \ \mathsf{to} \ \mathsf{save} \rightarrow \\ \hline \ensuremath{\square} \ \mathsf{(Save)} \end{array}$
- To save all files
  - $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Save All$

### Saving Received/Sent S! Mail as Template

- $\square \rightarrow Received messages or Sent messages \rightarrow$ Select folder as required  $\rightarrow$  Select message  $\rightarrow \square \implies$ Save as S! Mail template  $\rightarrow$  Enter file name
- S! Mail with the text arranged can be saved as template (◆P.4-5).

### Adding Address/Number to Phonebook

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages \text{ or } Sent messages \rightarrow \text{Select}$ folder  $\rightarrow$  Highlight message  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Add$  to phonebook  $\rightarrow$  Select phone number or E-mail address

To save as a new entry

 $New \rightarrow$  Enter each item ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-18 Creating New Entries  $\bigcirc$ )

To update existing entry

Update → Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$ P.2-21) → Enter each item ( $\bigcirc$ P.2-18 Creating New Entries (2))

### Locking/Unlocking Messages

- $\square \rightarrow Received messages, Drafts, Sent messages,$
- or  $Unsent \rightarrow$  Select a folder as required
- To lock/unlock a message
  - Highlight a message  $\rightarrow \mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Lock$  or Unlock
  - $\rightarrow$  Selected
- **To lock/unlock multiple messages**  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Lock \text{ or } Unlock \rightarrow Multiple \rightarrow Highlight}$ 
  - messages  $\rightarrow \square$  (Lock) or  $\square$  (Unlock)
- **To lock/unlock all messages**  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Lock \text{ or } Unlock \rightarrow All$

### Switching Message List View

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages, Drafts, Sent messages,$  $or Unsent \rightarrow Select folder as required \rightarrow \square \rightarrow Message list view \rightarrow 2 line, 1 line(subject), or 1 line(sender)$ 

 Message list view setting changed via Menu becomes invalid when Message list window is closed.

### Sorting Message

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages, Drafts, Sent messages,$  $or Unsent \rightarrow Select a folder as required \rightarrow \square \rightarrow Sort by \rightarrow Select an item$ 

- Sort messages by the following items.
- By time (*Time* ↓ or *Time* ↑)
- By sender (Sender)
- By recipient (Recipients)
- By read or unread messages (Read or Unread)
- By message type (Message type)
- By subject (Subject)
- By message size (Size)
- By attachment (Attach)
- By priority (Priority)
- By locked/unlocked message (Lock)
- When Message type is selected, messages are sorted by the order of SI Mail (including reception notification), SMS saved on USIM Card, and then SMS saved on 820SC.
- When Sender or Subject is selected, messages are sorted by the order of single-byte symbol, single-byte number, single-byte alphabet, single-byte Katakana, double-byte symbol, double-byte Hiragana, doublebyte Katakana, Kanji, double-byte number, and double-byte alphabet. When Subject is selected, messages with no subject appear first.

### Changing Messages to Read/Unread

- ☑ → Received messages → Select a folder
- To change a message to Read/Unread
  - Highlight a message to switch to Read or Unread  $\rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}^{2}} \rightarrow Switch$  to read or Switch to unread
  - → Selected

### To change multiple messages to Read/ Unread

Highlight messages to switch to Read or Unread

 $\rightarrow$  **Y**  $\rightarrow$  Switch to read or Switch to unread

→ Multiple → Check messages to switch to Read or Unread → 🖾 (Read/Unread)

### To change all messages to Read/Unread

 $\fbox{P} \rightarrow Switch to read or Switch to unread \rightarrow All$ 

### Moving SMS Messages to 820SC/USIM Card

- $\square \rightarrow Received messages, Sent messages, or$  $Unsent \rightarrow Select folder as required \rightarrow Highlight SMS$
- $\rightarrow$  **Y**  $\rightarrow$  *Move to phone* or *Move to USIM*
- Save up to 10 messages to USIM Card. The number of messages that can be saved varies by the types of USIM Card.
- When moving received SMS messages in a personal folder to USIM Card, a confirmation appears. Choose Yes to move to USIM Card.

### Viewing Message or Folder Details

- To view message details
  - $\square \rightarrow Received messages, Drafts, Sent$

*messages*, or *Unsent*  $\rightarrow$  Select a folder as required  $\rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Details$ 

- To view folder details
  - $\square \rightarrow Received messages \text{ or } Sent messages \rightarrow$ Highlight a folder  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Details$

### Saving S! Mail as Template

In S! Mail creation window  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$   $\rightarrow$  Save as

 $template \rightarrow$  Enter file name

● Save Arrange Mail messages to Templates (●P.4-5).

### Sending Draft Message

- $\boxtimes \to Drafts \to \text{Select a message} \to \boxtimes \text{ (Send)}$
- When recipient is not entered, (Send) does not appear.

### Viewing Saved S! Mail Templates

 $\square \rightarrow Templates \rightarrow S! Mail templates \rightarrow Select S!$ Mail template

### Editing Saved S! Mail Template

 $\square \rightarrow Templates \rightarrow S! Mail templates \rightarrow Select$ saved S! Mail template  $\rightarrow \square$  (Mail)  $\rightarrow$  Select Enter Text field  $\rightarrow$  Enter text  $\rightarrow \square$  (Done)  $\rightarrow \square \Rightarrow Save$ as template  $\rightarrow$  Enter file name

### Sending Saved Template via S! Mail

 $\square \rightarrow Templates \rightarrow S! Mail templates \rightarrow Select S!$ Mail template  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Send via message \rightarrow$ ( $\bigcirc$  P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 2)

### Viewing Saved Template Details

 $\square \rightarrow Templates \rightarrow S! Mail templates \rightarrow Select S!$ Mail template  $\rightarrow \square Details$ 

### Viewing Delivery Report

 $\square \rightarrow Sent messages \rightarrow Select a folder \rightarrow Select a message with$ *Delivery* $setting \rightarrow \square (Report)$ 

### Resending Unsent Messages

 $\boxdot \rightarrow Unsent \rightarrow \text{Highlight a message to resend} \rightarrow \\ \boxdot \text{ (Resend)}$ 

### Sending Unsent Messages after Editing

 $\square \rightarrow Unsent \rightarrow \text{Highlight a message to edit} \rightarrow \textcircled{r}$  $\rightarrow Edit \rightarrow (\textcircled{P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 2})$ 

### Viewing Unsent Message Details

- $\square \rightarrow Unsent \rightarrow Highlight a message to view \rightarrow \mathbf{r}$
- $\rightarrow$  Error details

### **Retrieving Mail List**

 $\square \rightarrow$  Server mail  $\rightarrow$  Retrieve mail list  $\rightarrow$  Yes

### Updating Mail List

 $\square \rightarrow Server mail \rightarrow Retrieve mail list \rightarrow \square$ (Update)

• Alternatively, select *Retrieve mail list*, then press r and select *Retrieve mail list*.

### Receiving Mail List Messages

 $\square \rightarrow$  Server mail

### To retrieve a selected message

*Retrieve mail list*  $\rightarrow$  *Yes*  $\rightarrow$  Highlight a message

- → 
  (Get)
- Alternatively, highlight a message to retrieve, then press **x**? and select *Get*.

### To receive all messages

Retrieve all mails

Alternatively, select *Retrieve mail list* → *Yes* → *Retrieve all*.

### Forwarding Server Mail

 $\square \rightarrow Server mail \rightarrow Retrieve mail list \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow$ Highlight a message  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Remote forward \rightarrow$ Select Recipient field

### Select recipient from Call Log records

Select a record  $\rightarrow \square$  (Send)

### **To select recipient from Phonebook** From Phonebook $\rightarrow$ Search Phonebook and

select entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21)  $\rightarrow$  Select phone number or E-mail address  $\rightarrow \boxtimes$  (Send)

### To enter phone number directly

*Enter Number*  $\rightarrow$  Enter phone number  $\rightarrow \square$  (Send)

### To enter E-mail address directly

*Enter address*  $\rightarrow$  Enter E-mail address  $\rightarrow \bowtie$  (Send)

### To select recipient from Group in Phonebook

From group  $\rightarrow$  Select recipient to enter  $\rightarrow \square$  (Send)

- To edit subject or text, select Subject or Enter Text field after entering recipient and edit as required (● P.4-3).
- *Fw:* appears before forwarded S! Mail Subject automatically.
- Set whether to delete message from Server after forwarding Server Mail message (◆P.4-20 Setting Remote Forward Action).

### **Deleting All Server Mail**

### Deleting Mail List Messages



### To delete a message

Highlight a message  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow$ Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes

### To delete multiple messages

 $\mathbf{x}$  → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check messages to delete →  $\mathbf{x}$  (Delete) → *Yes* 

### To delete all messages

**x** $_{l}$  → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone password → **(**OK) → *Yes* 

### Viewing Server Mail Status

 $\square \rightarrow$  Server mail  $\rightarrow$  Server mail memory

• To update the status, press 🔳 (Update).

### Viewing Memory Status

 $\square \rightarrow Memory \ Status \rightarrow S! \ Mail \ (By \ count), \ S!$ Mail (By size), or SMS

- To delete viewed memory, press 🖾 (Delete) (●P.2-
- 47 Deleting Registered/Saved Data).

# **Folder Management**

### Changing Folder Name

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages \text{ or } Sent messages \rightarrow$ Highlight a folder  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Change name \rightarrow$  Enter folder name

### Setting Secret to Folde

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages \text{ or } Sent messages \rightarrow$ Highlight a folder  $\rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}_{1}} \rightarrow Set secret \rightarrow$  Enter

Phone Password  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (OK)

• Secret folders are hidden in Secret mode. To cancel

Secret mode temporarily, press  $\textcircled{x} \rightarrow Unlock$ temporarily  $\rightarrow$  Enter Phone Password  $\rightarrow \fbox{(OK)}$ .

## Changing Sorting Rules

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages \text{ or } Sent messages \rightarrow$ Highlight a folder  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Auto \text{ sort} \rightarrow$  Highlight Rule field  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Replace rule (\textcircled{P.4-17 Sorting})$ Messages (O)

### **Deleting Sorting Rules**

 $\square \rightarrow Received messages or Sent messages \rightarrow$ Highlight a folder containing a rule  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Auto$ sort  $\square \text{ To delete a rule}$ Highlight Rule field  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Selected$ 

To delete all rules

 $\mathbf{Y'} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow All \rightarrow Yes$ 

### Deleting Folders

 $\boxtimes \rightarrow Received messages \text{ or } Sent messages \rightarrow$ Highlight a folder  $\rightarrow \boxtimes \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow$  Enter Phone Password  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Yes

Internet Services	·2
SSL & TLS	-2
Cache	-2
Yahoo! Keitai	.3
Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu	-3
PC Site Browser	-4
PC Site Browser Main Menu 5-	-4
Page Operations	-5
Scrolling	-5
Moving Cursor	-5
Previous/Next Page	-5
Text Entry & Item Selection	-6
Bookmarks	-6
Saving as Bookmark	-6
Accessing from Bookmark	
Saved Pages	
Saving Page	
Opening Saved Page	
Streaming	
Streaming from Page Link	
Entering URL Directly	-8
Accessing from Bookmark	
	-8



CL Quick Nours (Jananasa)		E O
S! Quick News (Japanese)		
Opening List		
Viewing Update Information		
Registering S! Quick News List/S! Loop	List	. 5-11
Registering Entries Manually		. 5-12
Deleting Entries		. 5-12
S! Town (Japanese)		
Using S! Town		. 5-13
S! Loop (Japanese)		
Using S! Loop		
Advanced Settings		
Yahoo! Keitai		. 5-14
PC Site Browser		
Page Operations		
Bookmarks		
Saved Pages		
Streaming		
S! Quick News (Japanese)		
S! Town (Japanese)		. 5-26

Access Mobile Internet sites via Yahoo! Keitai or Internet sites via PC Site Browser. View page contents or download image/music files.



- In this guide, "Yahoo! Keitai" refers to the SoftBank Mobile Internet portal and service itself. "PC sites" are sites accessible via PC Site Browser. "Internet" refers to both Internet and Mobile Internet sites.
- A separate subscription is required for Internet services.
- Before using Internet, retrieve Network information.

### Note

• Internet connections incur Packet Communication fees.

# SSL & TLS

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) and Transport Layer Security (TLS) are encryption protocols for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information (credit card numbers, etc.) and authentication.

Confirm electronic certificates saved on 820SC (♥P.5-16, P.5-21).

### Note

### Using SSL/TLS

When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open a page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Inc. and SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd. are not liable for the security of SSL/ TLS. No liability is assumed for any damage associated with SSL/TLS use.

# Cache

Retrieved Mobile Internet pages are temporarily saved in cache. Cache remains even after a session ends or handset is turned off. When full, oldest pages are automatically deleted to make room for new ones.

When a saved page is opened again, it may open from Cache. For the latest content, reload the page.

- When another USIM Card is inserted, Cache contents are automatically deleted.
- When a page with an expiry date is saved, page is automatically deleted upon expiry.

# Yahoo! Keitai

# Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

Access Mobile sites via Yahoo! Keitai main menu.



# Select an item

- When accessing Mobile Internet for the first time, Time & date settings window appears after Step
  Set time & date to open a page.
- To change to a PC site from a Yahoo! Keitai page, press → Manage content → Switch to PC site browser → This page or Link → (OK) → Yes or No

### Note

 When Send referer is set to Not send, pages may not be displayed (€P.5-16).

# **Entering URL**



→ Yahoo! Keitai → Enter



• "http://" is set by default.



### Advanced

### **\ Advanced Settings** IP.5-14

- Moving to Next Page
- Copying Text
- Refreshing Page
- Entering URL to Open Another Site/Page
- Entering URL Quickly
- Entering URL from History
- Saving Image/Background Image
- Saving Background Sound
- Deleting Access History
- Moving to Main Menu
- Using Multiple Pages

### **ペ** Settings

- Delete cache/Cookie/certificates (IPP P.13-5)
- Show or hide Manufacture Number (IPP P.13-5)
- Send or hide Referer (IPP P.13-5)
- Select Cookie setting (IBP P.13-5)
- Select Script setting (IPP P.13-5)
- Confirm Root Certificate (IPP P.13-5)
- Set Certificate retention period (IPP P.13-5)
- Initialize Browser (IPP P.13-6)
- Reset settings (IPP P.13-6)

# **PC Site Browser**

### PC Site Browser Main Menu

Access PC sites via PC Site Browser main menu.

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Yahoo! Keitai \rightarrow PC$ site browser  $\rightarrow$  Homepage

) x	BB hoot 68	90 HR 7 - J	
NES	1 <u>あなた</u>	が通ぶ/	ペストカー
8	983th)[	<b>画像</b> 検索や	物面 ブロ メールが何
NEW1-5-	タイカ	ら応募し	て、豪華
買う	ショッ	ペング	井(司)8葉 7
Back	Sel	ect	Menu

 If a warning appears, press (OK) and choose Yes or No.

# Select an item

- Activate PC Site Browser, 💻 appears.
- In PC Site Browser, download document files or stream media files.
- Some sites may not appear correctly.
- To open Yahoo! Keitai from PC Site Browser, press

### Note

- When *Send referer* is set to *Not send*, page may not open (**○**P.5-21).
- Viewing content rich sites may incur high Packet Communication charges.

### Entering URL

 $\rightarrow$  Yahoo! Keitai  $\rightarrow$  PC site browser  $\rightarrow$  Enter URL



• "http://" is set in URL field by default.

# Enter URL

• If a warning appears, press (OK) and choose *Yes* or *No* 

### Advanced

### **\** Advanced Settings IP.5-19

- Moving to Next Page
- Copying Text
- Refreshing Page
- Entering URL to Open Page
- Entering URL Quickly
- Entering URL from History
- Deleting Access History
- Opening Main Menu
- Using Multiple Pages
- Changing Page Layout

### **ペ** Settings

- Delete cache/Cookie/certificates (IPP.13-6)
- Show or hide Manufacture Number (IPP P.13-6)
- Send or hide Referer (IPP P.13-6)
- Select Cookie setting (IPP P.13-6)
- Select Script setting (IPP P.13-6)
- Confirm Root Certificate (IPP P.13-6)
- Set Certificate retention period (IPP P.13-6)
- Show or hide warning (IPP P.13-6)
- Initialize Browser (IPP P.13-6)
- Reset settings (IPP P.13-6)

# **Page Operations**

# Scrolling

Scroll bar appears when window content extends beyond current view.



# **Moving Cursor**

When selecting an item such as link, move cursor to the item.



- Press 
   to move cursor down.
- In a vertical list, move cursor up
   Press i to move cursor up.
- When multiple items exist in the same line, press
- to move cursor to right or left.
- Move cursor onto linked item, then it is highlighted or enclosed in a frame of dotted lines.





 Press (Back) or with no previous page, end browser a confirmation appears. Choose Yes to end Internet connection.

# **Text Entry & Item Selection**

Pages may contain fields and items shown below.



### 1 Text entry field

Enter data, certification passwords, etc. Highlight Text entry field, press 
(Select) and enter text.

### 2 Radio button

Select an item only. Highlight an item with  $\bigcirc$  and press  $\bigcirc$  (Select) to select it (Appearing as  $\bigcirc$ ).

### 3 Menu field

Open a menu and select item. Highlight an item and press (Select) to open it. Use (Select) to highlight an item and press (Select) to select it. If multiple items are selectable, press (Select) to cancel all.

### 4 Check box

Select multiple items. Highlight an item with

- and press 
  (Select) to select it (Appearing as
- ). To deselect an item, highlight 🔽 and press
- (Select).

### 6 Command button

Perform operations assigned to a button such as *Send* or *Reset*. Highlight a command button and press (Select) to execute the operation.

### Note

• Text entry and item selection varies by page.

### Advanced

### Advanced Settings IP.5-22

### ۲ Settings

- Change page font size (IPP P.13-5, P.13-6)
- Set page scroll unit (IPP P.13-5, P.13-6)
- Show or hide page images (IPP P.13-5, P.13-6)
- Play or mute page sounds (IPP P.13-5, P.13-6)

# **Bookmarks**

Save page URLs as Bookmarks.

# Saving as Bookmark

Save up to 30 Bookmarks.



### Open a page

Flash News "New discovery of Whale fossil" An approximately two million years old Whale fossil was found at the construction site in XX City.





Enter title

# 5-7

# 





# Select a bookmark

### Note

• Packet Communication fees apply for Internet connection.

### Advanced

### Advanced Settings IP.5-22

- Sending Bookmark URL
- Sending Bookmark URL via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>
- Sending Bookmark URL via Infrared
- Changing Bookmark Order
- Deleting Yahoo! Keitai Bookmark
- Deleting PC Site Bookmark
- Saving Bookmark to Data Folder

# **Saved Pages**

Save page contents to view without connections.

# Saving Page

### Save up to 50 pages.





Whale fossil" An approximately two million years old Whale fossil was found at the construction site in XX City. Back Men

New discovery of





**Opening Saved Page** 

 If replacing USIM Card inserted when pages are saved with another one, Saved pages cannot be displayed.

### Advanced

- Advanced Settings D-5-24
- Renaming Saved Page
- Changing Order of Saved Pages
- Deleting Saved Pages in Yahoo! Keitai
- Deleting Saved Pages in PC Site Browser

# Streaming

Enjoy audio visual media while it is downloaded. Access compatible files via page links, etc.

# **Streaming from Page Link**

Open a page containing a page link



Select a link



### Note

• Even if streaming is paused, Internet connection remains active, incurring Packet Communication fees.

# Accessing from Bookmark

Save up to 20 links in Streaming Bookmark.





# Select a bookmark

# **Accessing from History**

Holds up to 20 previously accessed links.





5

Internet Services



- Advanced Settings C P.5-24
- Changing Resolution of Video while Streaming
- Playing Video from Specified Point
- Saving File to Bookmark while Streaming
- Accessing Streaming Saved as Bookmark.
- Accessing Previously Accessed Streaming
- Editing Streaming Bookmark URL
- Saving Streaming Bookmark by Direct Entry
- Deleting Streaming Bookmark URL
- Editing History of Streaming
- Deleting History of Streaming

# S! Quick News (Japanese)

View Yahoo! Keitai content updates for saved items.

- Select S! Ouick News list or S! Loop list.
- Check for updates of items saved in S! Quick News (€P.1-19, P.1-21).

# **Opening List**



 $\rightarrow$  *Entertainment*  $\rightarrow$  *S*! **Quick** News

S! Quick News
1S! Quick News
2 S! Loop list
3 Settings
Select



S! Quick News list or S! Loop

# list

# S! Quick News List



S! Loop List

S! Loop list

S! Loop

1000日記

Delete Select

S! Loop List

Menu

### : Unread Newsflash

- : Unread general news
- Read Newsflash
- 🗑 : Read General news
- il: Newsflash/general news auto update unavailable

Inread S! Loop

unavailable

Sead S! Loop il: S! Loop auto update

5-9

# **Viewing Update Information**

# S! Quick News List Update Information



 $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Entertainment  $\rightarrow$  S! **Ouick** News



# S! Quick News list





# Select content → Select an item

- Press 🖾 (List/Index) to return to S! Quick News list/Contents list.
- To connect to Internet and check for update, highlight an item and press - (Go to) and choose Yes.
- To view information on the next page, press Y (Next) to open the next page.

# S! Loop List Update Information



 $\rightarrow$  Entertainment  $\rightarrow$ S! Quick News



Select an item  $\rightarrow$  Select an entry

- Press 🖾 (List/Index) to return to S! Loop list/ Contents list.
- To connect to Internet and check for update, highlight an item and press 
  (Go to) and choose Yes.
- To view information on the next page, press (Next) to open the next page.

# Registering S! Quick News List/ S! Loop List

# **Registering S! Quick News List**

Register up to 1 newsflash and 4 general news items in S! Quick News list.

 $\begin{array}{c}
\bullet \\
S! \quad Quick \quad News
\end{array}$ 





S! Quick News list





Select content → Follow onscreen instructions

# **Registering S! Loop List**

Register up to five entries in S! Loop list.





 $S! Loop \rightarrow Yes$ 

• For details on how to register S! Loop list, see the help menu in S! Loop.

Internet Services





Men

Delete content

### To delete an entry

Highlight content or S! Loop content

 $\rightarrow \square$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow Yes$ 

### To delete multiple entries

 $\fbox{r} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Multiple \rightarrow$ Check contents or S! Loop contents

 $\rightarrow \square$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow$  Yes

# To delete all entries

 $\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{\widehat{x}'} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow All \rightarrow \text{Enter Phone} \\ \text{Password} \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet} (\text{OK}) \rightarrow Yes \end{array}$ 

5

### Advanced

Advanced Settings P.5-25

- Viewing Content Details
- Refreshing S! Quick News List
- Viewing S! Quick News from List
- Viewing S! Loop Content Details
- Refreshing S! Loop List
- Viewing S! Loop from List

# S! Town (Japanese)

S! Town is an online communication application. Select an avatar and perform operations. In 3D virtual town, you can enjoy various events and communicate with other users.

- To use this function, *S*! *Town* S! Appli is required. This application is preinstalled in 820SC.
- The preinstalled S! Town S! Appli cannot be deleted.
- To use S! Town, Packet Communication fees apply. It may incur high charges.
- S! Town is unavailable if Internet access is restricted by subscription.

# Using S! Town

When using S1 Town for the first time, agree to the terms of service then complete user registration (free) and profile registration.

• For details on how to use S! Town, see the help menu in *S*! *Town* S! Appli.

】 ■ → Communication → S! Town → タイトルへ進む (通信開始)

- Check registration status or cancel registration via Yahoo! Keitai. For details, see the help menu in *S*! *Town* S! Appli.
- An upgrade notice may appear when activating S! Town. Follow onscreen instructions to upgrade.

### Advanced

Advanced Settings IP.5-26

# S! Loop (Japanese)

S! Loop is a communication service.

# Using S! Loop

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Communication \rightarrow S!$ Loop

• Connect to Internet and display the top menu page of S! Loop.

• For details on how to use S! Loop, see the help menu in *S*! *Loop*.

### **\** Advanced Settings

# Yahoo! Keitai

# Moving to Next Page

In a page, 🖅 → Next

### Copying Text

In a page,  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow Copy \ text$  **To copy selected text** 

- Use to move cursor to the first character to
- $copy \rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Start)  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\blacksquare$  to specify range
- with  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (End)
- To copy all text in text entry window (All)

### **Refreshing Page**

In a page,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Refresh$ 

### Entering URL to Open Another Site/Page

In a page,  $\mathbf{\overline{v}} \rightarrow Enter \ URL \rightarrow Enter \ URL$ 

### intering URL Quickly

In URL entry window  $\textcircled{r} \rightarrow Quick address list \rightarrow .co.jp, .ne.jp, .ac.jp, .or.jp, http://, www., .com, or rtsp://$ 

### Entering URL from History

From Yahoo! Keitai  $\checkmark$  Yahoo! Keitai  $\rightarrow$  Enter URL  $\rightarrow$   $\checkmark$   $\rightarrow$ EnterURL logs  $\rightarrow$  Select URL

### From a page $\fbox \rightarrow Enter URL \rightarrow \fbox \rightarrow EnterURL logs \rightarrow$ Select URL

 In URL entry window, enter URL from History. Up to 10 URL logs appear, newest first. When maximum is reached, pages are automatically deleted oldest first.

### Saving Document File

- In a page, highlight document link  $\rightarrow$  (Select)  $\rightarrow$ Save **To play file** Play
- To view file details
- To return to page Back to browser
- If file name exists confirmation appears, choose *Yes* to save under a different name. *No* to edit file name.

5-15

### Saving Image/Background Image

In a page with an image,  $\textcircled{P} \rightarrow Save files \rightarrow Select$ Save items and image or Save BG image  $\rightarrow$  Save

### To view image

Display

### To set image to Wallpaper etc.

Set as (OP.2-46 Setting Images to Wallpaper etc.)

### To view image details

Details

### To return to page

Back to browser

- When saving SVG-T/SWF files, save confirmation appears. Press x to execute other operations
   (●P.2-44).
- If file name exists confirmation appears, choose Yes to save under a different name. No to edit file name.

### Saving Background Sound

In a page playing background sound,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Save$ files  $\rightarrow Save$  items  $\rightarrow \mathbf{\Box}$  (Save)

### To play sound file

Play

### To set sound file as Ringtone

Set as (OP.2-46 Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode)

### To view sound file details Details

# To return to page

Back to browser

 If file name exists confirmation appears, choose Yes to save under a different name. No to edit file name.

### Switching Browser

- In a page,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Manage \ content \rightarrow Switch \ to \ PC$
- site browser → This page or Link
- If a warning appears, press (OK) and choose *Yes* or *No*.
- Link can be selected only when a link is highlighted.

### Searching Tex

In a page,  $[\mathbf{x}] \rightarrow Manage \ content \rightarrow Search \rightarrow$ Select text entry field  $\rightarrow$  Enter text to search  $\rightarrow$  Select search direction  $\rightarrow [\mathbf{x}]$  (Search)

### Moving to Top/Bottom of Page

In a page,  $\mathbf{\Sigma}' \rightarrow Manage \ content \rightarrow Jump \ to \ top \ or$ Jump to bottom

### Sending URL

### Opening Previously Viewed Page

- From Yahoo! Keitai
  - $\blacksquare \rightarrow Yahoo! Keitai \rightarrow History \rightarrow Select URL$
- From a page
  - In a page,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Manage \ content \rightarrow History$
  - → Select URL
- To open in a new tab, highlight URL, press x, and select *Open new tab*.
- Up to 50 accessed URLs are saved.

### Deleting Access Histo

■ → Yahoo! Keitai → History ■ To delete an entry Highlight URL → 😨 → Delete → Selected → Yes ■ To delete multiple entries  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$  → Delete → Multiple → Check histories to delete →  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$  (Delete) → Yes ■ To delete all entries  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$  → Delete → All → Enter Phone Password →  $\boxed{\mathbf{0}}$  (OK) → Yes • Alternatively, in a page, press  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$  → Manage content → History → Highlight URL →  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$  → Delete.

### Zooming Page in/out



### Viewing Flash

In a page, open Flash<sup>®</sup> file and  $\Sigma \rightarrow Manage$ content  $\rightarrow Flash^{\mathbb{B}}$  menu

To pause/play

Pause or Play

To play from beginning

Play from start

### Viewing Page Detail

In a page, *x* → Manage content → Details

To view page information

Page information

**To view Server certificate** Server certificate

### Moving to Main Menu

In a page,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Yahoo!$  Keitai

### Changing Font Size

In a page,  $\mathbf{x}_{!} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Font \ size \rightarrow Small,$ Standard, or Large

### Changing Character Code

In a page,  $\textcircled{v} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Encoding \rightarrow Auto,$ ISO-2022-JP, ISO-8859-1, Shift\_JJS, EUC-JP, or UTF-8

 If page text appears garbled, changing character encoding may solve the problem.

### Changing Scroll Unit

In a page,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Scroll unit \rightarrow Single$ line, Half screen, or Whole screen

### Setting Show/Play of Image/Sound

In a page,  $\mathbf{\overline{x}} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Downloads$ **To set image** 

Images  $\rightarrow$  Show images or Do not show

### To set sound

Sounds  $\rightarrow$  Play sounds or Do not play

### Clearing Cache

In a page,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Memory\ manager \rightarrow Clear\ cache \rightarrow Yes$ 

### **Deleting Cookie**

In a page,  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Memory\ manager \rightarrow Delete\ cookies \rightarrow Yes$ 

### **Deleting Certificates**

In a page,  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Memory\ manager \rightarrow Delete\ certificates \rightarrow Yes$ 

### Setting Manufacture Number Transmission

In a page,  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow$ 

Manufacture number  $\rightarrow$  On or Off

### Sending/Not Sending Referer Information

- In a page,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Send$
- referer → Send or Not send
- Referer is a link source URL information to be sent to Web server when accessing websites.

### **Enabling Cookies**

In a page,  $[\mathbf{x}_{?}] \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Cookies$ 

- → Enabled, Disable, or Confirm
- Select *Confirm* for acceptance confirmation every time before a Cookie is saved.
- Cookie automatically saves identification information of visitors in 820SC. Cookies contain user information allowing sites to recognize users and track preferences.

### Enabling Script

In a page,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Script \rightarrow On, Ask NW access, Confirm, or Off$ 

### Checking Root Certificates

In a page,  $\mathbf{\overline{x'}} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Root$ certificates  $\rightarrow$  Select a certificate

• View electronic certificate preinstalled on 820SC.

### Certificate Retention

In a page,  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Certificate retention \rightarrow Per browsing, On, or Off$ 

### Initializing Saved Information

In a page,  $\mathbf{\overline{x}} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Initialized browser \rightarrow$ 

- Enter Phone Password  $\rightarrow \square$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Yes
- Initialize browser settings or information such as Bookmarks or Saved Pages.

### Resetting Yahoo! Keitai Settings

In a page,  $\textcircled{r} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Reset settings \rightarrow Enter$ Phone Password  $\rightarrow \fbox{(OK)} \rightarrow Yes$ 

### **Opening Multiple Pages**

Highlight page link  $\rightarrow$   $\searrow$   $\rightarrow$  *Tab menu*  $\rightarrow$  *Open new tab* 

- Use tabs at top of window to open up to three pages.
- Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites cannot be open simultaneously.
- Some pages may open in a new tab automatically.
- When multiple tabs are open, some pages may be partially obscured. Close unnecessary tabs.

### Using Multiple Pages



### **Exiting Browse**

In a page,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Exit$ 

### Saving Automatic Save-type Images

Highlight image link in a page  $\rightarrow$  (Select)  $\rightarrow$  (OK)

- To view image Display
- To set image to Wallpaper

Set as (OP.2-46 Setting Images to Wallpaper etc.)

- To view image details Details
- To return to a page Back to browser
- If file name exists confirmation appears, choose Yes to save under a different name. No to edit file name.
- When saving SVG-T/SWF files, save confirmation appears. Press x to execute other operations
   (● P.2-44).

### Zooming Image in/out

In image view,  $\blacksquare$  (Full)  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Zoom)

### Viewing Details in Image View

In image view, 🖅 (Details)

Setting Saved Image to Wallpaper etc. In image view, (☐) (Set as) → (④) P.2-46 Setting Images to Wallpaper etc.)

### Saving Manual Save-type Images

Highlight image link in a page  $\rightarrow$  (Select)  $\rightarrow$  *Save* 

To view image details Details

### To return to a page

- Back to browser
- If file name exists confirmation appears, choose Yes to save under a different name. No to edit file name.
- When saving SVG-T/SWF files, save confirmation appears. Press r to execute other operations
   (● P.2-44).

### Saving Automatic Save-type Sound

Highlight sound link in a page  $\rightarrow$  (Select)  $\rightarrow$  (OK)

### To play sound file Play

To set sound file as Ringtone

Set as (OP.2-46 Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode)

- To view sound file details Details
- To return to a page Back to browser
- If file name exists confirmation appears, choose Yes to save under a different name. No to edit file name.

# 5-18

Internet Services

### Saving Manual Save-type Sound

Highlight sound link in a page  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Select)  $\rightarrow$  *Save* 

### To play sound file

Play

### To set saved sound file as Ringtone

Set as (OP.2-46 Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode)

To view sound file details Details

### To return to a page

Back to browser

 If file name exists confirmation appears, choose Yes to save under a different name. No to edit file name.

### Setting Saved Sound File as Ringtone

In Player window,  $\boxdot$  (Stop)  $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$  (Set as)  $\rightarrow$  (P.2-46 Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode)

### Saving Automatic Save-type Video

Highlight video link in a page  $\rightarrow$  (Select)  $\rightarrow$  (OK)

### To play video

Play

To set saved video file as Ringtone

Set as (OP.2-46 Setting Video File to Ringtone in Normal Mode)

### To view video file details Details

### To return to a page

Back to browser

• If file name exists confirmation appears, choose Yes to save under a different name. No to edit file name.

### Saving Manual Save-type Video

Highlight video link in a page  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Select)  $\rightarrow$  Save

■ To play video Play

- To set video file as Ringtone Set as (●P.2-46 Setting Video File to Ringtone in Normal Mode)
- **To view video file details** *Details*
- To return to a page Back to browser

• If file name exists confirmation appears, choose Yes to save under a different name. No to edit file name.

### Setting Saved Video File as Ringtone

In Player window of saved video,  $\boxdot$  (Stop)  $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$ (Set as)  $\rightarrow$  (O P.2-46 Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode)

### aving Automatic Save-type Flash<sup>®</sup>

Highlight Flash<sup>®</sup> link in a page  $\rightarrow$  (Select)  $\rightarrow$ (OK) **To view Flash**<sup>®</sup> *Display*  **To set Flash<sup>®</sup> to Wallpaper**  *Set as*  $\rightarrow$  *Wallpaper*  $\rightarrow$  (Set) **To view Flash<sup>®</sup> details** *Details* 

- To return to a page Back to browser
- If file name exists confirmation appears, choose Yes to save under a different name. No to edit file name.

### Operations on Saved Flash<sup>®</sup>

Open Flash<sup>®</sup>, Y

To toggle Full Screen/Normal view

Full Screen view or Normal view

To zoom in/out

Zoom → Use  $\boxdot$  (④) or  $\boxdot$ (④) to zoom in or out → To scroll,  $\boxdot$  → To return to previous,

- To pause/resume Flash<sup>®</sup> image Pause or Resume
- To change image quality
  - Quality  $\rightarrow$  High, Medium, or Low
- To rotate image by 90 degrees

Rotate  $\rightarrow$  90\*R or 90\*L

To view details

Details

### Setting Flash<sup>®</sup>

Open Flash<sup>®</sup>,  $\square$  (Set as)  $\rightarrow$  Wallpaper

Saving Manual Save-type Flash®

Highlight Flash<sup>®</sup> link in a page  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Select)  $\rightarrow$  *Save* 

### To view Flash<sup>®</sup>

Display

- To set Flash<sup>®</sup> to Wallpaper Set as  $\rightarrow$  Wallpaper  $\rightarrow$   $\square$  (Set)
- To view Flash<sup>®</sup> details Details

To return to a page Back to browser

• If file name exists confirmation appears, choose Yes to save under a different name. No to edit file name.

# **PC Site Browser**

### Moving to Next Page

In a page,  $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Next$ 

# Copying Tex

- In a page,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Copy \ text$
- To copy selected text Use 🚰 to move cursor to the first character →
  - (Start)  $\rightarrow$  Use to specify range  $\rightarrow$  (End)
- To copy all text in text entry window xy (All)

### **Refreshing Page**

In a page,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Refresh$ 

### Entering URL to Open Page

In a page,  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Enter \ URL \rightarrow Enter \ URL$ 

### Entering URL Quickly

In URL entry window,  $\fbox \rightarrow Quick address list \rightarrow .co.jp, .ne.jp, .ac.jp, .or.jp, http://, www., .com, or rtsp://$ 

### Entering URL from History

### From PC Site Browser

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Yahoo! Keitai \rightarrow PC site browser \rightarrow Enter URL \rightarrow \boxdot \rightarrow EnterURL \log s \rightarrow Select URL$ 

### From a page

- $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Enter \ URL \rightarrow$  Select URL entry field  $\rightarrow$
- $\mathbf{\overline{x'}} \rightarrow EnterURL \ logs \rightarrow Select \ URL$
- In URL entry window, enter URL from History. Up to 10 URL logs appear, newest first. When limit is reached, pages are automatically deleted oldest first.

### Saving Document File

- In a page, highlight file link  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Select)  $\rightarrow$  Save
- To play file Play
- To view file details Details

# To return to a page

- Back to browser
- If file name exists confirmation appears, choose Yes to save under a different name. No to edit file name.

### Switching Browsei

In a page,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Manage \ content \rightarrow Switch \ to$ 

Yahoo! Keitai  $\rightarrow$  This page or Link

- If a warning appears, press (OK) and choose *Yes* or *No*.
- Link can be selected only when a link is highlighted.

### Searching Text

In a page,  $\textcircled{\baselinetwidth\baselinetwidth{\baselinetwidth\$ 

### Moving to Top/Bottom of Page

In a page,  $\mathbf{x}^{p} \rightarrow Manage \ content \rightarrow Jump \ to \ top$ or Jump to bottom

### Sending URL

### **Opening Previously Viewed Pages**

### From Yahoo! Keitai

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Yahoo! Keitai \rightarrow PC site browser \rightarrow History \rightarrow Select URL$ 

### From a page

 $\fbox{} \rightarrow Manage \ content \rightarrow History \rightarrow Select$ URL

- To open in a new tab, highlight URL, press r, and select *Open new tab*.
- Up to 50 accessed page URLs are saved.

### **Deleting Access History**

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Yahoo! Keitai \rightarrow PC site browser \rightarrow History$ 

To delete an entry

Highlight URL  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{\overline{x'}} \rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes

### **To delete multiple entries** $\mathbf{x}_{i} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Multiple \rightarrow Check entries \rightarrow$

 $\square$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow$  Yes

- To delete all entries  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow All \rightarrow \text{Enter Phone Password}$  $\rightarrow$  ■ (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Yes
- Alternatively, in a page, press x → Manage content → History → Highlight URL → x → Delete.

### Zooming Page in/out

```
In a page, \mathbf{x} \rightarrow Manage \ content \rightarrow Zoom \ In/Out
```

```
\rightarrow Use \textcircled{} to select digit \rightarrow \blacksquare (Save)
```

### Viewing Flash<sup>®</sup>

Open Flash<sup>®</sup> file in a page,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Manage \ content$ 

- → Flash<sup>®</sup> menu
- To pause/play Pause or Play
- To play from beginning
  - Play from start

### Viewing Page Detail

In a page,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Manage \ content \rightarrow Details$ 

To view page information

Page information

To view Server certificate Server certificate

### **Opening Main Menu**

In a page,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Homepage$ 

### Changing Font Size

In a page,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Font \ size \rightarrow Small,$ Standard, or Large

### Changing Character Code

In a page,  $\fbox$   $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Encoding  $\rightarrow$  Auto, ISO-2022-JP, ISO-8859-1, Shift\_JIS, EUC-JP, or UTF-8

 If page text appears garbled, changing character encoding may solve the problem.

### Changing Scroll Unit

In a page,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Scroll unit \rightarrow Single$ line, Half screen, or Whole screen

### Setting Show/Play of Image/Sound

In a page,  $\mathbf{x}_{?} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Downloads$ 

### To set image

Images  $\rightarrow$  Show images or Do not show

To set sound

Sounds  $\rightarrow$  Play sounds or Do not play

### **Clearing Cache**

In a page,  $[\mathbf{x}] \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Memory\ manager \rightarrow Clear\ cache \rightarrow Yes$ 

### **Deleting Cookies**

In a page,  $\mathbf{\overline{x'}} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Memory\ manager \rightarrow Delete\ cookies \rightarrow Yes$ 

### **Deleting Certificates**

In a page,  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Memory\ manager \rightarrow Delete\ certificates \rightarrow Yes$ 

### Setting Manufacture Number Transmissior

In a page,  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Manufacture number \rightarrow On or Off$ 

Sending/Not Sending Referer Informatic

In a page,  $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Send$ 

referer  $\rightarrow$  Send or Not send

 Referer is a link source URL to be sent to server when accessing websites.

### **Enabling Cookies**

- In a page,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Cookies$
- → Enabled, Disable, or Confirm
- Select *Confirm* to show confirmation every time before a Cookie is saved.
- Cookies contain identification information allowing sites to recognize users and track preferences.

### Enabling Scrip

In a page,  $\fbox{P} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Script \rightarrow On$ , Ask NW access, Confirm, or Off

### Checking Root Certificate

In a page, → *Settings* → *Security* → *Root certificates* → Select certificate • View electronic certificate preinstalled on 820SC.

### Certificate Retention

In a page,  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow$ 

Certificate retention  $\rightarrow$  Per browsing , On, or Off

### Setting to Show Warning Messages

In a page,  $\fbox{} \rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Warning messages  $\rightarrow$ Activate PC site browser of Switch to Yahoo! Keitai  $\rightarrow$  On of Off

 Always show or hide warning when activating PC Site Browser, or switching between Yahoo! Keitai or PC Site Browser or vice versa.

### Initializing Saved Informatio

- In a page,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Initialized browser \rightarrow$
- Enter Phone Password  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Yes
- Initialize browser settings or information such as Bookmarks or Saved Pages.

### Resetting PC Site Browse

In a page,  $\textcircled{P} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Reset settings \rightarrow Enter$ Phone Password  $\rightarrow \textcircled{O}$  (OK)  $\rightarrow Yes$ 

### Opening Multiple Pages

Highlight page link  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow$  *Tab menu*  $\rightarrow$  *Open new tab* 

- Use tabs too toggle up to three pages.
- Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites cannot be open simultaneously.
- Some pages may open in a new tab automatically.
- When multiple tabs are open, contents may be partially obscured. Close unnecessary tabs.

### Using Multiple Page



### Changing Page Layout

In a page,  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Small \ screen \ or \ PC \ screen$ 

# **Page Operations**

### Saving Phone Number/E-mail Address

### To save as a new entry

In a page containing phone number/

E-mail address, select phone number or E-mail

address  $\rightarrow$  Save Number  $\rightarrow$  Phone or USIM  $\rightarrow$ New  $\rightarrow$  Enter each item (OP.2-18 Creating New Entries O)

### To update entry

In a page containing phone number/E-mail address, select phone number/E-mail address  $\rightarrow$  Save Number  $\rightarrow$  Phone or USIM  $\rightarrow$  Update  $\rightarrow$  Search Phonebook and select entry  $\rightarrow$  Enter each item (OP.2-18 Creating New Entries (2))

### Sending Mail to Number/Mail Address

- In a page containing phone number/E-mail address, select phone number/E-mail address  $\rightarrow$  *Create Message*  $\rightarrow$  *S*! *Mail* or *SMS*  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$ P.4-3 Sending S! Mail  $\bigcirc$ , P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages  $\bigcirc$ )
- Available phone numbers, Mail addresses appear underlined.

### Calling Phone Number

In a page containing phone number, select phone number  $\rightarrow$  *Voice call* or *Video call* 

• Available phone numbers appear underlined.

### Using URL to Open Another Page

Select URL in a page

• Available URLs appear underlined.

# Bookmarks

### **Opening Bookmarked Sit**

In a page,  $\fbox{P} \rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow Open \ list \rightarrow$  Select bookmark

• To open in a new tab, highlight bookmark  $\rightarrow \mathbf{Y} \rightarrow$ Select *Open new tab*.

### Editing Bookmark Title or URI

### From Yahoo! Keitai

 $\begin{array}{c} \blacksquare \rightarrow Yahoo! \ Keitai \rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow \\ \mbox{Highlight bookmark} \rightarrow \boxdot \ (Edit) \rightarrow Select \ Title \\ \mbox{field} \rightarrow Edit \ title \rightarrow Select \ URL \rightarrow Edit \ URL \rightarrow \boxdot \\ \ (Save) \end{array}$ 

### From PC Site Browser

■ → Yahoo! Keitai → PC site browser → Bookmarks → Highlight bookmark → 🖾 (Edit) → Select Title field → Edit title → Select URL → Edit URL → 🖾 (Save)

From a page

 $\begin{array}{c} \fbox{} & \rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow Open \ list \rightarrow Highlight \\ bookmark \rightarrow \boxdot{} (Edit) \rightarrow Select \ Title \ field \rightarrow Edit \\ title \rightarrow Select \ URL \rightarrow Edit \ URL \rightarrow \boxdot{} (Save) \end{array}$ 

### Saving Bookmark by Direct Entry

■ From Yahoo! Keitai ■ → Yahoo! Keitai → Bookmarks → 🖭 → Add bookmark → Select title field → Enter title → Select URL field → Enter URL → 🖾 (Save) ■ From PC Site Browser ■ → Yahoo! Keitai → PC site browser → Bookmarks → 🖭 → Add bookmark → Select title field → Enter title → Select URL field → Enter URL → 🖾 (Save)

### From a page

 $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow Save \rightarrow$  Enter title

### Sending Bookmark URL

### From Yahoo! Keitai

■ → Yahoo! Keitai → Bookmarks → Highlight bookmark →  $\mathbf{x}$  → Send → Via message → S! Mail or SMS → ( $\mathbf{O}$ P.4-3 Sending S! Mail  $\mathbf{O}$ , P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages  $\mathbf{O}$ )

### From PC Site Browser

■ → Yahoo! Keitai → PC site browser → Bookmarks → Highlight bookmark → 🔄 → Send → Via message → S! Mail or SMS → (◆P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ②, P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages ②)

### From a page

Sending Bookmark URL via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>

From Yahoo! Keitai
→ Yahoo! Keitai → Bookmarks → Highlight bookmark → ♥ → Send → Via bluetooth → Check bookmarks → ♥ (Send) → Yes → (●P.12-7 Sending ?)
From PC Site Browser
→ Yahoo! Keitai → PC site browser → Bookmarks → Highlight bookmark → ♥ → Send → Via bluetooth → Check bookmarks → ♥ (Send) → Yes → (●P.12-7 Sending ?)
From a page
♥ → Bookmarks → Open list → Highlight bookmark → ♥ → Send → Via bluetooth →

Check bookmarks  $\rightarrow \boxtimes$  (Send)  $\rightarrow$  Yes  $\rightarrow$ ( $\bigcirc$ P.12-7 Sending (2))

### Sending Bookmark URL via Infrared

From Yahoo! Keitai

■ → Yahoo! Keitai → Bookmarks → Highlight bookmark →  $\mathbf{Y}$  → Send → Via infrared (�P.12-3)

### From PC Site Browser

■ → Yahoo! Keitai → PC site browser → Bookmarks → Highlight bookmark →  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$  → Send → Via infrared (OP.12-3)

### From a page

 $\boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow Open \ list \rightarrow Highlight$ bookmark  $\rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Send \rightarrow Via \ infrared$ (P.12-3) From Yahoo! Keitai ■ → Yahoo! Keitai → Bookmarks → Highlight bookmark  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$   $\rightarrow$  Change order  $\rightarrow$ Use [] to move cursor to the target location  $\rightarrow$ Select From PC Site Browser  $\blacksquare \rightarrow$  Yahoo! Keitai  $\rightarrow$  PC site browser  $\rightarrow$ *Bookmarks*  $\rightarrow$  Highlight bookmark  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}$ ? *Change order*  $\rightarrow$  Use [] to move cursor to the target location  $\rightarrow$  (Select) From a page  $\mathbf{x}_{r} \rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow Open \ list \rightarrow Highlight$ bookmark  $\rightarrow \mathbf{x} \rightarrow Change \ order \rightarrow Use \square$ to move cursor to the target location  $\rightarrow$ (Select) ■  $\rightarrow$  Yahoo! Keitai  $\rightarrow$  Bookmarks To delete an entry Highlight bookmark  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}_{?}$   $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$ Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes To delete multiple entries  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Multiple \rightarrow Check bookmarks$  $\rightarrow \square$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow Yes$ To delete all entries  $\mathbf{x}^{\prime} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow All \rightarrow Enter Phone Password$  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Yes

Alternatively, in a page, press r→ Bookmarks →
 Open list → Highlight bookmark → r→ Delete.

# Deleting PC Site Bookmark $\square \rightarrow Yahoo! Keitai \rightarrow PC site browser \rightarrow$

Bookmarks ■ To delete an entry Highlight bookmark →  $\boxed{\mathbf{v}}$  → Delete → Selected → Yes

- To delete multiple entries  $\boxed{Y} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Multiple \rightarrow Check bookmarks$   $\rightarrow \boxdot (Delete) \rightarrow Yes$ ■ To delete all entries
  - $\begin{array}{c} \hline \mathbf{x} \end{array} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow All \rightarrow \text{Enter Phone Password} \\ \rightarrow \hline \mathbf{a} \quad (OK) \rightarrow Yes \end{array}$
- Alternatively, in a page, press  $\mathbf{x}_{!} \rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow Open \ list \rightarrow Highlight bookmark \rightarrow \mathbf{x}_{!} \rightarrow Delete.$

### Saving Bookmark to Data Folder

### From Yahoo! Keitai

 $\blacksquare \to Yahoo! Keitai \to Bookmarks \to \textcircled{r} \to Save to data folder \to Phone or Memory card \to Yes$ 

### From PC Site Browser

■ → Yahoo! Keitai → PC site browser → Bookmarks → 🗹 → Save to data folder → Phone of Memory card → Yes

### From a page

 $\boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow Open \ list \rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Save to \ data \ folder \rightarrow Phone \ ot \ Memory \ card \rightarrow Yes$ 

• The save location can be set to *Memory card* if inserted.

# **Saved Pages**





# Streaming

hanging Resolution of Video while Streaming

While streaming,  $\mathbf{\underline{x}} \rightarrow Resolution \rightarrow 240 * 180$ , 176 \* 144, or 128 \* 96

• Same operation is available during a pause.

Playing Video from Specified Point

While streaming,  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow Time \ search \rightarrow \text{Enter time}$  $\rightarrow \mathbf{a}$  (Play)

Saving File to Bookmark while Streaming

While streaming,  $\textcircled{P} \rightarrow Add \ bookmark \rightarrow$  Select title field  $\rightarrow$  Enter title  $\rightarrow$  Select URL field  $\rightarrow$  Enter URL  $\rightarrow$  M (Save)

Accessing Streaming Saved as Bookmark.

While streaming ,  $\fbox{'} \rightarrow \textit{View bookmark} \rightarrow \text{Select}$  an entry

Accessing Previously Accessed Streaming

While streaming ,  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow View \ history \rightarrow$  Select a history

Internet Services

### Editing Streaming Bookmark URL

 From main menu
 → Media Player → Streaming → Bookmark → Highlight bookmark → 𝔄 → Edit bookmark → Select title field → Edit title → Select URL → Edit URL → 𝔄 (Save)
 From streaming window
 While streaming, 𝔄 → View bookmark → Highlight entry to edit → 𝔄 → Edit bookmark → Select title field → Edit title → Select URL → Edit URL → 𝔄 (Save)

### Saving Streaming Bookmark by Direct Entry

### From main menu

 $\fbox{ } \rightarrow Media\ Player \rightarrow Streaming \rightarrow Bookmark \rightarrow \fbox{ } \rightarrow Add\ bookmark \rightarrow \text{Select}$ title field  $\rightarrow$  Enter title  $\rightarrow$  Select URL field  $\rightarrow$  Enter URL  $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot{ }$  (Save)

### From streaming window

While streaming,  $\textcircled{v} \rightarrow View bookmark \rightarrow \fbox{v}$  $\rightarrow Add bookmark \rightarrow Select title field \rightarrow Enter$ title  $\rightarrow$  Select URL field  $\rightarrow$  Enter URL  $\rightarrow \boxdot{v}$ (Save)

**Deleting Streaming Bookmark URL** ■  $\rightarrow$  Media Player  $\rightarrow$  Streaming  $\rightarrow$  Bookmark To delete an entry Highlight bookmark  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\mathbf{x}'}$   $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$ Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes To delete multiple entries  $|\mathbf{x}'| \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Multiple \rightarrow Check bookmarks$  $\rightarrow \square$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow Yes$ To delete all entries  $|\mathbf{x}| \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow All \rightarrow Yes$  Alternatively, in streaming window, press x<sup>1</sup> → *View bookmark*  $\rightarrow$  Highlight URL  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}$ ? Delete.  $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Streaming \rightarrow History \rightarrow$ Highlight entry  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow$  *Edit history*  $\rightarrow$  Select title field  $\rightarrow$  Edit title  $\rightarrow$  Select URL  $\rightarrow$  Enter URL  $\rightarrow \square$ (Save)  $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Streaming \rightarrow History$ To delete an entry Highlight URL  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}'$   $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes To delete multiple entries  $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Multiple \rightarrow Check URLs to$ delete  $\rightarrow \square$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow Yes$ To delete all entries  $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow All \rightarrow Yes$  Alternatively, in streaming window, press x<sup>1</sup> → *View history*  $\rightarrow$  Highlight URL  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y}$   $\rightarrow$  *Delete.* 

# S! Quick News (Japanese)

### Viewing Content Details

In S! Quick News list, highlight content  $\rightarrow \mathbf{x}_{l} \rightarrow Details$ 

### Refreshing S! Quick News List

In S! Quick News list, select content  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}'$   $\rightarrow$ 

Refresh

• Press Y: (Cancel) to cancel refresh.

### Viewing S! Quick News from List

- In S! Quick News list, select content → Highlight item
- $\rightarrow \mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Access website \rightarrow Yes$
- Press Y (Cancel) to cancel.

### Viewing S! Loop Content Details

In S! Loop list, highlight content  $\rightarrow \mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Details$ 

### Refreshing S! Loop List

- In S! Loop list, select content  $\rightarrow$  Highlight item  $\rightarrow$  **\mathbf{x}**?
- → Refresh
- Press 🖅 (Cancel) to cancel refresh in process.

# Viewing S! Loop from List

- In S! Loop list, select content  $\rightarrow$  Highlight item  $\rightarrow$  **\mathbf{x}**?
- $\rightarrow$  Access website  $\rightarrow$  Yes
- Press **Y** (Cancel) to cancel.

Refreshing S! Quick News List Automatically

•  $\rightarrow$  Entertainment  $\rightarrow$  S! Quick News  $\rightarrow$ 

Settings  $\rightarrow$  Auto refresh  $\rightarrow$  S! Quick News

- To refresh Newsflash automatically
- Flash news  $\rightarrow$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  1 hour, 2 hours, 4 hours, 8 hours, or Off
- To refresh general news automatically
- General  $\rightarrow$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  On or Off • Auto refresh is executed based on the set time. To
- confirm next time for refresh, highlight content in S! Quick News list, press  $\overline{\mathbf{v}}$ , and select *Details*.
- Set *General* to *On* to refresh automatically once a day.
- Flash news auto refresh is not executed between midnight and early AM. If General is set, news is refreshed automatically during that period.
- Auto update is not executed while roaming. Refresh news manually (●P.5-12).
- Auto refresh may fail outside service area or where signal conditions are poor.
- If auto refresh fails, update news manually (●P.5-12).
- Removing/replacing USIM Card cancels auto refresh.

### Refreshing S! Loop List Automatically

- → Entertainment → S! Quick News →
- Settings  $\rightarrow$  Auto refresh  $\rightarrow$  S! Loop  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  On or Off
- Auto refresh is executed every 4 hours. S! Loop list auto refresh is not executed between midnight and early AM.
- Auto refresh is executed based on the set time. To confirm next time for refresh, highlight content in S! Quick News list, press r, and select *Details*.
- Auto update is not executed while roaming. Refresh news manually (●P.5-12).
- Auto refresh may fail outside service area or where signal conditions are poor.
- If auto refresh has failed, update news manually (●P.5-12).
- Removing/replacing USIM Card cancels auto refresh.

### Deleting S! Quick News List Automatically

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Entertainment \rightarrow S! Quick News \rightarrow$
- Settings → Delete S! Quick News List → Enter
- Phone Password  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Yes

# S! Town (Japanese)

### Using S! Town Library

- $\bullet \rightarrow Communication \rightarrow \mathsf{Highlight} \ S! \ Town \rightarrow \mathsf{Mighlight} \ S!$
- Activate S! Appli from S! Town Library. *S*! *Town* may be activated for some S! Applis.
- When S! Town-compatible S! Applis are downloaded, it is automatically saved in library.
- Save S! Town-compatible S! Applis which expands S! Town functions to Library.

# **Digital TV**

About Digital TV	6-2
Getting Started	
Precautions	
One Seg	
Antenna	
Incoming Transmissions	
Key Assignments	
TV Window	
Area Setup	
Watching TV.	
G-GUIDE Mobile (Japanese)	
Data Broadcast (Japanese)	
TV Links	
Record/Playback Programs	6-8
Precautions	6-8
Recording Programs	6-8
Playing Recorded Programs	
TV Timer/TV Timer Recording	
Setting Timer via EPG	
Manual Timer Settings	
At Timer Time	
Viewing Reservation	
Advanced Settings	
While Watching TV	C 1
5	
TV Window Operations	
Timer/Timer Recording	6-16



# **About Digital TV**

820SC supports One Seg terrestrial digital broadcasts. One Seg is referred to as "Digital TV" in this manual.

- Set up a channel list for the current service area or access programs via Program Guide.
- Use Data Broadcasts to get program-related information or to join the program through interactive services.

### • Watching Digital TV

In Standby, press (1+ seconds) to activate TV. Set up a channel list for your service area to watch available TV programs (�P.6-5).

### Accessing Program Guide

Download an electronic program guide (€P.6-6).

### • Watching Data Broadcasts

In addition to audio and visuals, watch Data Broadcasts to get program-related information (�P.6-7).

 Operational instructions in this section are described with 820SC Display in Open Position (●P.1-5).

# **Getting Started**

# Precautions

- 820SC supports One Seg terrestrial digital television broadcast service available only in Japan.
- Do not use TV while driving a vehicle or riding a bicycle. (Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law since November 1 2004.) For TV use while walking, road safety precautions should always apply.
- Incoming transmissions may affect audio/visual signal. Use of another handset near 820SC may also affect TV.
- Use Stereo Earphone Microphone where viewing Digital TV with Speaker is inappropriate.

# Reception

Digital TV may not be viewable in the following places:

- Too far from or too close to broadcasting stations
- In mountainous areas or near tall buildings
- Aboard trains or in moving vehicles
- Near high-voltage lines, neon lights, or wireless base stations
- Near railroad tracks or highways
- In underground shopping malls or tunnels
- Anywhere jamming signal is broadcast or reception is blocked

## Battery

When battery level is C, Digital TV is not available.

• If battery runs out while watching, TV automatically ends.

# Charging

Charge battery while viewing Digital TV.

- Use the SoftBank approved AC Charger.
- Keep AC Charger cord away from Antenna; may cause interference.
- Charging takes longer when TV is active.

# One Seg

One Seg is a terrestrial digital broadcast service supporting mobile television and data broadcasts in Japan. The 6 MHz band assigned to each digital channel is divided into 13 segments: 12 dedicated to HDTV broadcasting and the remaining "One Seg" to mobile devices.

One Seg service began on April 1 2006, in the three largest urban areas and 13 prefectures in Japan. For details, access the Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting Website:

• The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting Website http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/ (PC) http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/ (Mobile) Japanese

# Antenna

• 820SC features a whip antenna that divides into three segments. Fully extend Antenna until fixed.



- After use, hold base of Antenna to retract it; pressing down on it with force may cause damage. Retract it and replace top bead into 820SC.
- Extend Antenna when viewing Digital TV, unless a broadcasting station is close. In this case, retract Antenna for better reception.

• For best reception, fold and rotate 360°.



Incoming call window appears. Press **t** to answer a call.

The other party's phone number appears. End the call to return to Digital TV.

### **Incoming Messages**



Sender's mail address appears at the top of Display.

Use  $\overline{\mathbb{A}}_{\lambda_{\infty}}^{p}$  to select/view messages. Press  $\checkmark$  to return to TV window.

- When returning to Standby, the number of new and unread messages appears in an incoming notice window.
- During Voice Call or when receiving new messages, the quality of TV audio or visuals may be reduced.
   When bringing another mobile phone close to 820SC while watching TV, the audio or visual quality may also be reduced.



No.	Open Position	Viewer Position
0	_	Show Program Guide
0	-	Open Menu

No.	Open Position	Viewer Position
8	Switch Channel	-
4	Show Program Guide	_
6	Select Data Broadcast Item	-
0	Select Channel	-
<b>7</b> 8	Ι	Switch Channel, Select Menu Item
<b>9</b>	Open Menu	-
10	Execute Data Broadcast Item	-
0	Open Switch Bar	-
12	Exit TV	-
80	Adjust Volume	Adjust Volume, Select Menu Item
(2+ seconds)	_	Mute
🚯 (2+ seconds)	Mute	-
(1+ seconds)	Record	Record
16	-	Toggle Image Size
### **TV Window**



Viewer Position/

With Subtitle



### 1 TV Image

- 2 Subtitle
- 3 Signal Strength
- 4 Channel
- 6 Record
- 6 Volume
- 7 Station Name/Program Name
- 8 Data Broadcast
- O Toggle Image Size

### Area Setup

6

ମ

820SC contains local channel information. Before using TV for the first time, specify your area to set up channels.





### Confirmation appears, choose Yes

Select regions	
Hokkaido/Tohoku	
Kanto	
Hokuriku/Koshinetu	
Tokai	
Kansai	
Chugoku	
Shikoku	
Kyushu/Okinawa	
Select	



### Select a region





### Select a province





### Select a local area

Channel list
)総合・東京
2 教育・東京
3 XXX
4 XX テレビ
5 テレビ〇〇
6 XXX
7 東京テレビ
8 XX テレビジョン
Next

 Channel search starts • To cancel channel search, press x, (Cancel). Press  $| \bullet |$  (Next)  $\rightarrow$  Enter



Advanced Settings C P.6-12

### Watching TV





### Use Keypad to select a channel



• To change a channel one by one, press 



- When Autoinvocation (●P.13-19) is set to Watch TV. turning 820SC into Viewer Position automatically starts TV application.
- To adjust volume while watching TV, press 4/4. Press of for 2+ seconds to mute.

### **G-GUIDE Mobile (Japanese)**

"Gガイドモバイル" (G-GUIDE Mobile) is a convenient application that combines program guides for the terrestrial analog and digital broadcasting, and AV remote control function. Search TV programs by genre or keyword and retrieve them anytime and anvwhere.

### $\textcircled{D} \rightarrow Program guide$

- Alternatively, in TV window, press 🖾 (EPG) to show Program Guide.
- When Program Guide is activated for the first time, initial setting window for "Gガイド モバイル" (G-GUIDE Mobile) appears. Perform initial settings to access Program Guide.
- Highlight a program to watch, press 🖾 (TV起動) to show TV window

### Data Broadcast (Japanese)

In addition to audio/visuals. Data broadcast is available. Follow onscreen instructions to get program-related information or enjoy interactive TV services



### **Basic Operations**



use 🙀 to highlight an item  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Select).

 Internet connection confirmation appears depending on Data Broadcast and station servers. Viewing Data Broadcasts (receiving information) is free. However, using data links or Internet-related services may incur connection fees

### Note

• Use 📮 to highlight and select an item even when items are horizontally arranged. Use to switch channels.

### **TV** Links

Procedures to save links vary by program. Check information in Data Broadcasts.

### Saving TV Links



On a program offering Data Broadcast, select a link source

### **Opening TV Links**

 $\textcircled{m} \rightarrow TV links$  and select TV link

### Advanced Settings B-6-12

- Viewing Program Information
- Selecting Channels via Thumbnail View
- Setting Subtitle Display
- Setting Control Panel Display
- Changing to Full Screen View
- Returning to Data Broadcast Top Page
- Viewing TV links
- Switching to Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>-Compatible Headset
- Setting Channel Selection
- Starting Recording
- Playing Recorded Program
- Ending TV application
- Viewing Help
- Deleting TV Links
- Viewing TV Link Details

### **K** Settings

- Show or hide Manufacture Number (IPP 13-10)
- Delete station data (IPP P.13-10)
- Adjust display brightness (IPP P.13-10)
- Adjust sound quality (IPP P.13-10)
- Select output device (IPP P.13-10)

### Record/Playback Programs

### Precautions

- Format and insert Memory Card before recording (♥P.2-36).
- Never remove Memory Card while recording. Damage or accidental data loss may result.
- Recording is only available with sufficient remaining memory.
- Recording stops when battery runs low; charge battery while recording.
- Recorded programs cannot be copied/forwarded or attached to S! Mail.
- Recording time is approximate 90 minutes with full 256 MB Memory Card.

### Copyrights

820SC encryption technology prevents unauthorized use through data encryption and authentication.

Use only ISDB-T Mobile Video Profile (SD-Video standard) compatible device to playback recorded data.

820SC divides recorded files based on this standard.

### Note

- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only, and prohibit unauthorized use.
- Recorded content may be lost or damaged by accident or malfunction. SoftBank is not liable for any damage resulting from accidental loss/alteration.
- Recorded data cannot be copied to another recordable media, such as other Memory Cards, etc.

### **Recording Programs**

Record current programs on Memory Card. Recorded files are saved to SD\_VIDEO folder.







- Both TV image and Data Broadcast information (if any) are recorded. Recording without text is also available (●P.13-10).
- Changing volume, window size, or sound settings does not affect recordings.

6

### Note

- If Memory/Battery runs low, recording stops (recorded clip is saved).
- When Voice Call/S! Circle Talk request is accepted, recording continues. Confirmation appears for incoming TV Call.
- With movie set for ringtone, TV recording takes priority over the movie ringtone (default ringtone may sound).

### **Playing Recorded Programs**



### Select a file

- The last played file starts from where it stopped.
- TV Player Window Injdicators
  - 📺: Playable File
  - 📺: Displayable File

### Advanced

### **۲** Settings

- Set recording type (IPP P.13-10)
- Select save location (IPP.13-10)

### **TV Timer/TV Timer Recording**

Up to five reservations are available. Up to four hours can be set per reservation (depending on memory capacity). Approximate 680 MB (or above) Memory Card is required to record four hours.

### Precautions

- End the current operations.
- Make sure TV reception is good.
- Confirm battery is adequately charged (or record while charging).
- Check there is enough free space on Memory Card.

### Start/End Time

Digital TV receives programs slightly after scheduled start time; recording may start before reserved program.

Recording ends a few seconds after Timer end time.

### Via EPG (€P.6-6)



**Manual Timer Settings** → Reservation list Reservation list Reserve Result Blank Men  $|\mathbf{Y}'| \rightarrow New \rightarrow Manual$ New reservation Recording Start date 2007/12/15 15:30 End time Save Select

Select Recording field  $\rightarrow On$ or *Off* 

> New reservation Recording On Start date E007/12/15 Start time IS:30 End time IS:30 Save Select

• Select On to record, Off to watch.



New reservation
Recording
Start date
2007/12/15
Start time
15:30
End time
15:30
Save

Digital TV



### Select Start time field → Enter Start time





### Select End time field → Enter End time

New reservation
Recording
On
Start date
2007/12/15
Start time
15:30
16:00
Save



New	reservation
Start	date
2007/12/	15
Start	time
15:30	
End t	ime
16:00	
Channe	
総合・)	東京
Save	Select

### 🖂 (Save)

### At Timer Time

TV and Alarm activate at alarm notification time before reservation.

Exit all active functions; 820SC returns to Standby to enable Timer.

### **Viewing Reservation**



 $\textcircled{(D)} \rightarrow Reservation list$ 



### Reserve or Result → Select an item to view

- Switch *Reserve* or *Result* tabs to view reservations before/after Start time
- 🧟 : Recording On
  - 菌 : Image Only
  - . TV Alarm Set
  - 2 : Recording failed
  - 菌 : Reception failed

### Advance

- **\** Advanced Settings IP.6-16
- Editing Reservations
- Deleting Reservations

### **۲** Settings

- Set alert tone (IPP.13-9)
- Set volume ( P.13-9)
- Set vibration ( P.13-9)

Set notification light	nt (🖙 P.13-9)
Set reminder time	(🖙 P.13-9)
Set alarm duration	(🕼 P.13-9)

### Advanced Settings

### While Watching TV

### Receiving a call

**^** 

• When the call ends, 820SC returns to TV window.

### Rejecting a call (Reject)

### **TV Window Operations**

### Viewing Program Information

(a)  $(1 + \text{seconds}) \rightarrow \mathbf{x} \rightarrow Program Info \rightarrow$ Select a program to view

• To return to TV window, press  $\square$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  (CEAR) / (CEAR).

### Selecting Channels via Thumbnail View

 $\textcircled{m} (1+ \text{ seconds}) \rightarrow \fbox{} \rightarrow Channel \ preview \rightarrow \text{Select a channel}$ 

### **Changing Reception Areas**

 $\textcircled{m} (1+ \text{seconds}) \rightarrow \fbox{} \rightarrow Set channels \rightarrow$ 

Change area → Select an area

### Setting Reception Areas

(i) (1+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$   $\checkmark$   $\rightarrow$  Set channels  $\rightarrow$ Change area  $\rightarrow$  Highlight Set area in  $\rightarrow$   $\checkmark$   $\rightarrow$  Set area info  $\rightarrow$  Select a region  $\rightarrow$  Select a province  $\rightarrow$ Select a local area  $\rightarrow$   $\square$  (Next)  $\rightarrow$  Enter name • Up to 10 areas can be set.

6

### Updating All Channels in the Area



• Delete saved channel then update starts.

### Updating Channels in the Area

(i) (1+ seconds) → x → Set channels
 To update during area change
 Change area → Highlight an area → x →
 Update channels → Update further

- To update during channel switch
  - Channels switch  $\rightarrow \mathbf{x} \rightarrow Update$  channels  $\rightarrow Update$  further
- Add newly received channel; or overwrite saved channel with same No.

### **Renaming Areas**



### Deleting Area

(a)  $(1 + \text{seconds}) \rightarrow \mathbf{x} \rightarrow Set channels \rightarrow Change area \rightarrow Highlight an area to delete \rightarrow \mathbf{x} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Yes$ 

### **Resetting Channels**

 $\textcircled{\textbf{(m)}} (1 + \text{seconds}) \rightarrow \fbox{\textbf{(m)}} \rightarrow Set \ channels \rightarrow Change \ area \rightarrow Highlight an area \rightarrow \fbox{\textbf{(m)}} \rightarrow Reset \rightarrow Yes$ 

### /iewing Area Detail:

 $\textcircled{m} (1+ \text{ seconds}) \rightarrow \fbox{r} \rightarrow Set \ channels \rightarrow Change \ area \rightarrow Highlight an area \rightarrow \fbox{r} \rightarrow Details$ 

### Switching Channels

 $\textcircled{m} (1+ \text{ seconds}) \rightarrow \textcircled{r} \rightarrow Set \ channels \rightarrow Channels \ switch \rightarrow Select \ a \ channel$ 

### Moving Channels

```
\begin{array}{c} \textcircled{\textbf{m}} (1+ \text{ seconds}) \to \fbox{\textbf{r}} \to \textit{Set channels} \to \\ \textit{Channels switch} \to \textit{Highlight a channel to move} \to \\ \fbox{\textbf{r}} \to \textit{Move} \to \textit{Use} \fbox{\textbf{r}} \text{ to select channel No.} \to \\ \fbox{\textbf{m}} (OK) \end{array}
```

### Deleting Channel



(1+ seconds) →	¥! →	Set channels $\rightarrow$	Save
----------------	------	----------------------------	------

 $channel \rightarrow$  Select a save location

### etting Channel Selection

 $\textcircled{m} (1+ seconds) \rightarrow \fbox{} \Rightarrow Set channels \rightarrow Select$ 

setting  $\rightarrow$  Channel switch or By manual



(1+ seconds)  $\rightarrow \mathbf{x} \rightarrow Show subtitle or Hide$ subtitle

• Show/Hide subtitle is TV program dependent feature.

(1+ seconds)  $\rightarrow \mathbf{x}_{i} \rightarrow Show \ control \ panel \ or$ Hide control panel

### Changing to Full Screen View

(1+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow$  Change view (data) • Press Y: (TV) for TV image.

### Returning to Data Broadcast Top Page

 $(1 + seconds) \rightarrow \mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Back to top$ 

(1+ seconds)  $\rightarrow \mathbf{Y} \rightarrow TV links$ 

Digital TV

### Switching to Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>-Compatible Headset

- (1+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow$  Transfer to A/V
- headset or Phone → Select a device
- If Transfer to A/V headset is set, volume adjustment on 820SC is unavailable. Adjust on headset
- Playback with monaural headset is unavailable.

1 (1+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$   $\fbox{r}$   $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  TV Alarm To set Alert tone Alert tone  $\rightarrow$  Select a save location  $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow \square$  (Play)  $\rightarrow \mathbf{x}$ ? (Select) To set Volume *Volume*  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\checkmark$  to adjust volume  $\rightarrow$ (Play)  $\rightarrow$  (Select) To set Vibration Vibration  $\rightarrow$  Off or Pattern 1 to Pattern 5  $\rightarrow$  $\square$  (Play)  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Select) To set Light Light  $\rightarrow On$  or Off To set Reminder timer Reminder timer  $\rightarrow$  1 minute before, 3 minute before, or 5 minute before

### To set Duration

Duration  $\rightarrow 10$  secs. 20 secs. of 30secs

### Selecting Data Broadcast Preference

 $\textcircled{m} (1+ \text{ seconds}) \rightarrow \fbox{r} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Set$ broadcast data

To set recording type

Set recording → Image + Text or Image only

To select save location

*Image location* → *Phone* or *Memory card* 

To select connection notification type

*Notify connection*  $\rightarrow$  *On, Off,* or *Check each time* 

To set manufacture No. notification

Manufacture number  $\rightarrow$  On or Off

To delete station data

Delete station data  $\rightarrow$  Select a station  $\rightarrow$ Highlight an item to delete  $\rightarrow \mathbf{x} \rightarrow Delete$  or Delete All

• To delete all station data, enter Phone Password.

### Adjusting Display Brightness

(a)  $(1 + \text{seconds}) \rightarrow \forall r \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Display brightness \rightarrow Use reaction to adjust brightness <math>\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Select)

- Changing Sound Setting
   (in) (1+ seconds) → v → Settings → Sound
   To adjust sound quality Sound mode → Normal, Music, News, Movie, or Sports
   To select language
  - Sound language  $\rightarrow$  Main, Sub, or Main + Sub
- To select output device Sound output → Earphone or Loud speaker

### Setting Touch Key Lock

 $\textcircled{m} (1+ \text{ seconds}) \rightarrow \textcircled{r} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Touch key lock$ 

To select timing

Timing  $\rightarrow$  Off, After 15 sec, After 30 sec, or After 1 min

To set popup message

 $Popup \rightarrow On \text{ or } Off$ 

### Handling Incoming Calls & Alarms

- $\textcircled{m} (1 + \text{seconds}) \rightarrow \textcircled{r} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Calls$
- & Alarms
- **To select Voice call priority** Voice call  $\rightarrow$  Call priority or Notice a call
- **To select Video call priority** Video call  $\rightarrow$  Call priority of Notice a call
- To select S! Circle Talk priority

S! Circle Talk  $\rightarrow$  Call priority or Notice a call

To select Alarm priority

*Alarms* → *Alarm priority* or *Alarm notice* 

### etting Auto Power Off

 $\textcircled{\text{(i)}} (1 + \text{seconds}) \rightarrow \textcircled{\text{res}} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Auto$ 

### power off

To end TV after set duration

Auto power off  $\rightarrow$  Off, 10 min, 30 min, 60 min, or 120 min

To end TV when closed

Phone closing  $\rightarrow$  Call priority or Notice a call

### Starting Recording

 $\textcircled{\texttt{b}} (1 + \text{seconds}) \rightarrow \textcircled{\texttt{r}} \rightarrow \textit{Start recording} \rightarrow \boxdot (Save)$ 

6-15



### **Timer/Timer Recording**

**Entering Program Name** (1)  $\rightarrow$  Reservation list  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}$   $\rightarrow$  New  $\rightarrow$  $Manual \rightarrow$  Select Program field  $\rightarrow$  Enter program (1)  $\rightarrow$  Reservation list  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}$   $\rightarrow$  New  $\rightarrow$  $Manual \rightarrow$  Check Alarm field  $\textcircled{m} \rightarrow Reservation \ list \rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Highlight a$ reservation  $\rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Edit \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.6-10)$  $\textcircled{m} \rightarrow Reservation \ list \rightarrow \textcircled{m} \rightarrow Highlight a$ reservation  $\rightarrow$  *Delete* To delete a reservation Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes To delete multiple reservations  $Multiple \rightarrow$  Check reservations to delete  $\rightarrow \square$ (Delete)  $\rightarrow$  Yes To delete all reservations  $All \rightarrow$  Enter Phone Password  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Yes

6

**Digital TV** 

# **Camera & Imaging**

Mobile Camera	
Mobile Camera Precautions	7-2
Using Display as Viewfinder	7-3
Camera Mode	
Single Shot	
Capturing Options	
Multi Shot.	
Photo Combination	7-8
Capturing Still Images with Frame	7-9
Panorama Shot	
Video Mode	
Recording Video	7-11
Editing Images	7-12
Editing Still Images	7-12
Compositing Still Images	7-13
Create Flash <sup>®</sup>	7-14
Printing Still Images	7-15
Printing via Bluetooth <sup>®</sup>	7-15
Printing via USB	
Advanced Settings	
Capturing Still Images	7-16
Recording Videos	7-18
Editing Still Images	7-19



### **Mobile Camera**

Capture pictures (still images) or record videos. Capture still images in JPEG, or videos in 3GP format. Toggle Internal Camera and External Camera.





### **Mobile Camera Precautions**

- Use a dry soft cloth to remove debris from camera lens.
- Avoid camera shake; hold 820SC steady or place it on a stable surface and use Self-timer to prevent objectionable image blur.
- Do not expose 820SC to devices with static electricity at use of camera.
- Mobile Camera employs high precision technology, however, some pixels may seem brighter or darker than others.
- Leaving 820SC in a hot place for an extended period before image capture/save may affect image quality.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may affect color filter.
- The quality of images captured in *Panorama shot* mode may be lower than those captured with other modes.
- When battery is low, camera may be unavailable.

### Using Display as Viewfinder

Initial Viewfinder orientation changes with handset position. When 820SC is in Viewer Position, Viewfinder appears in Landscape; when in Open Position, it appears in Portrait. Moreover, switching 820SC Positions with Camera active changes orientation.

• This guide describes image capturing in Open Position, and video recording in Viewer Position



### Mode



- : Camera mode (Scene)
- Video mode

,	
D <b>080800</b> LLL	
● 0:00:07	4
13 15 10 12 Video Viewfinder	6
video viewinidei	6



- Recording time
   E : For S! Mail III : Normal
   Record sound
   Sound On N : Sound Off
   Elapsed recording time
- 10 Total data size (For S! Mail)/Total recording time (Normal)
- 15 Progress bar

### **Key Assignments in Viewer Position**

Use Camera with Touch Key or Side Keys in Viewer Position.



No.	Before Shot	After Shot
0	Open Menu, Select Menu Item	Open Menu, Select Menu Item
0	Switch Photo/Video	Send Image
8	Select Menu Item	Expand/Reduce Image
Shutter, Execute Menu Item		Execute Menu Item, Save Image
5 Exit Camera, Close Menu		Close Menu, Redo
6	Select Menu Item	Select Menu Item

### **Camera Mode**

Select image size in Camera mode; select Shooting mode to suit subject. In Camera mode, select from Normal or Scene mode. In Shooting mode, set Single shot, Multi-shot, Photo Combination, Panorama or Frame shot. Captured images are saved to *Pictures*. Insert Memory Card to save images to *Digital camera*. See available settings in each Camera mode below:

Camera	Camera External Camera		Internal Camera
Camera Mode	Normal	Scene	-
Image Orientation	Portrait/ Landscape <sup>*</sup>	Portrait/ Landscape <sup>*</sup>	Portrait
Multi-shot	Yes	No	Yes
Photo Combination <sup>**</sup>	Yes	No	No
Frame shot <sup>**</sup>	Yes	No	No
Panorama shot <sup>**</sup>	Yes	No	No
Auto focus	Yes	Yes	No
Macro	Yes	Yes	No

\* Portrait in Open Position; Landscape in Viewer Position

\*\* Landscape in both positions

• In Scene mode, Effect and Flash settings are unavailable.

### **Shooting Size**

Camera & Camera Mode		Shooting Size
Extern	nal Camera	
	Landscape	2M (1600 x 1200) 1.3M (1280 x 960) VGA (640 x 480) Standby (320 x 240)
	Portrait	2M (1200 x 1600) 1.3M (960 x 1280) VGA (480 x 640) Standby (240 x 320)
Internal Camera		Standby (240 x 320)

\* Complete Panorama images measure up to 550 x 2000 (Portrait) or 2400 x 400 (Landscape) pixels.

- When Memory Card is inserted and save location is set to *Digital camera*, 320 x 240 or 240 x 320 pixel images are automatically saved to *Memory card*.
- A still image captured in Landscape appears in Landscape when viewed in full screen.

### **Shooting Mode**

Shooting Mode	Description
Single shot	Capture single images, select size for purpose; attach images to S! Mail, save as Wallpaper, etc.
Multi-shot	Press shutter once to capture six or nine sequential images.
Photo Combination	Capture sequential images manually. Select Frame to automatically combine images into a composite image.
Frame shot	Capture a still image with Frame.
Panorama shot	Ideal for landscape. Capture up to six images to automatically composite into a single panoramic image.

### **Single Shot**



(2+ seconds)



Press (Photo) for Camera mode.
Adjust settings before capturing as required.

### Frame image in Viewfinder

• Use 🗖 or 🗖 to brighten or darken



image.

Camera & Imaging



Camera & Imaging



- Press halfway in focus. Press completely to capture.
  Alternatively press (ô) to capture.
- To redo, press .
- Use ① half press with Auto Focus. Frame turns green when image is in focus. Frame turns brown if image is not in focus. Available when *Auto focus* is set to *On*.

### **Shortcut Key Operations**

Press assigned key to change settings. Available shortcuts vary by mode or setting status.

Key	Item	Description
1.0	Mode	Normal, Scene
<u>2</u> %	Shooting mode	Single shot, Multi- shot (6 shots), Multi-shot (9 shots), Photo Combination, Frame shot, and Panorama shot
∃œr	Self-timer	Off, 3 seconds, 5 seconds, and 10 seconds
4 cm	Switch camera	External camera, Internal camera
05.0	Macro	On, Off
× ***	Flash	Auto, On, Off
	Quick view	Phone, Memory card, Digital camera
	Mode switch	_
🛓 / 🗟 / 🖥	Zoom*	—

Кеу	ltem	Description
•	Brightness	_
	Flash	Use 📩 to switch modes
E zz	Self-timer	Use 🖵 to switch modes
27	Macro	Use 🗖 to switch modes
	Screen display	Use 🗖 to switch modes

### Advanced

Advanced Settings B P.7-16

- Switching to Internal/External Camera
- Switching Camera Modes
- Switching Shooting Mode
- Setting Shooting Size
- Setting Macro
- Setting Flash
- Setting Face Link
- Setting Self-timer
- Setting White Balance
- Setting Effect (Color Tone)
- Viewing Captured Pictures
- Viewing Capturing Shortcut Key Assignments
- Entering File Name of Captured Still Image
- Enlarging Captured Still Image
- Deleting Images Displayed by Quick Play
- Playing Slide Show
- Viewing Quick Play Image Details

### **۲** Settings

- Show or hide Indicators (IPP.13-8)
- Activate or cancel Auto Focus (IPP.13-8)
- Activate or cancel Auto Save (IPP.13-8)
- Select Quality (IPP P.13-8)
- Set ISO ( P.13-8)
- Set Exposure metering (IPP.13-8)
- Set save location (IPP.13-8)
- Show or hide Guideline (IPP P.13-8)
- Set Shutter sound (IPP P.13-8)

### **Capturing Options**

### **Multi Shot**



• Press 🖾 (Photo) for Camera mode.



 $\mathbf{Y}_{r} \rightarrow \mathsf{Highlight} \ \mathbf{\Box} \rightarrow Multi$ shot  $\rightarrow \mathsf{Select}$  image count



• Adjust settings before capturing as required.



### Frame image in Viewfinder



- Press (), or (), or (), to enlarge or reduce image.
- Use or to brighten or darken image.

• To redo, press



• Auto Focus cannot be used for Multi Shot.



3

Press 
 / 
 / 
 , or 
 // 
 to enlarge or reduce image.

Select a frame  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (OK)

Menu

Ô

**动動**器が水の量

• Use - or - to brighten or darken image.

7-8





• Auto Focus cannot be used in Photo Combination.

 Capturing Still Images with Frame

 (2+ seconds)

 Image: State of the second sec



Select a frame → ■ (OK)

- Viewfinder appears in Landscape.
- Adjust settings before capturing as required.

### Frame image in Viewfinder



Press □/ □, or □/ to enlarge or reduce image.
Use □ or □ to brighten or darken image. \_\_\_\_\_



ice

7

Camera & Imaging



• In Frame shot mode, Auto Focus is unavailable.

**Panorama Shot** (2+ seconds) ◎▶\$\$\$\$ \$\$ \$\$ \$\$ (ô) Manu • Press 🖾 (Photo) for Camera mode.  $|\mathbf{Y}| \rightarrow \mathsf{Highlight} \square \rightarrow$ Panorama shot i 🖸 2000 👬 💥 🌾 🚫 ANTI Menu ſô

- Viewfinder appears in Landscape.
- Adjust settings before capturing as required.







- Capturing ends. Alternatively, capturing six images automatically ends capturing.
- To redo, press

### Create panoramic image automatically → ■ (Save)

- Depending on the number of images to
- Depending on the number of images to be captured, producing may take time.
- Auto Focus is not available in Panorama.
- Move 820SC slowly to capture panoramic image.
- Panorama is ideal for capturing landscapes. Stand at least ten meters from subject. If too close panoramic image creation may fail.
- Low light or high contrast may hinder panoramic image creation.

### Video Mode

Capture clips easily. Files are saved in 3GP format to *Videos* folder in Data Folder. When recording a video to attach to or insert into an S! Mail, set Recording time to *For S! Mail* (�P.7-18).

### **Recording Video**

 $\blacksquare \to Camera \to Record$ video



• Adjust settings before capturing as required.

# Frame a capturing object on Viewfinder



• Press )/ , or / d to enlarge or reduce image.





• Capturing ends. When recordable time has elapsed, recording automatically ends.



4

### **Shortcut Key Operations**

Press assigned key to change settings. Available shortcuts vary by mode or setting status.

Кеу	Item	Description
2 Å	Shooting mode	For S! Mail, Normal
n Str	Self-timer	Off, 3 seconds, 5 seconds, and 10 seconds
4 <sup>8</sup> / <sub>011</sub>	Switch camera	External camera, Internal camera
05 <u>8</u> 0	Record sound	Sound On, Sound Off
M	Switch Photo/ Video	_
<b>_</b> /@/ <b>@</b>	Zoom	_
•	Brightness	_
27	Flash	to switch modes
	Self-timer	to switch modes
₹ ₹	Macro	to switch modes
	Screen display	to switch modes

### Advanced

Advanced Settings P.7-18

- Switching to Internal/External Camera
- Setting Recording Time
- Setting Shooting Size
- Setting Macro
- Setting Flash
- Setting Self-timer
- Setting White Balance
- Setting Effect (Color Tone)
- Setting Sound Recording
- Viewing Recorded Video
- Viewing Recording Shortcut Key Assignments
- Viewing Recorded Video before Saving
- Entering File Name of Recorded Video

### **ペ** Settings

- Show or hide Indicators (IPP.13-8)
- Activate or cancel Auto Focus (IPP P.13-8)
- Select Quality (IPP P.13-8)
- Set save location (IPP.13-8)

### **Editing Images**

### **Editing Still Images**

Edit still images saved in Data Folder.









Camera & Imaging

7



### $\rightarrow$ Edit $\rightarrow$ Picture editor



### Edit image

### To set Effects on image

 $\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{x}_{!} \rightarrow \textit{Effects} \rightarrow \textit{Filter, Style, or} \\ \textit{Warp} \rightarrow \textit{Select an effect} \rightarrow \boxdot \\ (Done) \end{array}$ 

■ To add blur or correct red-eye  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Partial effects \rightarrow Partial$ blur or Redeye repair  $\rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow$ Use Menu to add blur or correct redeye  $\rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Done \rightarrow \boxed{\square}$  (Done) ■ To adjust an image  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Adjust \rightarrow Auto level}$ ,

Brightness, Contrast, or Colour → Adjust image →  $\square$  (Done)

### ■ To resize an image $\textcircled{r} \rightarrow Transform \rightarrow Resize \rightarrow$ Select a setting $\rightarrow$ Enter Width or Height (only for Customize) $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Done) ■ To rotate an image $\fbox{r} \rightarrow Transform \rightarrow Rotate \rightarrow 90^{\circ}$

 $\begin{array}{l} \mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Transform \rightarrow Rotate \rightarrow 90^{\circ}\\ clockwise \text{ or } 90^{\circ} anticlockwise \rightarrow \\ \hline \end{tabular} \tag{Done} \end{array}$ 

### To flip an image

 $\fbox{P} \rightarrow Transform \rightarrow Flip \rightarrow Vertically \text{ or } Horizontally \rightarrow \boxdot$  (Done)

■ (Save) → Enter file name

### **Compositing Still Images**

Use still images saved in Data Folder to composite image. This function renders one of two still images as line art, merging it with the other to create a stamped photograph.

## $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Select$ a folder











### Select a still image to merge to

### To select from Data Folder

- Open → Select a file
- With Memory Card inserted, select a file from *Pictures* or *Digital camera* folder.

### To capture an image









I (Save) → Enter file name

### Create Flash®

Use a still image in Data Folder to create  ${\sf Flash}^{\textcircled{R}}$  image. Created  ${\sf Flash}^{\textcircled{R}}$  image is saved to  ${\sf Flash}^{\textcircled{R}}$  folder in Data Folder.

 $\rightarrow$  Camera  $\rightarrow$  Dynamic effect



• With Memory Card inserted, select a file from *Pictures* or *Digital camera* folder.

### 2 Select a file to import into Flash<sup>®</sup> → Create Flash<sup>®</sup>

### To add frame to image

- Image: Frame) → Select a frame
- To add clock to image
  - (Watch)  $\rightarrow$  Select a clock  $\rightarrow \square$ (Done)
- To restore currently edited image

```
≤ (Reset) → Yes
```



### $\square$ (Save) $\rightarrow$ Enter file name

- To delete frame or clock added to image, select a file and then [1] (Frame) or [5] (Watch), and press [2] (Delete)
- Up to 5 icons or 3 balloons can be added.
- To create Flash<sup>®</sup> using an image in Data Folder, highlight an image in Data Folder → x→ *Edit* → *Dynamic effect* and perform the same operations.

### **Advanced**

**\ Advanced Settings** IS P.7-19

### **Printing Still Images**

Print still images saved on 820SC by connecting a printer via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> or USB. For more information about printer operations and paper setting, see printer User Manual.

### Printing via Bluetooth®

- Print images with Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> printer.
- Pair Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> printer beforehand.

**()** 

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Select$  a file location
- 2 Highlight data to print → x<sup>i</sup> → Print via
- 3
- Bluetooth → Check files to print →  $\boxdot$  (Print)

### Select receiving device

• If no device is registered, search and register new device.



### Set items as required

To set paper size

Paper size → Select an item

To set the number of copies

Number of copies  $\rightarrow$  Enter the number of copies (1 to 99)  $\rightarrow$   $\square$  (OK)

### ■ To set the number of pages to print per sheet

- Page format  $\rightarrow$  Select an item
- When selecting *Duplicate*, select *Pages per sheet* and select a setting (1 to 16 up).

To set whether to print the date or not

- Print date → Select an item
- To set whether to print a frame or not

 $Frame \rightarrow$  Select an item

To set print quality

*Print quality*  $\rightarrow$  Select an item





### **Printing via USB**



 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Select$  a file location

Highlight data to print  $\rightarrow \mathbf{Y}'$  $\rightarrow Print via$ 



 $USB \rightarrow Check files to print \rightarrow \Box (Print)$ 



- 5
- Set items as required

To set paper size

Paper size  $\rightarrow$  Select an item

To set the number of copies

Number of copies  $\rightarrow$  Enter the number of copies (1 to 99)  $\rightarrow$   $\square$  (OK)

### To set the number of pages to print per sheet

- *Page format*  $\rightarrow$  Select an item
- When selecting *Duplicate*, select *Pages per sheet* and select a setting (1 to 16 up).

To set whether to print the date or not

*Print date*  $\rightarrow$  Select an item

To set whether to print a frame or not

Frame → Select an item

### To set print quality

Print quality  $\rightarrow$  Select an item

■ (Preview) → ■ (Print)

### **\** Advanced Settings

### **Capturing Still Images**

Switching to Internal/External Camera

(2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow \mathbf{Y} \rightarrow \mathsf{Highlight}$   $\bigcirc \rightarrow \mathsf{External \ camera \ or \ Internal \ camera$ 

### Switching Camera Mode:

(2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$  **Y**  $\rightarrow$  Highlight  $\bigcirc \rightarrow$  *Normal* or *Scene* 

### Switching Shooting Mode

(①) (2+ seconds) → 💌 → Highlight 🔤 → Single shot, Multi-shot, Photo Combination, Frame shot, or Panorama shot

### Setting Shooting Size

(2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{\tilde{r}}_{2}$   $\rightarrow$  Highlight  $\mathbf{\tilde{z}}_{240}$   $\rightarrow$  Select an item

 For details on available items, see "Shooting Size" (●P.7-5).

### Setting Macro

 $\textcircled{\textbf{a}} (2 + \text{seconds}) \rightarrow \fbox{\textbf{r}} \rightarrow \text{Highlight} \textcircled{\textbf{w}} \rightarrow On \text{ or } Off$ 

### Setting Flash

 $\textcircled{\textbf{0}} (2+ \text{ seconds}) \rightarrow \textcircled{\textbf{r}} \rightarrow \text{Highlight} \overleftrightarrow{\textbf{Auto}}, \\ On, \text{ or } Off$ 

### Setting Face Link

(**b**)  $(2 + \text{seconds}) \rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{r}} \rightarrow \text{Highlight} \boxed{\square} \rightarrow On \text{ or } Off$ 

### Setting Self-time

(2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$   $\textcircled{r} \rightarrow$  Highlight  $\textcircled{o} \rightarrow Off, 3$ seconds, 5 seconds, or 10 seconds

### Setting White Balance

(2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow$  Highlight  $\mathbf{W} \rightarrow Auto,$ Daylight, Incandescent, Fluorescent, or Cloudy

### Setting Effect (Color Tone)

(**o**)  $(2 + \text{seconds}) \rightarrow \mathbb{F} \rightarrow \text{Highlight} \land \rightarrow None, Sepia, Negative, Black & White, Aqua, or Green$ 

### Viewing Captured Pictures

(2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{\overline{x'}} \rightarrow$  Highlight  $\mathbf{\overline{cs}} \rightarrow$ 

Pictures or Digital camera → Select a file

Digital camera is available if Memory Card is inserted.

### Viewing Capturing Shortcut Key Assignments

(2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow$  Highlight  $\mathbf{x}''$ 

### Entering File Name of Captured Still Image

(**D**) (2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$  Frame a capturing object on Viewfinder  $\rightarrow$  Capture an image  $\rightarrow$  **Second Second Seco** 

& Imaging

### Setting Captured Still Image as Wallpaper

(c) (2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$  Frame a capturing object on Viewfinder  $\rightarrow$  Capture an image  $\rightarrow \fbox \rightarrow Set as \rightarrow$ *Wallpaper*  $\rightarrow$  Use (c) (Rotate) to adjust position as required  $\rightarrow$  Use (c) or (c) to adjust size as required  $\rightarrow$ (set)

### Setting Captured Still Image to Phonebook Entry

(
 (2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$  Frame a capturing object on Viewfinder  $\rightarrow$  Capture an image  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow$  Set as  $\rightarrow$ Caller ID  $\rightarrow$  Search Phonebook and select an entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21)  $\rightarrow$  ( $\blacksquare$ ) (Set)

### Enlarging Captured Still Image

- (**D**) (2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$  Frame a capturing object on Viewfinder  $\rightarrow$  Capture an image  $\rightarrow$  (**x**)  $\rightarrow$  Zoom • Press (**b**) or (**c**) to enlarge or reduce image.
- Press to change position.

### Sending Captured Still Images

(2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$  Frame a capturing object on Viewfinder  $\rightarrow$  Capture an image  $\rightarrow \boxtimes$  (Send)

### To send via message

- Via message  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.4-3 Sending S! Mail  $\bigcirc$ )
- A captured still image is saved to Data Folder when exceeding 300 KB in size. Resize the image to attach to a message. (
  P.4-4 Attaching Files)

### To send via Bluetooth®

*Via bluetooth*  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.12-7 Sending (2))

### To send via infrared

Via infrared (€P.12-3)

### Viewing Still Images by Quick Play

(2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow \square$ ...  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\frown$  to view images

- Press 🔳 (Zoom) to enlarge still image.
- When Memory Card is inserted, press **D**. and select *Phone, Memory card*, or *Digital camera* to view images.

### Sending Still Images Displayed by Quick Play

- (2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow \square_{++}^{D} \rightarrow Use$  to view
- images → 🖾 (Send)
- To send via message
  - *Via message* → ( $\bigcirc$  P.4-3 Sending S! Mail  $\bigcirc$ )
- To send via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Via bluetooth  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.12-7 Sending  $\bigcirc$ )
- To send via infrared Via infrared (●P.12-3)
- When Memory Card is inserted, press **D**. and select *Phone, Memory card*, or *Digital camera* to view images.

### Deleting Images Displayed by Quick Play

- (2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$   $\square_{++}^{D}$   $\rightarrow$  Use  $\blacksquare$  to view
- images  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Yes$
- When Memory Card is inserted, press **D**., and select *Phone, Memory card*, or *Digital camera* to view images.

### Setting Quick Play Image as Wallpaper

- (a)  $(2 + \text{seconds}) \rightarrow \square$   $\rightarrow \square$  to view images  $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow \text{Set } as \rightarrow Wallpaper \rightarrow \square$  to view (Rotate) to adjust position as required  $\rightarrow \square$   $\square$  (Set)
- When Memory Card is inserted, press D.F. and select *Phone, Memory card*, or *Digital camera* to view an image.

### Setting Quick Play Image to Phonebook Entry

(2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$   $\square$ ...  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\square$  to view images  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$   $\rightarrow$  Set as  $\rightarrow$  Caller ID  $\rightarrow$  Search

- Phonebook and select an entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21)  $\rightarrow$
- (Set)
- When Memory Card is inserted, press D. and select *Phone, Memory card*, or *Digital camera* to view images.

### Playing Slide Show

- (2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$   $\square_{\mathbb{R}^{n}}$   $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y}$   $\rightarrow$  *Slide Show*
- Press 🖾 (Stop) during playback to cancel Slide Show.
- When Memory Card is inserted, press ... and select *Phone*, *Memory card*, or *Digital camera*.

### Enlarging Still Images Displayed by Quick Play

(2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$   $\square_{...}^{...}$   $\rightarrow$  Use  $\square$  to view

images → 🔳 (Zoom)

- Press 🗟 or 🖻 to enlarge or reduce.
- Press 🛃 to change position.
- When Memory Card is inserted, press D.F. and then select *Phone, Memory card*, or *Digital camera* to view images.

### Viewing Quick Play Image Details

(2+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$   $\square_{\sim}$   $\rightarrow$  Use  $\square$  to view

images  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Details$ 

• When Memory Card is inserted, press . and select *Phone, Memory card*, or *Digital camera* to view images.

### **Recording Videos**

### Switching to Internal/External Camera



Highlight  $\textcircled{O} \rightarrow External camera or Internal$ 

#### camera

### etting Recording Tim

$$\blacksquare \to Camera \to Record \ video \to \mathbf{Y}_{!} -$$

ighlight 
$$\blacksquare \rightarrow For S! Mail or Normal$$

- When *Normal* is set, up to an hour recording is available.
- When For S! Mail is set, shooting size of 320 x 240 is unavailable. Quality is unselectable and automatically set to Economy.

### Setting Shooting Size

■ → Camera → Record video →  $\boxed{x}$  → Highlight  $\boxed{44}$  → 320 x 240 → 176 x 144 → 128 x 96

• When recording time is set to *For S! Mail*, shooting size, *320 x 240* is unavailable.

### Setting Macro

 $\blacksquare \to Camera \to Record \ video \to \textcircled{r} \to Highlight \And \to On \ or \ Off$ 

### Setting Flash

$$\blacksquare \to Camera \to Record \ video \to \textcircled{r} \to$$
  
Highlight 
$$\overleftarrow{x} \to Auto, \ On, \ or \ Off$$

### Setting Self-timer

■ → *Camera* → *Record video* → 😰 → Highlight 🔯 → *Off, 3 seconds, 5 seconds,* or *10 seconds* 

### Setting White Balance

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Camera \rightarrow Record \ video \rightarrow \checkmark \rightarrow$ Highlight  $\blacksquare \Rightarrow Auto, Davlight, Incandescent,$ 

Fluorescent, or Cloudy

### Setting Effect (Color Tone)

■ → Camera → Record video →  $\boxed{\mathbf{r}}$  → Highlight  $\boxed{\mathbb{R}}$  → None, Sepia, Negative, Black & White, Aqua, of Green

### Setting Sound Recording

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Camera \rightarrow Record \ video \rightarrow \textcircled{r} \rightarrow$ Highlight  $\textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow Sound \ On \ or \ Sound \ Off$ 

### Viewing Recorded Video



• Open Videos.

### /iewing Recording Shortcut Key Assignments

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Camera \rightarrow Record \ video \rightarrow \checkmark \rightarrow$  Highlight

### 'iewing Recorded Video before Saving

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Camera \rightarrow Record \ video \rightarrow Record \ a \ video$  $\rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Play$ 

Camera



### Entering File Name of Recorded Video ightarrow Camera ightarrow Record video ightarrow Record a video<math> ightarrow Record Video ightarrow Record Video ightarrow Camera ightarrow Record video ightarrow Frame arecording object on Viewfinder ightarrow O ightarrow ( ightarrow Frame arecording object on Viewfinder ightarrow O ightarrow ( ightarrow Prame arecording object on Viewfinder ightarrow O ightarrow ( ightarrow Prame arecording object on Viewfinder ightarrow O ightarrow ( ightarrow Prame arecording object on Viewfinder ightarrow O ightarrow ( ightarrow Prame aVia message ightarrow ( ightarrow P.12-3)Editing Video right after Recording<math> ightarrow Camera ightarrow Video editor ightarrow Frame a

 $\begin{array}{c} \blacksquare \rightarrow Camera \rightarrow Video \ editor \rightarrow Frame \ a \\ recording \ object \ on \ Viewfinder \rightarrow \textcircled{0} \ or \ \blacksquare \ (\textcircled{0}) \\ \rightarrow \textcircled{0} \ or \ \blacksquare \ (\textcircled{0}) \rightarrow Edit \ video \rightarrow (\textcircled{P.8-9} \\ Editing \ Videos \ \textcircled{0}) \end{array}$ 

### **Editing Still Images**

### Cropping and Editing Still Images

■ → Data Folder → Select a file location → Highlight a file → ■ (View) → 😰 → Edit → Picture editor → 😨 → Crop ■ To adjust cropping area Use 🔄 to adjust area to crop → 😰 → Done → 🖾 (Done) → ■ (Save) → Enter file name ■ To adjust size to crop  $\boxed{\basel{eq:selectrop} + Size → Use \basel{eq:selectrop} + Use \basel{eq:selectrop} to adjust size to crop →$  $<math>\boxed{\basel{eq:selectrop} + Size → Use \basel{eq:selectrop} + Use \basel{eq:selectrop} +$ 

### **Solution** The second state $\mathbf{x}_{1} \rightarrow Shape \rightarrow Use$ **For** to switch cropping

shape  $\rightarrow \boxed{\mathbb{R}} \rightarrow Done \rightarrow \boxed{\mathbb{R}}$  (Done)  $\rightarrow$ 

- Indect Description (Sector Sector Sector
- To adjust cropping area after changing size or shape, press **Y** to select *Move* and adjust.

### Adding Frame to Still Images

■ → Data Folder → Select a file location → Highlight a file → ■ (View) →  $\textcircled{v} \to Edit \to$ Picture editor →  $\fbox{v} \to Insert \to Frames \to Use$ ● to highlight a frame → 🖾 (Done) → ■ (Save) → Enter file name

### nserting Image to a Still Image

### To move position of inserted image

- Use rightarrow to move inserted image ightarrow (Done) ightarrow(Save) ightarrow Enter file name
- To adjust size of inserted image

 $\fbox \rightarrow Resize \rightarrow Use \fbox to adjust size of inserted text \rightarrow \boxdot (Done) \rightarrow \blacksquare (Save) \rightarrow Enter file name$ 

#### **To rotate inserted image** $rac{rac}{r} \rightarrow Rotate \rightarrow Use$ **to rotate inserted** $rac{r}{r} \rightarrow Rotate \rightarrow Use$

image  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Done)  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Save)  $\rightarrow$  Enter file name

- To move inserted image after changing size, etc., press **Y**? to select *Move* and change position.
- With Memory Card inserted, select *Image* and select files from *Pictures* and *Digital camera* folders.

### Adding Clipart to Still Images

- → Data Folder → Select a file location → Highlight a file → ■ (View) → 😨 → Edit → Picture editor → 😨 → Insert → Cliparts → Select a clipart → ■ (Select) ■ To move position of added clipart Use 🚰 to move added clipart → 🖾 (Done) → ■ (Save) → Enter file name ■ To adjust size of added clipart  $\boxed{$^{\text{Y}} \rightarrow Resize \rightarrow \text{Use}}$  to adjust size of added clipart → 🖾 (Done) → ■ (Save) → Enter file name ■ To rotate added clipart
- ★ *Rotate* → Use 
   ★ to rotate added clipart
   ★ (Done) → 
   ★ (Save) → Enter file name
   To move the position of added clipart after changing size, etc., press 
   ★ to select *Move* and change position.

**Solution Solution Solution** 

• To move added emotion clipart after changing size, etc., press 🐨 to select *Move* and change position.

### Adding Text to Still Images

 $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Data Folder  $\rightarrow$  Select a file location  $\rightarrow$ Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (View)  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$   $\rightarrow$  *Edit*  $\rightarrow$  *Picture*  $editor \rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Insert \rightarrow Text \rightarrow Enter text$ To move position of added text Use  $\blacksquare$  to move text  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Done)  $\rightarrow$ (Save)  $\rightarrow$  Enter file name To adjust size of added text  $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Resize \rightarrow Use \square$  to adjust text size  $\rightarrow$  $\square$  (Done)  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Save)  $\rightarrow$  Enter file name To rotate added text  $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Rotate \rightarrow Use$   $\mathbf{P} \rightarrow \mathbf{V}$  to rotate added text  $\rightarrow \square$  (Done)  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save)  $\rightarrow$  Enter file name To adjust the font size of added text  $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Font \ size \rightarrow Large, \ Normal, \ or \ Small$  $\rightarrow \square$  (Done)  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Save)  $\rightarrow$  Enter file name To adjust the color of added text  $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Colour \rightarrow Use$   $\mathbf{x}'$  to adjust color of added text  $\rightarrow \square$  (Done)  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Save)  $\rightarrow$  Enter file name

- Text can be added to still images of 320 x 240 or above.
- To move the position of the added text after changing the size, etc., press refer to select *Move* and change the position.

### Changing an Image before Merging



# Camera & Imaging

7 Camera & Imaging

### Swapping Base Image and Image Merged as Line Art

■ → Data Folder → Select a file location → Highlight a file →  $\mathbf{v}$  → Edit → mPostcard → (Add) → Add a still image to merge to →  $\mathbf{v}$  → Swap image → (♥P.7-13 Compositing Still Images ()

### Editing Composite Still Images

 $\bigcirc \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow$ Highlight a file  $\rightarrow \fbox \rightarrow Edit \rightarrow mPostcard \rightarrow \blacksquare$ (Add)  $\rightarrow$  Select an image  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Merge)  $\rightarrow \checkmark$ (Edit)

### To adjust position of line art

 $\hline x 
ightarrow Move → Use \hline x 
ightarrow to move → 🖾 (Done)$ → 🖾 (Save) → Enter file nameTo resize line art

 $\begin{array}{c} \fbox{r} \rightarrow \textit{Resize} \rightarrow \textsf{Use} \ \fbox{l} \ \texttt{to adjust size} \rightarrow \boxdot\\ (\textsf{Done}) \rightarrow \boxdot (\textsf{Save}) \rightarrow \textsf{Enter file name} \end{array}$ 

### To rotate line art

 $color \rightarrow \boxdot$  (Done)  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Save)  $\rightarrow$  Enter file name

### To adjust line art shadow

### Saving and Sending Composite Still Image

■ → Data Folder → Select a file location → Highlight a file → 😰 → Edit → mPostcard → ■ (Add) → Add a still image to merge to → ■ (Merge) → ■ (S & S) ■ To send via message

*Via message*  $\rightarrow$  Enter file name  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.4-3 Sending S! Mail  $\bigcirc$ )

To send via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>

*Via bluetooth*  $\rightarrow$  Enter file name  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.12-7 Sending (2))

To send via infrared

*Via infrared*  $\rightarrow$  Enter file name  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.12-3)

### Adding Icon to Image

- → Camera → Dynamic effect → Select a file → (icon) → Select an icon ■ To adjust size of added icon  $\square → Size → Use \square$  to adjust size →  $\square$ (Done) → Use  $\square$  to adjust position →  $\square$ (Done) →  $\square$  (Save) → Enter file name ■ To rotate added icon  $\square → Rotate → Use \square$  to adjust rotation
  - angle  $\rightarrow \boxtimes$  (Done)  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\frown$  to adjust position
  - $\rightarrow \square$  (Done)  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save)  $\rightarrow$  Enter file name
- To reverse added icon

 $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Reverse \rightarrow Use$  to adjust angle  $\rightarrow$ 

- $\square (Done) \rightarrow Use \square to adjust position \rightarrow \square$
- (Done)  $\rightarrow \bowtie$  (Save)  $\rightarrow$  Enter file name

### To make added icon transparent

- $\boxdot$  → *Transparency* → Use  $\boxdot$  to adjust degree of transparency →  $\boxdot$  (Done) → Use  $\boxdot$ to adjust position →  $\boxdot$  (Done) →  $\boxdot$  (Save) → Enter file name
- With Memory Card inserted, select a file from *Pictures* or *Digital camera* folder.
- Add up to five icons.
- To delete an icon added while editing, select 
   (Icon) and press 
   (Delete). When an icon is added, the added icon is highlighted. Press 
   (Delete) to delete it. When multiple icons are added, use 
   to highlight an icon to delete → 
   (Delete) → 
   (Done).

### Adding Created Balloons to Images



 $\square$  → Font color → Use  $\square$  to adjust text color →  $\square$  (Done) → Use  $\square$  to adjust position →  $\square$ (Done) →  $\square$  (Save) → Enter file name

- To add an action to text  $\mathbf{x}_{\prime} \rightarrow Action text \rightarrow Use$   $\mathbf{r}_{\mathbf{x}}$  to select an action for text  $\rightarrow \square$  (Done)  $\rightarrow$  Use 4 to adjust position  $\rightarrow$  $\square$  (Done)  $\rightarrow$   $\square$  (Save)  $\rightarrow$  Enter file name To reverse text  $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Reverse \rightarrow Use$   $\mathbf{x}'$  to adjust angle of the text  $\rightarrow \square$  (Done)  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\blacksquare$  to adjust position  $\rightarrow$  $\square$  (Done)  $\rightarrow$   $\square$  (Save)  $\rightarrow$  Enter file name To edit text  $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Change \ text \rightarrow Enter \ text \rightarrow Use \mathbf{x}'$  to adjust position  $\rightarrow \square$  (Done)  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save)  $\rightarrow$ Enter file name · With Memory Card inserted, select a file from Pictures or Digital camera folder. • To add self-made balloon, before pressing 🖾 (Save), select 🤤 (Balloon) and press 🔳 (Insert). Add up to three balloons.
- To delete balloons added while editing, select (Balloon) and press 
   (Delete). When a balloon is added, the added balloon is highlighted. Press 
   (Delete) to delete it. When multiple balloons are added ,use 
   to highlight a balloon to delete →
- added ,use  $\blacktriangleright$  to highlight a balloon to delete  $\boxdot$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Done).

- Adding Preinstalled Balloons to Images  $\blacksquare \rightarrow Camera \rightarrow Dynamic effect \rightarrow$  Select a file  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Balloon)  $\rightarrow Ready-made \rightarrow$  Select a balloon  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\blacksquare$  to adjust position  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Done)  $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Save)  $\rightarrow$  Enter file name = With Memory Card inserted, select a file from *Pictures* or *Digital camera* folder. = To add preinstalled balloon, before pressing  $\boxdot$ (Save), press  $\blacksquare$  (Balloon) and press  $\blacksquare$  (Insert). = Add up to three balloons. = To delete balloons added while editing, select  $\blacksquare$
- (Balloon) and press 🖾 (Delete). When a balloon is added, the added balloon is highlighted and press 🖾 (Delete) to delete it. When multiple balloons are
- added , use  $\frown$  to highlight a balloon to delete  $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Done).

# **Media Player & S! Applications**

Media Player	8-2
Music & Video	8-2
Playable File Formats	8-3
Media Player Music Window	8-3
Media Player Video Window	8-3
Playing Music.	8-4
Playing Video	8-6
Using Playlist	8-8
Creating Playlist	8-8
Playing Playlist	8-8
Editing Videos	
S! Applications	8-10
Network S! Appli	8-10
Activating S! Appli	8-10
Exiting, Pausing, & Resuming S! Appli	8-10
Downloading S! Appli	8-11
Advanced Settings	
Music Playback	8-11
Video Playback	8-13
Playlist	8-15
Editing Video	8-15
S! Appli	8-16



### Media Player

Play sound/video files in Data Folder. Or download video content and play it in Streaming.

 Use Stereo Earphone Microphone with Media Player. Insert Connector as shown below. Remove Connector to use Speaker. (If Stereo Earphone Microphone is disconnected in Manner mode, Speaker is muted).



 Use Stereo Earphone Microphone to accept Voice Calls. When handset rings/vibrates, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to answer the call.  From Music or Video menu, select *Download music* or *Download videos*, to download files via Yahoo! Keitai.

### Music & Video

### **Downloading Music & Video**

Access Yahoo! Keitai and download music or video.



### $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player$

### Download music or video

### To download music

 $Music \rightarrow All music \rightarrow Download$ music or Music search

• Select *Music search* to access *Music search* and search by genre or artist name.

### To download video

 $Movie \rightarrow All videos \rightarrow Download$ videos

### Saving PC Media Files to Memory Card



Insert Memory Card into 820SC

- Press  $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow \bowtie$  (Memory) to confirm folders are created.
- Remove Memory Card from 820SC and insert into PC
- 3 Save PC Media Files to the specified Memory Card Folder
- Save files to the following folders by type: Music file: PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Music PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Sounds & Ringtones

Video file: PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Videos

• After saving files, insert Memory Card into 820SC and load saved files to play the files.
# **Playable File Formats**

Player	File (Extension)			
Music	MPEG4 Audio (mp4, m4a, aac, or 3gp (sound only)) SoftBank Music Contents (smc)			
Video	MPEG4, H.263, or H.264 (mp4, 3gp)			

 To play a music file in a format other than above, select it from *Ring songs* · *tones*. Even compatible files must be saved in *Ring songs* · *tones* to play.

### Note

• Video files exceeding 320 x 240 in resolution cannot be played.

# Media Player Music Window



- Volume level
- 2 Title (File name when title is unknown)
- 3 Artist's name
- 4 File no./Total number of files
- 6 Playing status : Play/Pause/Stop
- 6 Elapsed playing time
- Repeat section
- 8 Repeat mode
  - CAD : Repeat all
  - $\ \ \ \Box \ \ ): Off$
  - C1⊃ : One
  - ⊐⊂: Shuffle
- 9 Progress bar
- 10 Total playing time
- Sound effect

# Media Player Video Window



- Volume level
- Artist's name and title (File name when the video title information is unknown)
- 3 Playing status : Play/Pause/Stop
- 4 Elapsed playing time
- 5 File no./Total number of files
- 6 Progress bar
- 7 Total playing time
- 8 Repeat mode/Repeat section/Playback speed

# **Playing Music**



→ Media Player → Music



# 🔈 Play a file

# To play most recently played file

# Last played

 While playing, Now Playing appears and Music playback window is displayed.

# To select from all files

All music  $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$  [ $\blacksquare$ ] (Play)

# To play Playlist

- $\begin{array}{l} Playlist \rightarrow \mathsf{Highlight} \ a \ \mathsf{Playlist} \rightarrow \\ \boxdot \ (\mathsf{Play}) \end{array}$
- To select from list of recently played files

*Recent music* → Highlight a file → (Play)

# To select from list of often played files

- Most played music  $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$  **(**Play)
- To select from list of Artists

Artists  $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$  **(**Play)

■ To select from list of Albums  $Albums \rightarrow Highlight a file \rightarrow \square$ (Play)

# To select from list of Genres

 $Genres \rightarrow \text{Highlight a file} \rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Play)

- To end playback and return to list, press 🖾 (Stop) and then The area in the number of the second second
- During playback, press 🖸 for the next file. Press 🖸 to restart the file. Press 🖸 at the beginning for the previous file.
- To play a specified section repeatedly, during playback, press 🐨 at the start point and 🐨 at the end point. Press 🐨 again to cancel.
- When Memory Card is inserted, Memory Card files appear in *All music* list with

- When Player is activated via \*\* or Main Menu, press \*\* or \*\* to hide Player window while it plays. To use Player press \*\* to show Player window. In Standby, press \*\* to end Player. End confirmation appears, choose *Yes*. When activated via Switch Bar, hiding Player may end it.
- If a call arrives while a file is playing, playback pauses and 820SC rings. After call ends, paused Player window returns. For BGM, playback resumes automatically after call ends.
- If Alarm time arrives while a file is playing, playback pauses, Alarm sounds and indicator appears. Press any key to stop Alarm, then another key to clear the indicator. For BGM, playback resumes.

# **Music Folder**

Folder structure is as follows.

Folder	Description
Last played/	Last played or currently played
Now playing	file
All music	Up to 9999 Music files
Playlist	View playable file on <i>Music</i> in created folders
Recent music	100 recently played files (Most recent first)
Most played	100 most frequently played files
music	(Most frequent first)
Artist	All Music files by Artist
Album	All Music files by Artist Album
Genre	All Music files by Artist Genre

• Memory Card files may take longer to load.

● Show/hide in Music menu (●P.13-7).

### Note

• Changing or deleting *All music* files affects files in *Music* or *Ring songs* • *tones*.

# **Shortcut Key Operations**

Press the assigned key to perform operations. Available shortcuts vary by playback status or file type.

Кеу	Description		
	Play/Pause		
	Next music		
•	Previous music		
L	Volume up		
7	Volume down		
Ø	Stop		
¥!	Menu		
XP XP	Repeat section		
1.0	Repeat mode		
<b>2</b> <sup>400</sup>	Sound effect		
B	Time search		

### Advanced

### Advanced Settings IP.8-11

- Adding Files to Playlist
- Sending Files
- Sorting Files
- Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key
- Deleting Files
- Renaming File
- Protecting File
- Viewing File Details
- Changing Order of Files in Playlist.
- Renaming Playlist
- Deleting Playlist
- Playing from Specified Point
- Selecting Phone or A/V Headset during Playback Pause to Resume Playback
- Switching to Phone Speaker during Playback
- Switching to Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Headphones during Playback
- Connecting to Web Link
- Viewing Music Player Shortcut Key Assignments
- Viewing Lyric

### **ペ** Settings

- Set Repeat mode (IPP P.13-7)
- Set Equalizer (IPP P.13-7)
- Adjust Tone volume level (IPP P.13-7)
- Set Music sub folders (IPP P.13-7)

# **Playing Video**



 $\blacksquare \to Media \ Player \to Movie$ 



2

# Play a file

**To play most recently played file** *Last played* 

## To select from all files

All videos → Highlight a file → (Play)

## To play Playlist

 $\begin{array}{c} Playlist \rightarrow \text{Highlight a Playlist} \rightarrow \\ \boxdot & (\text{Play}) \end{array}$ 

### To select from list of recently played files

*Recent video* → Highlight a file → (Play)

To select from list often played files Most played video  $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Play)

- When Memory Card is inserted, Memory Card files appear in *All videos* list with

# **Movie Folder**

Folder structure is as follows.

Folder	Description
Last played	Play most recently played file
All videos	View all playable file on <i>Movie</i> up to 9999
Playlist	View playable file on <i>Movie</i> in created folders
Recent video	View up to 100 recently played file (Most recently played file appears first)
Most played video	View up to 100 frequently played file (Most frequently played file appears first)

<sup>•</sup> Set folder show/hide in Video menu (OP.13-7).

### Note

If deleting or changing setting of files in *All videos* folder, files in *Movie* are also deleted or changed.

S! Applications

# **Shortcut Key Operations**

Press the assigned key to perform operations. Available shortcuts vary by playback status or file type.

### In Normal Screen View

Key	Description		
	Play/Pause		
Þ	Next video		
Ţ	Previous video		
Ь	Volume up		
F	Volume down		
Ŋ	Stop		
¥?	Menu		
1 th	Repeat section		
1.0	Repeat mode		
<b>2</b> <sup>400</sup>	Full screen view		
∃ <sup>a</sup>	Time search		
4 <sup>2</sup>	Resolution		
<u>الم</u>	Capture frame		
Б <sub>мю</sub>	Play faster		
7 marks	Play slower		

## In Full Screen View

Key	Description
	Play/Pause
ľ	Volume down
Ţ	Volume up
	Next video
-	Previous video
1 th	Repeat section
1.0	Repeat mode
<b>2</b> <sup>400</sup>	Normal screen view
05 <u>%</u> 0	Capture frame
Б <sub>мю</sub>	Play faster
7 marks	Play slower

## Advanced

- Advanced Settings I P.8-13
- Searching File by Text
- Adding Files to Playlist
- Sending Files
- Sorting Files
- Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key
- Deleting Files
- Renaming File
- Protecting File to Restrict Editing File Name and Deleting File
- Viewing File Details
- Changing Order of Files in Playlist

- Renaming Playlist
- Deleting Playlist
- Playing Video in Full Screen View
- Editing Video
- Changing Resolution
- Playing from Specified Point
- Selecting Phone or A/V Headset during Playback Pause to Resume Playback
- Switching to Phone Speaker during Playback
- Switching to Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Headphones during Playback
- Capturing Still Image from Video and Saving to Pictures
- Connecting to Web Link
- Changing Playback Speed
- Viewing Video Player Shortcut Key Assignments

### **۲** Settings

- Set Repeat mode (IPP P.13-7)
- Adjust Tone volume level (IPP P.13-7)
- Set Backlight (IPP P.13-7)
- Set Video sub folders (IPP P.13-7)
- Show or hide Video thumbnails (IPP P.13-7)
- Access or ignore linked information (IPP P.13-7)

# **Using Playlist**

# **Creating Playlist**

Create up to 20 Playlists, containing up to 100 files each.

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow$ *Music* or *Movie*  $\rightarrow$  *Playlist*  $\rightarrow$  $|\mathbf{Y}'| \rightarrow Create \ playlist$ 

Meni



Cancel **Enter Playlist name A** 0

Select Menu







4

Check files to save  $\rightarrow \square$ (Save)

# **Playing Playlist** $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow$

Music or Movie  $\rightarrow$  Playlist



Highlight a Playlist → 🖾 (Play)

• Playlist cannot be played if included file has been deleted, or file is added from Memory Card and Memory Card is removed. Insert the Memory Card and load file to play.

# Advanced

Advanced Settings P.8-15

Creating Playlist Including All Tracks in Existing Playlist

# **Editing Videos**

Edit Video files in Data Folder. Edit only copy unprotected MPEG (3gp) files.





Highlight a file  $\rightarrow \mathbf{Y} \rightarrow$ *Video editor* 





### To cut video

- $\checkmark$   $\leftarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Play) as required

    $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Start) at the start point to cut

    $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (End) at the end point to cut

    $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (End) at the end point to cut

    $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (End) at the end point to cut

    $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (End) at the end point to cut

    $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Reset) and select

   start and end points again  $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$  (Done)

   To cut from the beginning of video, select
   *Cut* and then  $\boxdot$  (Start).

   **To merge multiple videos**  $\checkmark$ 
   $\checkmark$   $\rightarrow$  *Merge*  $\rightarrow$ 
   $\checkmark$  *Merge*  $\rightarrow$   $\checkmark$ 
   $\checkmark$  *Merge*  $\rightarrow$   $\checkmark$ 
   $\square$  (Merge)
    $\bigcirc$
- To replace sound with other video sound



- $\rightarrow$  Select file  $\rightarrow \square$  (Done)
- To delete only video sound

 $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Audio \ Erase \rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Erase)

■ To delete only video  $\boxed{x'} \rightarrow Video \ Erase \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$  (Erase) ■ To play back in slow motion  $\boxed{x'} \rightarrow Slow \ Motion \rightarrow 1/2X, 1/$   $3X, \text{ or } 1/4X \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$  (Execute) ■ To play back in fast motion  $\boxed{x'} \rightarrow Fast \ Motion \rightarrow 2X, 3X, \text{ or}$   $4X \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$  (Execute) ■ (Save)  $\rightarrow$  Enter file name

### Merge up to 9 files.

- Press (Preview) and then (Play) to view edited video. Press (we to return to the editing window.
- Video files exceeding 320 x 240 in resolution cannot be edited.

### Advanced

- Advanced Settings IP.8-15
- Adding Files to Merge Video
- Deleting Files to Merge
- Changing File Order to Merge

# **S!** Applications

Download S! Appli including games, 3D images, and information via Mobile sites.

- Use only SoftBank handset-compatible S! Appli.
- To download S! Appli, separate subscription is required. Communication fees apply.
- For details on Communication fees, contact Customer Service ( P.14-30).

# Network S! Appli

Some S! Applis require network connection. Enjoy network gaming or access real-time information like stock prices.

- A separate subscription is required to download S! Appli or to use Network S! Appli.
- Communication fees apply to use Network S! Appli.





 $\blacksquare \rightarrow S! Appli \rightarrow S! Appli$ 



- Highlight S! Appli to activate  $\rightarrow | \blacksquare |$  (Start)
- Activate S! Appli; 🙉 appears at top of Display.

Exiting, Pausing, & Resuming S! Appli

# Exiting & Pausing S! Appli



• When S! Appli is paused, paused status is saved and Standby returns. 🖓 appears at top of Display.

# **Resuming paused S! Appli**



While pausing S! Appli, in Standby,  $\blacksquare \rightarrow S! Appli$ 



🛛 🖂 (Resume)

# Advanced

- Advanced Settings IP.8-16
- Viewing S! Appli in Memory Card
- Moving S! Appli in Phone to Memory Card
- Locking/Unlocking S! Appli
- Viewing Details of S! Appli
- Deleting S! Appli

### **۲** Settings

- Adjust volume (IPP P.13-9)
- Adjust Backlight setting (IPP P.13-9)
- Activate or cancel Vibration while S! Appli is in use (IPP P.13-9)
- Sort S! Appli (IPP P.13-9)
- Restore S! Appli settings to defaults (IPP P.13-9)
- Confirm Java Root Certificate (IPP P.13-9)

# Downloading S! Appli

$$\blacksquare \rightarrow S! Appli \rightarrow S! Appli ibrary$$



2 *Do* 3 Acc

# Download S! Appli

- Access site for S! Appli to
- download → Select S! Appli
- When S! Appli details appears, press
   (OK).

# When a confirmation appears, press 🔳 (OK)

**Exit** 

• To activate S! Appli, select Launch.

# **N** Advanced Settings

# **Music Playback**

### earching File by Text

$\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Music \rightarrow All \ music \rightarrow$
$\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Search \ files \rightarrow by \ Text \rightarrow Check \ Title \ or$
Artist $\rightarrow$ Select Search field $\rightarrow$ Enter title or artist
name → 🖻 (Search)

### Searching File by Voice

•  $\rightarrow$  Media Player  $\rightarrow$  Music  $\rightarrow$  All music  $\rightarrow$ **x**  $\rightarrow$  Search files  $\rightarrow$  by Voice  $\rightarrow$  Speak title

# Adding Files to Playlist

■ → Media Player → Music → Select a folder ■ To add a file

Highlight file  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Add$  to playlist  $\rightarrow$ Selected  $\rightarrow$  Select Playlist

To add multiple files

[x] → Add to playlist → Multiple → Check files to add → [x] (Save) → Select Playlist

### Sending File

- → Media Player → Music → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  $x \to Send$ ■ To send via message
- Via message  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$ P.4-3 Sending S! Mail  $\bigcirc$ )
- To send via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Via bluetooth  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.12-7 Sending (2)
- To send via infrared Via infrared (●P.12-3)

### Sorting Files

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Music \rightarrow All \ music \rightarrow \mathbf{Y}$  $\rightarrow Sort \ by \rightarrow Title, \ Date, \ or \ Artist$ 

### Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Music \rightarrow Select \ a \ folder$ 

 $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\mathbf{Y}}$   $\rightarrow$  Download Content key

### Deleting Files

■ → Media Player → Music → Select a folder ■ To delete a file Highlight a file →  $\mathbf{x}$  → Delete → Selected →

### Yes

### To delete multiple files

 $\fbox{P} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Multiple \rightarrow Check files to delete \rightarrow \boxdot (Delete) \rightarrow Yes$ 

### To delete all files

 $\mathbf{Y} \to Delete \to All \to Yes$ 

• To delete all files in *All music* folder, enter Phone Password.

### Renaming File

■ → Media Player → Music → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  $\mathbf{Y}$  → Rename → Enter file name

## Protecting File

■ → Media Player → Music → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  $\mathbf{x}_{l}$  → Lock or Unlock

### Viewing File Details

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Music \rightarrow Select \ a \ folder$
- $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow$  Details
- Alternatively, during playback, press r and select Details.

### Changing Order of Files in Playlist.

■ → Media Player → Music → Playlist → Select Playlist → Highlight a file →  $\textcircled{r} \rightarrow Move$ track in playlist → Use  $\fbox{}$  to highlight destination →  $\fbox{}$  (OK)

### Renaming Playlist

■ → Media Player → Music → Playlist → Highlight a Playlist →  $\mathbf{x}$  → Rename → Enter Playlist name

### Deleting Playlis

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Music \rightarrow Playlist$
- To delete a list

Highlight Playlist  $\rightarrow \mathbf{x} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Selected$  $\rightarrow Yes$ 

- To delete all lists
  - $\mathbf{x}$ <sup>*t*</sup> → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password → **(**OK) → *Yes*

### Playing from Specified Poir

- → Media Player → Music → Select a folder
- $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Play)  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow$  *Time*

 $search \rightarrow \text{Enter time} \rightarrow \square$  (Play)

• Some copy protected data may not be played with *Time search*.

# Selecting Phone or A/V Headset during Playback Pause to Resume Playback

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Music \rightarrow Select \ a \ folder$
- $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Play)  $\rightarrow$   $\bowtie$  (Stop)  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y}'$
- $\rightarrow$  Play via  $\rightarrow$  Phone or A/V headset
- When A/V headset is set, select a device to connect.
   When no device is registered, search and register new device.

### Switching to Phone Speaker during Playback

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media Player \rightarrow Music \rightarrow Select a folder$
- $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Play)  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}_{r}$   $\rightarrow$  *Transfer* to Phone

# Switching to Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Headphones during Playback

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Music \rightarrow Select \ a \ folder$
- $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Play)  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y}$   $\rightarrow$  *Transfer* to A/V headset  $\rightarrow$  Select device
- When no device is registered, search and register new device.
- If setting *Transfer to A/V headset*, volume adjustment on 820SC is unavailable. Adjust on the headphones.
- Playback with monaural headphones is unavailable.
- Some files may not be played.

Media Player & S! Applications

- → Media Player → Music → Select a folder
- $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Play)  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$   $\rightarrow$  *Connect* web link  $\rightarrow$  Yes
- Appears in Music playback window for files with connection to web link

■ → Media Player → Music → Select a folder  $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Play)  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}'$   $\rightarrow$  Shortcut

- $\rightarrow$  Media Player  $\rightarrow$  Music  $\rightarrow$  Select a folder
- $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Play)  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$   $\rightarrow$  View lyric
- 🗊 appears on Music playback window for files with available lyric.

- 27
- Last played file plays from stopped point.

# Video Playback

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Movie \rightarrow All \ videos \rightarrow$
- $\mathbf{x}$   $\rightarrow$  Search files  $\rightarrow$  by Text  $\rightarrow$  Check Title or
- Artist  $\rightarrow$  Select Search field  $\rightarrow$  Enter title or artist name  $\rightarrow \square$  (Search)

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Movie \rightarrow All \ videos \rightarrow$
- $\mathbf{x}_{\prime} \rightarrow Search files \rightarrow bv Voice \rightarrow Speak title$

- → Media Player → Movie → Select a folder
- To add a file

```
Highlight a file \rightarrow \mathbf{x}_{1} \rightarrow Add to playlist \rightarrow
Selected → Select Playlist
```

- To add multiple files
  - $\mathbf{x}_{?} \rightarrow Add$  to playlist  $\rightarrow Multiple \rightarrow Check$ files to add  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save)  $\rightarrow$  Select Playlist

# Sending Files

- $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Media Player  $\rightarrow$  Movie  $\rightarrow$  Select a folder
- $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow$  Send
- To send via message
- *Via message*  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.4-3 Sending S! Mail (2))
- To send via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>

*Via bluetooth*  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.12-7 Sending (2))

To send via infrared

Via infrared (OP.12-3)

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Movie \rightarrow All \ videos \rightarrow$  $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Sort \ by \rightarrow Title, \ Date, \ or \ Author$ 



- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Movie \rightarrow Select a folder$
- To delete a file Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Selected \rightarrow$ Yes
- To delete multiple files  $\mathbf{x}_{r} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Multiple \rightarrow Check files to$ delete  $\rightarrow \square$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow Yes$ To delete all files
  - $|\mathbf{x}| \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow All \rightarrow Yes$

 To delete all files in All videos folder, enter Phone Password.

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Movie \rightarrow Select a folder$  $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}_{?}$   $\rightarrow$  Rename  $\rightarrow$  Enter file name

Protecting File to Restrict Editing File Name and

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Movie \rightarrow Select a folder$  $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$   $\rightarrow$  Lock or Unlock

### Viewing File Details

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Movie \rightarrow Select a \ folder$  $\rightarrow Highlight a \ file \rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}_{1}} \rightarrow Details$ 

• Alternatively, during playback, press  $\mathbf{v} \rightarrow Details$ .

### Changing Order of Files in Playlist

■ → Media Player → Movie → Playlist → Select Playlist → Highlight a file →  $\boxed{m}$  → Move track in playlist → Use  $\boxed{m}$  to highlight destination →  $\boxed{m}$ (OK)

## **Renaming Playlist**

■ → Media Player → Movie → Playlist → Highlight Playlist →  $\boxed{\mathbf{v}}$  → Rename → Enter Playlist name

### **Deleting Playlist**

■ → Media Player → Movie → Playlist ■ To delete a list Highlight Playlist → 🐨 → Delete → Selected → Yes ■ To delete all lists  $\boxed{x}$  → Delete → All → Enter Phone Password →  $\boxed{(O(X) \rightarrow Yes)}$ 

### Playing Video in Full Screen View

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Movie \rightarrow \text{Select a folder} \rightarrow$ Highlight a file  $\rightarrow \blacksquare (\text{Play}) \rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Full \ screen \ view$ 

### **Editing Video**

■ → Media Player → Movie → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  $\mathbf{x}$  → Video editor → (�P.8-

9 Editing Videos (3)

### Changing Resolutior

 $\begin{array}{c} \blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Movie \rightarrow All \ videos \rightarrow \\ \mbox{Highlight a file } \rightarrow \blacksquare \ (Play) \rightarrow \fbox \rightarrow Resolution \\ \rightarrow 240 \ * 180, \ 176 \ * 144, \ or \ 128 \ * 96 \end{array}$ 

## Playing from Specified Point

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Movie \rightarrow Select \ a \ folder$
- $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Play)  $\rightarrow$   $\textcircled{r}' \rightarrow$  *Time*
- $search \rightarrow \text{Enter time} \rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Play)
- Some copy protected files may not play via *Time* search.

# Selecting Phone or A/V Headset during Playback Pause to Resume Playback

■ → Media Player → Movie → Select a folder

→ Highlight a file → 
$$\blacksquare$$
 (Play) → 🖾 (Stop) → 😰

- $\rightarrow$  Play via  $\rightarrow$  Phone or A/V headset
- When *A/V headset* is set, select a device to connect. When no device is registered, search and register new device.

### Switching to Phone Speaker during Playbac

- → Media Player → Movie → Select a folder
- $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Play)  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}_{?}$   $\rightarrow$  *Transfer*



# Switching to $\mathsf{Bluetooth}^{{I\!\!R}}$ Headphones during $\mathsf{Playback}$

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Movie \rightarrow Select \ a \ folder$
- $\rightarrow$  Highlight a file  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Play)  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow$  *Transfer* to A/V headset  $\rightarrow$  Select device
- If none is registered, search and register new device.
- If setting *Transfer to A/V headset*, volume adjustment on 820SC is unavailable. Adjust on headphones.
- Playback with monaural headphones is unavailable.
- Some files may not play.

### Capturing Still Image from Video and Saving to Pictures

- → Media Player → Movie → Select a folder → Highlight a file → ■ (Play) →  $\mathbf{x}^{*}$  → Capture frame → ■ (Save)
- Images cannot be captured from copy protected video.

# Connecting to Web Link

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Movie \rightarrow Select \ a \ folder$
- → Highlight a file →  $\blacksquare$  (Play) →  $\mathbf{x}$  → Connect web link
- 💽 appears in Video playback window for files with web link.

Media Player &

S! Applications

Changing Playback Speed

■ → Media Player → Movie → Select a folder → Highlight a file → ■ (Play) →  $\mathbf{x}$  → Playback speed → Very slow, Slow, Normal, Fast, or Very fast

• Sound is muted while changing speed.

### Viewing Video Player Shortcut Key Assignments

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Movie \rightarrow Select a \ folder$  $\rightarrow Highlight a \ file \rightarrow \blacksquare \ (Play) \rightarrow \textcircled{r} \rightarrow Shortcut$ 

# Playlist

Creating Playlist Including All Tracks in Existing Playlist

To create music Playlist

To create video Playlist

# **Editing Video**

## Adding Files to Merge Video

In Merge window of video,  $\fbox \rightarrow Add \rightarrow$  Check file to add  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Done)

### Deleting Files to Merge

In Merge window of video, use 🖂 to highlight file

 $\rightarrow \fbox{} \Rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Yes$ 

### Changing File Order to Merge

In Merge window of video,  $\textcircled{Pr} \rightarrow Change \ order \rightarrow$ Use  $\fbox{Pr}$  to highlight file to move  $\rightarrow$   $\fbox{OK}$ 

# S! Appli

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow S! Appli \rightarrow S! Appli \ library \rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}'} \rightarrow$ Memory card

• Press 🔽 (Phone) to go back to list saved in phone.

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow S! Appli \rightarrow S! Appli \ library \rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}'} \rightarrow$ Move

To move an S! Appli

Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes

### To move multiple S! Applis

Multiple  $\rightarrow$  Check S! Applis to move  $\rightarrow \square$ (Move)  $\rightarrow$  Yes

### To move all S! Applis

 $All \rightarrow Yes$ 

 To move a file set for another function or locked to Memory Card, a confirmation appears. Choose Yes to move the file. Choose No to move only unlocked files or files without set functions.

- $\rightarrow$  S! Appli  $\rightarrow$  S! Appli library  $\rightarrow$  Highlight an
- S! Appli  $\rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Lock$  or Unlock
- Appears for locked S! Appli.
- When S! Appli is locked, confirmation appears.

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow S! Appli \rightarrow S! Appli \ library \rightarrow Highlight an$
- S! Appli  $\rightarrow$   $\boxed{\mathbf{x}'}$   $\rightarrow$  Details
- · View Name, Description, Profiles, Certification, Size, Record Size, Version, and Vendor,

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow S! Appli \rightarrow S! Appli \ library \rightarrow Highlight an$ S! Appli  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow$  Permission  $\rightarrow$  Net Access  $\rightarrow$ Always allow, Confirm at Initial Request, Confirm Every Time, or Not allow
- Select Confirm Every Time to show confirmation every time you attempt network access.

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow S! Appli \rightarrow S! Appli library \rightarrow Highlight an$ S! Appli  $\rightarrow$  **Y**  $\rightarrow$  Permission  $\rightarrow$  Application Autoinvocation  $\rightarrow$  Always allow. Confirm at Initial Request, Confirm Every Time, or Not allow
- Select Confirm Every Time to show confirmation every time Autoinvocation is activated.

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow S! Appli \rightarrow S! Appli librarv \rightarrow Highlight an$ S! Appli  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y}$   $\rightarrow$  Permission  $\rightarrow$  Local

connectivity → Always allow, Confirm at Initial Request, Confirm Every Time, or Not allow

 Select Confirm Every Time to show confirmation every time you attempt device connection.

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow S! Appli \rightarrow S! Appli library \rightarrow Highlight an$ S! Appli  $\rightarrow$  **Y**  $\rightarrow$  Permission  $\rightarrow$  Multimedia recording  $\rightarrow$  Always allow. Confirm at Initial Request. or Not allow

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow S! Appli \rightarrow S! Appli \ library \rightarrow Highlight an$ S! Appli  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}'$   $\rightarrow$  Permission  $\rightarrow$  Read User data Access → Always allow, Confirm at Initial Request, Confirm Every Time, or Not allow
- Select Confirm Every Time to show confirmation every time you try to access user data.

### Writing & Deleting User Data such as Phonebook

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow S! Appli \rightarrow S! Appli library \rightarrow Highlight an$ S! Appli  $\rightarrow$  **Y**  $\rightarrow$  *Permission*  $\rightarrow$  *Write/delete* User data Access  $\rightarrow$  Always allow. Confirm at Initial Request, Confirm Every Time, or Not allow

• Select Confirm Every Time to show confirmation every time you try writing or deleting.

### Setting Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Connection

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow S! Appli \rightarrow S! Appli \ library \rightarrow \mathbf{x}' \rightarrow \mathbf{x}'$ 

Permission  $\rightarrow$  Bluetooth connectivity  $\rightarrow$  Always allow, Confirm at Initial Request, or Not allow

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow S! Appli \rightarrow S! Appli librarv \rightarrow Highlight an$ S! Appli  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Permission \rightarrow Reset \rightarrow Yes$ 

### Deleting S! Appli

■ → S! Appli → S! Appli library ■ To delete an S! Appli Highlight S! Appli to delete → 🐨 → Delete → Selected → Yes ■ To delete multiple S! Applis M → Delete → Multiple → Check S! Appli to delete → 🖾 (Delete) → Yes ■ To delete all S! Applis  $\fbox{M}$  → Delete → All → Enter Phone Password →  $\fbox{M}$  (OK) → Yes • To delete a file set for another function or locked to Memory Card, a confirmation appears. Choose Yes to delete the file. Choose No to move only unlocked files or files without set functions.

Media Player & S! Applications

# **Handy Extras**

Alarms	9-2
Setting Alarms	9-2
Saving Calendar Entries	9-3
Opening Calendar	9-3
Saving Schedule	9-3
Viewing Schedule	9-4
Calculator	9-5
Currency or Unit Converter	9-5
Converting Currencies	9-5
Converting Units	9-6
World Clock	9-7
Viewing World Clock	9-7
Selecting Areas	9-7
Notepad	
Adding Notepad	9-7
Viewing Notepad	9-7
Tasks	
Saving Tasks	9-8
Viewing Tasks	9-8
Voice Recorder	9-9
Voice Recorder Window	9-9
Recording Sound	9-9
Playing Sound	9-10
Voice Recognition	9-10
Open Main Menu by Voice	9-10
Name Dialing	9-11
Digit Dialing	9-11



Bar Code Reader	9-11
Scanning Bar Code and QR Code	9-11
Using Barcode Files	9-12
Creating QR Code	9-13
Checking Scanned Barcode	9-14
Stopwatch	9-14
Dictionary	9-15
File Viewer	9-15
Using File Viewer	9-15
BookSurfing <sup>®</sup> (Japanese)	9-16
Browsing Electronic Comics	
Advanced Settings	
Alarm	9-17
Calendar	9-18
Currency/Unit Conversion	9-20
World Clock	9-20
Notepad	9-21
Tasks	9-21
Voice Recorder	9-22
Bar Code Reader	9-23
File Viewer	9-24

# Alarms

Save up to five Alarms. Use Alarm activation to activate or cancel alarm settings. Set alarms to repeat on specific days of the week or everyday.

# **Setting Alarms**

Example: Setting Alarm time



Select from *Alarm1* to *Alarm5* 





# Enter Alarm time





- During a call or while dialing (*Connecting*... appears), a tone sounds and an indicator appears. While dialing (*Dialling*... appears), an indicator appears. When *Alerts on call* on *System sounds* is unchecked, only indicator appears during a call or connection. Press any key twice to clear indicator. When Snooze is set to other than *Off*, press r(end) and then press (OK).
- When Alarm is set, 🔔 appears in Standby.
- If multiple alarms are set for the same time, first one set sounds first. If Schedule or Tasks alarm is set for the same time as Alarm (*Tools*), Alarm sounds first.
- At Alarm Time, tone sounds and indicator appears. Handset vibrates if Vibration is not *Off*. Press any key to stop Alarm. Press again to clear indicator.
- When Manner mode is active, setting in For manner mode (●P.9-17) applies.
- If Camera or Voice Recorder is active at Alarm Time, Alarm sounds upon operation termination.

### Advanced

- **1.** Advanced Settings ( P.9-17
- Setting Volume or Vibration in Manner Mode

# **Saving Calendar Entries**

# **Opening Calendar**

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow Calendar$ 

# **Viewing Calendar**

Select from three view modes. Select a date in Monthly view or Weekly view to open Daily view.

Calendar							
۲	20	007	7 December			ł	
S	М	Τ	W	Т	F	S	
						1	
2	З	4	5	6	7	8	
9	10	11	12	13	14	15	
16	17	18	19	20	21	22	
23	24	25	26	27	28	29	
30	31						
New		Se	ele	ct	N	len	ι

☐ : Highlighted position Light blue: Today<sup>\*</sup> Blue: Saturday Red: Holiday/Sunday \* Only weekdays appear in light blue. Saturday or Sunday/Holidays appear in blue or red.

(Blue): Schedule registered

Monthly View

Calendar							
ء	00	7 C	lec	emt	ber		ŧ
	S	М	Τ	W	T	F	S
୰☆₿₽	16	17	18	19	20	21	22
08:00							
10:00							
12:00							
14:00							
16:00							
New	1	Se	le	ct		Me	enu
Weekly View							

Calendar	🗐 : Schedule
Thu. Dec. 20	📆: Schedule (No category)
Lunch 11:00 - 13:00	E: Schedule (Appointment)
11:00 - 13:00	듺: Schedule (Meeting)
	: Schedule (Business)
	強: Schedule (Holiday)
	🚖 : Schedule (Anniversary)
New Select Menu	避 : Schedule (Birthday)
Daily View	": Schedule (Phone call)
	Schedule (Date)

Schedule (Travel)
 Schedule

(Miscellaneous)

🔁 : Holidav

Alarm set

S : Repetition set

 To change Weekly view window for previous/next week, press ★ in (# ∓), or highlight Year/ Month field and press .

# **Saving Schedule**

Save up to 200 events including Tasks. Example: Saving Title, Start date & time.

1				• '	То	ol	s –	•	0	Ca.	leı	nd	ar
			Ca	len	dar								
	۲	20	007	Dec	emb	er							
	S	М	Т	W	Т	F	S						
							1						
	2	3	4	5	6	7	8						
	9	10	11	12	13	14	15						
	16	17	18	19	20	21	22						
	23	24	25	26	27	28	29						
	30	_											
	New		S	ele	ct	N	lenu						
2			Ne	w	)								
	Tit	le		ł	Ab		0/30						
	Can	cel		OK		M	lenu						

9-3





# Highlight Start date & time fields → Enter Start date



• In Calendar, place cursor on target date before Step 2, to open Start date or End date field.

# **Viewing Schedule**



 $\rightarrow$  Tools  $\rightarrow$  Calendar



- Enter digit of the day to view
- → Enter year and month

	(	Cale	enda	ar	
	Th	u. (	Dec.	20	
1.					
	11:0	0 -	13	:00	
Ne	W	Se	lect	t	Menu

# Select a schedule

• To check the status of Calendar items registered, press x in Calendar or Schedule list, and select Memory status to view the registered number of Schedule and Task.

### Advanced Settings P.9-18

- Switching View Mode
- Opening a Specific Date
- Viewing Schedule by Category
- Sending Schedule
- Deleting Schedule
- Viewing Secret Schedule
- Checking Missed Alarm Event
- Viewing Calendar Memory Status
- Sending Schedule as vFile
- Saving Schedule as vFile
- Printing Schedule via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>

Handy Extras

# Calculator

Perform arithmetic operations up to 13 digits.



# **Currency or Unit Converter**

Convert various currencies or units of measure.

Con	verting Currencies
1	$\blacksquare \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow Converter \rightarrow Currency$
	Converter Currency JUPY UPY (* )
2	Rate Select Select Original currency field → Select currency Converter Urrency USD
	101/

Select Revers



Highlight Original currency value field → Enter value



# Select Target currency field → Select currency

	onverte	er
Currency		
USD		
150		
EUR		
118.082	55	
*		
Rate	Select	Reverse

5 View result in Converted currency value field

• To toggle the original currency and target currency, press 😒 (Reverse).

# **Converting Units**



 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow Converter \rightarrow Length, Weight, Volume,$ 

Area, or Temperature



Select Original unit field → Select currency





Highlight Original unit value field → Enter value



• To enter a decimal point, press 🗱

Select Target unit field → Select unit

C	onverter
Length	
inch	
3.5	
CM	
8.89	
× .	
Clear	Select Reverse

5

View result in Converted value field

- To toggle original and target unit, press **Y** (Reverse).
- To enter/delete "-" when converting temperature, press [#].
- To erase value, press 🖾 (Clear).

# Advanced

Advanced Settings IP9-20

Adding Currency Unit

# **World Clock**

See current time in world's major cities.

# **Viewing World Clock**

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow World \ clock$ 



# **Selecting Areas**

Save a second time zone to see the time in World clock.







## Advanced

**1.** Advanced Settings 🐼 P.9-20

# Notepad

Add up to 20 memos. Memos can be added even during calls (
P.3-24, P.3-26).

# **Adding Notepad**





# $<\!\!Add new\!\!> \rightarrow$ Enter text



# $\blacksquare \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow Notepad \rightarrow$ $\blacksquare (View)$

### Advanced

### Advanced Settings I P.9-21

- Deleting Notepad
- Sending Notepad
- Viewing Notepad Memory Status

# Tasks

Save up to 200 Tasks and Schedule and manage by list.

# Saving Tasks

Example: Saving Title, Due date & time







Highlight Due date & time field → Enter date and time







• In Tasks, press 🔁 to toggle All tasks, Completed tasks, Uncompleted tasks, and Expired tasks.

# Marking a Task as Completed



• To unmark a Task, select Uncompleted.

9

Handy Extras

### Advanced

### Advanced Settings D.9-21

- Saving Task
- Sending Tasks as vFile
- Sorting Tasks
- Opening Task for a Specific Date
- Deleting Tasks
- Saving Tasks as vFile
- Viewing Secret Schedule
- Viewing Missed Alarm Event
- Printing Tasks via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>
- Viewing Task Item Status

# **Voice Recorder**

Record up to 60 minutes; activate from Tools, or via Menu in Data Folder, Create Message window or during a call.

# **Voice Recorder Window**

Use Softkeys and Multi Selector operations to control Voice Recorder.



- Elapsed time
- Recordable time (recording)/Playback time (playback)
- Oulti Selector operations

# **Recording Sound**

Recorded sound is saved to *Ring sounds* · *tones* in Data Folder.





2



Recording ends. When recordable time has elapsed, recording automatically ends.
 Press (a) (Pause) to pause recording.

To quickly confirm the recorded content, press 
(Play). Press 
(Pause) again to pause playback.
To start the next recording, press 
and then 
(Record).

# **Playing Sound**

Play a sound file saved in Data Folder.

 $1 \quad \blacksquare \to Tools \to Voice$  recorder





Highlight a sound file → ■ (Play)

# Advanced

Advanced Settings 🐼 P.9-22

- Recording Continuously
- Sending Recorded Sound File
- Sending Recorded Sound File
- Editing Recorded Sound File Name
- Protecting Recorded Sound File
- Viewing Recorded Sound File Details

# **Voice Recognition**

Navigate 820SC by voice.

- Starting Voice recognition with Manner mode active, shows confirmation to cancel Manner mode. Choose Yes to activate Voice recognition.
- If recognition fails, retry prompt starts. Failing recognition three times automatically end Voice recognition.

# **Open Main Menu by Voice**



Voice Recognition
1 Menu
2 Name dialing
3 Digit dialing
Recognizing…
Select

• Voice prompt starts. Use 🔽 (Vol.) to adjust volume by 🗖.

**2** M

# Menu → Speak a menu item

• After item list appears, speak an item.

# Name Dialing

Search Phonebook and dial by voice.



• Voice prompt starts. Use 🔽 (Vol.) to adjust volume by



Name dialing  $\rightarrow$  Speak a name



- Recognizes up to 16 syllables of saved reading.
- Choose from selectable alternatives as required.



```
Speak Yes
```

# **Digit Dialing**



recognition



• Voice prompt starts. Use x (Vol.) to adjust volume by

number



- Speak 10 or 11 digit number without interruption.
- Choose from recognition alternatives as required.





*Digit dialing*  $\rightarrow$  Speak a



# Speak Yes

# **Bar Code Reader**

Use Camera to scan printed barcodes or use barcode images acquired from websites, etc.

# Scanning Bar Code and QR Code

Bar Code Reader automatically determines and scans Bar codes (JAN code) and QR Codes. Use scan results for handset operations such as calling.



| ■ | → Tools → Bar code reader  $\rightarrow$  Scan barcode



# 2

# Use Display to frame barcode

- ► 🔳 (Scan)
- If scan fails, press
   to refocus and try again. Camera continuously refocuses automatically during scanning until the code is scanned or scan canceled.
- Some barcodes may be invalid.
- Scan may fail if barcode is not clear.
- Indoors, scan may fail if handset shadows barcode.
- Scan may fail when capturing multiple barcodes.
- JAN codes are one-dimensional codes made up of combinations of vertical bars of varying widths and spaces. 820SC is not compatible other 1D codes (e.g., ITF code, Code39, or Codabar/NW-7).
- QR Code is two-dimensional code with information in matrix.
- Hold handset approximately ten centimeters away from barcode. If it does not scan, move 820SC slowly to adjust the distance and press to fix focus.
- To adjust brightness, press

- To cancel scanning, press 🛐 (Cancel).
- To save the scanned result, press ☐ (Save). Check the saved barcode in *Scanned results* (●P.9-14).
- To scan split barcode data, choose *Yes* after scanned and repeat scanning.
- Split barcode data cannot be displayed or saved unless all split barcode data are scanned.
- When "MEMORY" or "MAILTO:" appears in scanned result, items for Phonebook or Message and the contents are displayed. Press (Select) to enter the items in a new Phonebook enter or S! Mail. Texts that can be entered at once are highlighted in gray (if the text contains illegal character, the texts after the character are not highlighted in gray).
- Use QR Codes for text only. 820SC cannot scan image or music file QR Codes.

# **Using Barcode Files**

Use a barcode file saved in Data Folder.





• With Memory Card inserted, select a file from *Pictures* or *Digital camera* folder.



- For split barcode, once one portion is scanned, the rest is automatically recognized and scanned. If file name or saved directory of a split barcode has been changed, select unrecognized part to scan.
- Barcode with changed file size may not scan.
- If barcode is unrecognizable, a message appears.

9

Handy Extras

# **Creating QR Code**

Use Phonebook or enter text to create QR Code.

- A single QR Code can encompass up to 211 alphanumerics or 105 Japanese characters.
- When volume of information is large, split QR Code automatically appears (Up to 16 QR Codes).
- Created QR Code is saved in *Pictures* in Data Folder. Check the saved QR Code in Data Folder (OP.9-12).

# **Creating QR Code from Phonebook**

Create a QR Code from a saved phone number.

1 ■ → Tools → Bar code reader → Create QR code





# *Phonebook* → Select an entry ( $\bigcirc$ P.2-21)



# Select a number



QR Code Confirmation Window



- Created QR Code contains Last name, Reading, Phone number, E-mail address, Address, and Memo. Other items will not be included.
- Press (Send) in QR Code confirmation window to create S! Mail with the created QR Code attached.

# **Creating Text QR Code**

Enter text and create QR Code.







# *Text input* $\rightarrow$ Enter text



QR Code Confirmation Window

3 🔳 (Save)

● In QR Code confirmation window, press 🖾 (Send) to create S! Mail and attach QR Code.

Check the saved scanned result.



Select a file

• Scanned result too large to open does not appear. Some files cannot be opened.

### Advanced

Advanced Settings P.9-23

- Viewing Scanned Barcode Data
- Viewing Bar Code Reader Help
- Specifying Saving Location of Created QR Code

# **Stopwatch**

Use 820SC as a stopwatch; record up to 10 lap times and total time.





• While Stopwatch is running, press 🔳 (Lap) to mark a lap.

# Dictionary

Look up words in English/Japanese dictionaries.

1	$\blacksquare \rightarrow Tools -$	→ Dictionary
	Dictionary	
	1 English dictio	
	2 Japanese diction	
	Select	



English dictionary or

*Japanese dictionary*  $\rightarrow$  Enter a word

Dictionary
🐼 tel
telecommunication
telegram
telegraph
telephone
telephone number
telescope
televise
Select



Select a target word

# **File Viewer**

# **Using File Viewer**

Select Normal view or Full screen view. In either view, Menu and shortcut (Key operations) are available to control Display.

Ya 🖪 1580000
Samsung820SC
01/02
Samsung 820SC
Annual Contraction of Contraction
< 🕸 Menu
Normal View



Full Screen View

# ■ → Data Folder









- Open PDF, XLS, DOC, PPT, or TXT files saved in Data Folder. Select an image file saved in Data Folder and File Viewer is activated automatically.
- To scroll pages, press
- While File Viewer is active, Switch Bar (€P.2-3) is not available.
- Files with up to approximately 10 MB can be browsed. Some file with less than 10 MB may not be browsed.

### Note

- If a document includes many pages or complicated designs, all pages of the document may not appear properly.
- A file in any language other than Japanese or English may not appear properly.

# **Shortcut Key Operations**

Press the assigned key to perform operations.

Кеу	Description
	Zoom in
66	Zoom out
<b>5</b> %	Move to the first page
4 de 1	Move to the previous page
15 Jaco	Rotate 90 degrees clockwise or cancel
<b>Б</b> <sup>№</sup>	Move to the next page
8 (%)	Move to the last page
×	Select Full screen view or Normal view

### Advanced

- **\Advanced Settings** P.9-24
- Switching Between Full Screen View and Normal View
- Zoom In/Out Browser Screen
- Changing Display Mode for File Width or Size
- Going to Pages
- Capturing Images

- Rotating File 90 Degrees Clockwise
- Searching String within Page
- Sending Files
- Editing File Name
- Protecting File
- Viewing File Details
- Deleting Files
- Viewing Shortcut Key Assignments

# BookSurfing<sup>®</sup> (Japanese)

Download and view e-books, comics, photobooks (CCF files) saved in *Books*. Enlarge/reduce images, scroll page, browse images with sound/vibration effects.

To browse CCF files, acquire Content Key. Content Key is not required to browse 820SC pre-installed.

# **Browsing Electronic Comics**



 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Entertainment \rightarrow BookSurfing^{\mathbb{R}}$ 

• See BookSurfing<sup>®</sup> help menu for subsequent steps.

 After changing phone models, move CCF files via Memory Card. Re-download Content Key to browse those files. Note that some contents may require re- downloading CCF files.

Handy Extras

# **\** Advanced Settings

# Alarm

### Saving Alarm

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow Alarms \rightarrow Alarm1 \text{ to } Alarm5 \rightarrow$ Enter Alarm time

### To edit Alarm name

Select Alarm name field  $\rightarrow$  Enter Alarm name  $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$  (Save)

### To set Alarm every day or once only

Select Repeat field  $\rightarrow$  Once only or Everyday  $\rightarrow$   $\bowtie$  (Save)

### To set Alarm for a specific day

Select Repeat field  $\rightarrow$  Selected day  $\rightarrow$  Check day to set  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Done)  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Save)

## To set Alarm sound or video

Highlight Alert tone/video field  $\rightarrow$  Select folder  $\rightarrow$ Highlight file  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Play)  $\rightarrow \checkmark$  (Select)  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Save)

 If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy to 820SC confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to 820SC confirmation appears. Choose Yes to complete setting.

### To adjust Alarm volume

Select Volume field  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\checkmark$  to adjust volume  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Play)  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$   $\bowtie$  (Save)

### To set Vibration

Select Vibration field  $\rightarrow Off$  or *Pattern 1* to *Pattern 5*  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Save)

### To set Snooze

Select Snooze field → Off, 1 minute, 3 minutes, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, or Other  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save) • When Snooze is other than Off. alarm sounds at the specified interval until Snooze is canceled. Alarm repeats specified times. If no handset operations take place, or any key except and x (End) is pressed while alarm sounds. alarm stops, and resets to sound again at specified interval. To cancel Snooze, press 🕝 or 🖙 (End). • For Other: enter duration. To set Snooze repeat time(s) Select Snooze repeat times field  $\rightarrow Once, 2 times,$ 3 times, 5 times, or 10 times  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save) To set Alarm duration time Select Duration field  $\rightarrow$  10 seconds. 20 seconds. 30 seconds, 60 seconds, or Other  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save) • For Other, enter duration. ■  $\rightarrow$  Tools  $\rightarrow$  Alarms  $\rightarrow$  Highlight an Alarm  $\rightarrow$ 回 (On/Off)  $\rightarrow$  Tools  $\rightarrow$  Alarms To reset an entry

Highlight an Alarm  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow$  Reset this

To reset all entries

 $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Clear All$ 

### Setting Volume or Vibration in Manner Mode



*Vibration*  $\rightarrow$  *On* or *Off* 

# Calendar

### Saving to Schedule

■ → Tools → Calendar → 🖾 (New) → Enter title → Highlight Start date & time field → Enter date & time

### To set End date & time

Select End date & time field  $\rightarrow$  Highlight End date & time field  $\rightarrow$  Enter date and time  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Save)

### To set Schedule for all day

Select Start or End date & time field  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Check)  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (OK)  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Save)

### To set Category

Select Category field  $\rightarrow$  Select a Category  $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$  (Save)

### To set Alarm

Select Alarm field  $\rightarrow$  Select Alarm time field  $\rightarrow$ Select time  $\rightarrow$  Select Duration field  $\rightarrow$  Select Duration  $\rightarrow$  Select Alert tone/video field  $\rightarrow$  Select folder  $\rightarrow$  Highlight file  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Play)  $\rightarrow \bigtriangledown$ (Select)  $\rightarrow$  Select Volume field  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\boxdot$  to adjust volume  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Select Vibration field  $\rightarrow$  Off or Pattern 1 to Pattern 5  $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Done)  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Save) If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy

to 820SC confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to 820SC confirmation appears.

# To repeat a set Schedule

Select Repeat field  $\rightarrow$  No repetition, Every day, Every week, Every month, or Every year  $\rightarrow$ Enter a number of times to repeat  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Save)

To set Location

Select Location field  $\rightarrow$  Enter content  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save)

### To automatically delete Schedule

Select Expiry field  $\rightarrow$  After 1 month, After 1 year, After 2 years, or After 3 years  $\rightarrow \bowtie$ (Save)

• Upon expiry, schedule is automatically deleted from Calendar. (e.g. if Expiry is *After 1 year*, and Repetition is unset, schedule is deleted one year from event end date. If Repetition is set, schedule is deleted one year after last repetition. Select *Off* to cancel auto delete.

### To set Details

Select Details field  $\rightarrow$  Enter content  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save)

To set Secret

Select Secret field  $\rightarrow On$  or  $Off \rightarrow \square$  (Save)

## Editing Schedule

■ → Tools → Calendar → Select a date → Select a schedule → ■ (Edit) → Edit in the same way as on registration → 🖾 (Save)

### Switching View Mode

 $\blacksquare \to Tools \to Calendar \to \textcircled{r} \to View mode$  $\to Monthly, Daily, or Weekly$ 

### **Opening a Specific Date**



Today

To toggle to a specified date Date  $\rightarrow$  Enter date

### iewing Schedule by Category

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow Calendar \rightarrow \textcircled{r} \rightarrow List by$ category  $\rightarrow$  Select a Category

### Sending Schedule

■ → Tools → Calendar → 🗹 → Send events ■ To send via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Via bluetooth → Check a schedule → 🖾 (Send) → Yes → (�P.12-7 Sending 2) ■ To send via infrared Via infrared → Check a schedule → 🖾 (Send) → Yes (�P.12-3)

9

Handy Extras



etting Holiday
$\blacksquare \to Tools \to Calendar \to \textcircled{r} \to Settings \to$
et holiday $\rightarrow$ Select a field $\rightarrow$ Enter title $\rightarrow$ Enter
ate $\rightarrow$ Select frequency $\rightarrow \boxtimes$ (Save)
hanging Holiday Display
$\blacksquare \to Tools \to Calendar \to \textcircled{r} \to Settings \to$
et holiday $\rightarrow$ Check an item to change $\rightarrow \square$ ave)
diting Added Holiday
$\blacksquare \to Tools \to Calendar \to \textcircled{x!} \to Settings \to$
et holiday $\rightarrow$ Highlight an entry $\rightarrow$ $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow$ Edit $\rightarrow$
dit the entry $\rightarrow \square$ (Save)
eleting Added Holiday
$\blacksquare \to Tools \to Calendar \to \textcircled{r!} \to Settings \to$
et holiday $\rightarrow$ Highlight an entry $\rightarrow$ <b>F</b> $\rightarrow$ Delete
etting the Beginning of a Week
$\blacksquare \to Tools \to Calendar \to \boxed{\mathbf{x}} \to Settings \to$
tarting day $\rightarrow$ Sunday or Monday
etting Default Calendar View
$\blacksquare \to Tools \to Calendar \to \boxed{\mathbf{x}} \to Settings \to$
$efault view mode \rightarrow Monthly, Weekly, or Daily$

# ting Reminder $\rightarrow Tools \rightarrow Calor$



### Viewing Calendar Memory Status

 $\blacksquare \to Tools \to Calendar \to \textcircled{r} \to Memory$ 

### status

### Sending Schedule as vFile

Tools → Calendar → Select a date →
 Highlight a schedule → x → Send
 To send via message
 Via message → (�P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 2)
 To send via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>
 Via bluetooth → (�P.12-7 Sending 2)
 To send via infrared
 Via infrared (�P.12-3)

### Saving Schedule as vFile

- → Tools → Calendar → Select a date → Highlight a schedule →  $\boxed{\mathbf{Y}}$  → Save to data folder → Phone or Memory card → Yes
- · Save location can be set to Memory Card if inserted.

### Printing Schedule via Bluetooth®

■ → Tools → Calendar → Select a date → Highlight a schedule →  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$  → Print via bluetooth → ( $\bigcirc$  P.7-15 Printing via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>  $\boxed{\mathbf{s}}$ )

# **Currency/Unit Conversion**

### Viewing Exchange Rate

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow Converter \rightarrow Currency \rightarrow$ Highlight Original currency field  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Rate)

### Changing Exchange Rate

 $\begin{array}{c} \blacksquare \rightarrow \textit{Tools} \rightarrow \textit{Converter} \rightarrow \textit{Currency} \rightarrow \\ \\ \text{Highlight Original currency field} \rightarrow \boxdot (Rate) \rightarrow \\ \\ \text{Highlight a currency} \rightarrow \blacksquare (Edit) \rightarrow \text{Enter rate} \end{array}$ 

### Adding Currency Unit

- $\fbox{$\blacksquare$} \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow Converter \rightarrow Currency \rightarrow \boxdot$$ (Rate) \rightarrow \boxdot (Add) \rightarrow Enter currency unit and exchange rate$
- To delete an added currency unit, highlight a rate and press **x**, and select *Delete*.

# World Clock

### Setting Daylight Saving Time

 $\fbox{$\square$} \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow World clock \rightarrow \ref{DST} \rightarrow Check \\ \text{an area to set daylight saving time} \rightarrow \ref{DST} (Done) \rightarrow \\ \fbox{$\square$} (Save)$ 

# Notepad

### Deleting Notepad

# $\blacksquare \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow Notepad$

**To delete a notepad** Highlight a notepad  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}_{?}$   $\rightarrow$  *Delete*  $\rightarrow$ 

Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes

### To delete multiple entries

Highlight a notepad  $\rightarrow$   $\textcircled{r} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow$ Multiple  $\rightarrow$  Check entries  $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow$  Yes

### To delete all entries

Highlight a notepad  $\rightarrow \textcircled{r} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow All \rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password  $\rightarrow \fbox{(OK)} \rightarrow Yes$ 

# Sending Notepad

■ → Tools → Notepad → Select a notepad → P → Send memo → (◆P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ②)

# Viewing Notepad Memory Status

 $\blacksquare \to Tools \to Notepad \to \textcircled{x} \to Memory$ status

# Editing Notepad

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow Notepad \rightarrow Highlight a notepad \rightarrow \square$  (Edit)  $\rightarrow$  Edit the notepad

# Tasks

# Saving Task

$$\blacksquare \to Tools \to Tasks \to \textcircled{r} \to Add new \to Enter$$

title  $\rightarrow$  Highlight Due date & time  $\rightarrow$  Enter Due date and time

## Setting Alarm

Select Alarm field  $\rightarrow$  Select Alarm time field  $\rightarrow$ Select Alarm time  $\rightarrow$  Select Duration field  $\rightarrow$ Select Duration  $\rightarrow$  Select Alart tone/video field  $\rightarrow$ Select a location of sound or video file  $\rightarrow$  Highlight the file  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Play)  $\rightarrow \bigtriangledown$  (Select)  $\rightarrow$  Select Volume field  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\bigcirc$  to adjust volume  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Select Vibration field  $\rightarrow$  Off or Pattern 1 to Pattern 5  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Done)  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Save)

- If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy to 820SC confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to 820SC confirmation appears. Choose Yes to complete setting.
- At Alarm Time, tone sounds and indicator appears. Press any key to stop Alarm. Press 
   (OK) to clear indicator. If no key is pressed, Missed Alarm message appears. Press 
   (View) to view the event.

# To set Priority

Select Priority field  $\rightarrow$  Low, Middle, or High  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save) **To set Details** Select Details field  $\rightarrow$  Enter content  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save) **To activate or cancel Secret** 

Select Secret field  $\rightarrow On$  or  $Off \rightarrow \square$  (Save)

# ending Tasks as vFile

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow Tasks \rightarrow Select a task to send \rightarrow$   $\boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Send$ 

### To send via message

- Via message  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.4-3 Sending S! Mail (2))
- To send via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>

*Via bluetooth*  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.12-7 Sending (2))

■ To send via infrared Via infrared (●P.12-3)

# Sorting Task

 $\blacksquare \to Tools \to Tasks \to \mathbf{x} \to Sort by \to Deadline of Priority$ 



Today

To enter a date to view a task

 $Date \rightarrow$  Enter date


Protecting Recorded Sound File

■ → *Tools* → *Voice recorder* → ■ (Record) →  $\bowtie$  (Stop) →  $\blacktriangledown$  → *Lock* or *Unlock* 

#### Viewing Recorded Sound File Details

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow Voice \ recorder \rightarrow \blacksquare \ (Record)$ 

 $\rightarrow \boxtimes (\mathsf{Stop}) \rightarrow \textcircled{r'} \rightarrow Details$ 

#### Changing Default Name at Saving

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow Voice \ recorder \rightarrow \textcircled{r} \rightarrow Record$ settings  $\rightarrow Default \ name \rightarrow$  Enter file name

#### Changing Recording Time

■ → Tools → Voice recorder →  $\mathbf{x}$  → Record settings → Recording time → 1 min, 2 min, 3 min, 4 min, 5 min, ot 60 min

#### Changing Default Saving Location

■ → Tools → Voice recorder →  $\mathbf{y}$  → Record settings → Set default memory → Phone or Memory card

 When Memory Card is not inserted, files are automatically saved to 820SC.

## Bar Code Reader

#### Using Scanned Data

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow Bar \ code \ reader \rightarrow Scan$ barcode  $\rightarrow$  Scan a barcode
- To call scanned phone number Select a number with *TEL*: or 10 to 32-digit number starting with 0 → Voice call, Video call, or S! Circle Talk
- To send S! Mail to scanned phone number Select a number with *TEL*: or 10 to 32-digit number starting with 0 → *Create message* → (♥P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ⑤)
- To send S! Mail to scanned mail address Select address → (�P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ⑤)
- To access scanned URL Select URL starting with *http://* or *rtsp://*
- To save scanned entry to Phonebook Select an entry → (◆P.2-18 Creating New Entries)
- To save scanned number, etc. as a new Phonebook entry

Highlight a phone number, etc.  $\rightarrow \fbox \rightarrow Save$  to phonebook  $\rightarrow New \rightarrow (\textcircled{OP}P.2-18$  Creating New Entries)

#### To add scanned number, etc. to an existing Phonebook entry

Highlight a phone number, etc.  $\rightarrow \boxdot \rightarrow Save$  to phonebook  $\rightarrow Update \rightarrow$ Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21)  $\rightarrow$  Edit the entry  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Save)

## To add scanned URL to Bookmarks

Highlight a URL  $\rightarrow \mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Add \ bookmark$ 

To copy scanned mail address or phone number, etc.

Highlight an E-mail address or phone number  $\rightarrow$  $\frown$  *Copy Address, Copy telephone,* or *Copy URL* 

To paste scanned phone number, mail address, etc. to Message text

To paste a scanned phone number or mail address to Message text

 $\square$  → Send message →  $\square$  (Cut) → Highlight the first letter →  $\blacksquare$  (Start) → Set range →  $\blacksquare$ (End) →  $\blacksquare$  (OK) → S! Mail or SMS → ( $\bigcirc$  P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ? or P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages ?)

To copy scanned characters

 $\fbox{} \rightarrow Copy \rightarrow \text{Highlight the first letter} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ (Start)  $\rightarrow$  Set range  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$  (End)

#### Viewing Scanned Barcode Data

■ → Tools → Bar code reader → Scan barcode →  $\mathbf{Y}$  → Scanned results → Select a scanned result

#### Viewing Bar Code Reader Help

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow Bar \ code \ reader \rightarrow Scan$ barcode  $\rightarrow \mathbf{x} \rightarrow Help$ 

#### Specifying Saving Location of Created QR Code

■ → Tools → Bar code reader → Create QR code → Phonebook or Text input → (♦P.9-13 Creating QR Code from Phonebook ? or P.9-13 Creating Text QR Code ?) →  $\mathbf{Y}$  → Save to phone or Save to memory card →  $\mathbf{I}$  (Save)

### **File Viewer**

#### Switching Between Full Screen View and Normal View

- → Data Folder → Other documents → Select
- a file  $\rightarrow$  **Y**  $\rightarrow$  Full screen view or Normal view

#### Zoom In/Out Browser Scree

■ → Data Folder → Other documents → Select a file →  $\mathbf{Y}$  → Zoom → In or Out

#### Changing Display Mode for File Width or Size

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Other \ documents \rightarrow Select$
- a file  $\rightarrow \mathbf{x}_{!} \rightarrow Fit$  to screen  $\rightarrow Page$ , width, or height

#### Going to Pages

- → Data Folder → Other documents → Select
- a file  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Go to \rightarrow Previous page. Next page.$
- First page, Last page, or Page
- Tusi puge, Lusi puge, of Fug
- For Page, specify page number.

#### Capturing Images

- $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Other \ documents \rightarrow Select$
- a file  $\rightarrow$  **Y**  $\rightarrow$  *Screen capture*
- Captured image is saved in JPEG format to *Pictures* in Data Folder of 820SC.

#### Rotating File 90 Degrees Clockwise

#### earching String within Page

- → Data Folder → Other documents → Select
- a file  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow$  Search  $\rightarrow$  Enter keyword
- When search result appears and next result is ready, press  $\exists \overline{a} = 1$  then  $1 \overline{a}$  for previous result.

#### Sending Files

■ → Data Folder → Other documents → Select a file →  $\mathbf{x}$ ? → Send

- To send via message
- Via message → ( $\bigcirc$  P.4-3 Sending S! Mail @)
- To send via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>

Via bluetooth  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bigcirc$  P.12-7 Sending (2)

### To send via infrared

Via infrared (€P.12-3)

#### **Editing File Name**

■ →	Data	Folder $\rightarrow$ Other doc	<i>uments</i> → Select
a file —	• ¥/ -	<ul> <li><i>Rename</i> → Enter fi</li> </ul>	le name

#### Protecting File

■ → Data Folder → Other documents → Select a file →  $\mathbf{x}$  → Lock or Unlock

#### Viewing File Details

■ → Data Folder → Other documents → Select a file →  $\mathbf{x}_{i}$  → Details

#### Deleting Files

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Other \ documents \rightarrow Select$ a file  $\rightarrow \mathbf{x} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Yes$ 

#### Assigning Scroll Range

→ Data Folder → Other documents → Select
 a file → x → Settings → Panning → 10 pixel, 20 pixel, 40 pixel, or Screen
 Assign scroll range for each press of .

#### Fit to Display

■ → Data Folder → Other documents → Select a file →  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$  → Settings → Reflow → On or Off • When On, content is fit to Display size.

#### Setting Map

■ → Data Folder → Other documents → Select a file →  $\heartsuit$  → Settings → Map on → On or Off • Current position is framed in red.

#### Setting Guide for Shortcuts in Full Screen View

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Data \ Folder \rightarrow Other \ documents \rightarrow Select$ a file  $\rightarrow \mathbf{x} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Controller \rightarrow On \ or \ Off$ 

#### Editing Default File Name at Screen Capture

■ → Data Folder → Other documents → Select a file →  $\boxdot$  → Settings → Screen capture name → Enter file name

#### Viewing Shortcut Key Assignments

■ → Data Folder → Other documents → Select a file →  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$  → FileViewer shortcuts → Use  $\boxed{\boxed{\mathbf{x}}}$  to view shortcuts

## **Communication Services**

S!	Friend's Status.	10-2
	Viewing S! Friend's Status Window	10-2
	S! Friend's Status Notification	10-3
S!	Friend's Status Members List	
	Adding Members.	10-3
	Adding from Phonebook or Phone Number	10-3
	Adding from Received Request	10-4
	Setting My Status	
S!	Circle Talk	
	Viewing S! Circle Talk Window	10-6
	Initiating S! Circle Talk	
	Receiving S! Circle Talk Call	10-8
	Adding & Deleting S! Circle Talk Members	
	Creating S! Circle Talk Members	
Ne	ear Chat (Japanese)1	
	About Near Chat	
	Using Near Chat	0-11
Ac	dvanced Settings	
	S! Friend's Status	0-12
	S! Circle Talk	0-14



## **S! Friend's Status**

Check members' current mood or availability.

- S! Friend's Status requires a separate subscription.
- Available on S! Friend's Status-compatible models.



• Adding entries to Members List makes their status available. Status is updated automatically.

#### Note

• Confirm *IP service setting* (**O**P.13-21) is set to *On* before using the service.

## **Viewing S! Friend's Status Window**



**Members List Window** 



1 Group name of S! Friend's Status

2 Your information (My Status) (€P.10-5)

8 Member's information

Answer status

Call, message, or S! Circle Talk answer status

- Image, name, and phone number Image saved in Account Details appears in My Status. Image, name, phone number, or group saved in Phonebook appears in Member Status.
- Status icon and status label Indicates your/member's status.
- Network connection status Your/member's connection status
- 8 Comment
- Standby Window setting status
   Standby Window indicator

10

## **S! Friend's Status Notification**

Alerts for S! Friend's Status Request, etc.

• Notification is sent to person added or removed from S! Friend's S'tatus members list.

See S! Friend's Status Notification types below:

Туре	Description
S! Friend's	You are added to S! Friend's
Status Request	Status members list.
Request	Your request for S! Friend's
Acceptance	Status members list is accepted.
Request Rejection	Your S! Friend's Status members list request is rejected or no reply has been received within two hours.
Cancel Request	You are removed from S! Friend's Status members list.
Online Notification	S! Friend's Status is not available due to network trouble.

## S! Friend's Status Members List

Add a member to S! Friend's Status members list to enable information sharing with other members.

Add up to 30 members.

**Adding Members** 



• When added to the list, your S! Friend's Status (My Status) is sent making information sharable.

#### Note

 When network connection status (♥P.10-12) is Offline, adding members to the list is not available. When adding members, make sure to set network connection status to Offline.

## Adding from Phonebook or Phone Number

 $\bullet \rightarrow Communication \rightarrow S!$ Friend's Status



When no member is saved, choose Y	nber is saved, choose J	saved, o	is	member	no	<ul> <li>When</li> </ul>
-----------------------------------	-------------------------	----------	----	--------	----	--------------------------

## Add members

#### To use Phonebook

 $[x_{1}]$  → Add member → From phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21) → Select phone number

#### To enter phone number



## Send request confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

- After Request is accepted and Request Acceptance received, member is added.
- S! Friend's Status information changes to *Waiting* and status to *Unknown*.
- If you do not wish to show your status upon initial registration by default, change My Status first.

#### Note

When 30 members are saved, none can be added. Delete members to add new ones.
If handset is incompatible, Request Not Available notification appears.

## Adding from Received Request

Add members via S! Friend's Status Request.

• When received, add sender confirmation appears. Follow these steps to add members.



## When S! Friend's Status Request appears, choose *Yes*

- Request Acceptance is returned and new member is added to the list.
- Choose No to reject the Request. Request Rejection is sent. (Member is not added.)
- To check later, select Check Later.

- Request Rejection is automatically sent:
- Not available to reply within two hours.
- 30 members are already saved.

#### Note

- For *No*, Request Rejection is sent. The person who sent Request cannot be added members list for 24 hours.
- If Request Rejection is not received within 24 hours, it is resent.

## **Setting My Status**

Set S! Friend's Status information as follows.

## **My Status Details Window**



- Standby Window Setting Status Standby Window My Status indicator
- 2 Network connection status (●P.10-12)

#### Image

Show images saved in Account details.

4 Status icon and status label

Change pictograms (status icon) and short sentence (status label). Change status icon and label in Status setting. (●P.10-13)

Answer status batch change Change call, message, or S! Circle Talk status at once. 6 Answer status

Change call, message, or S! Circle Talk status.

Comment

Edit Short message (up to 15 char.).

### **Changing My Status Information**

Open My Status Details → Select any item except network connection status → Select item to set → ⊠ (Update)

• Changed My Status is sent to members. Set following items.

Item	Settings		
Status setting	16 combinations of status icons and labels		
One time s	ettings		
	All OK	Call: Answer OK Mail: Reply OK S! Circle Talk: Join OK	
	Mail only OK	Call: Answer NG Mail: Reply OK S! Circle Talk: Join NG	

ltem	Settings			
	All NG	Call: Answer NG Mail: Check Later S! Circle Talk: Join NG		
	User Setting	_1		
Call	Answer OK, Urgency only, Answer NG			
Mail	Reply OK, Check Later			
S! Circle Talk	Join OK, Auto Join <sup>2</sup> , Join NG <sup>3</sup>			
Comment	Max. 15 characters			

- Change answer settings in My status one time settings (●P.10-13).
- 2 Start S! Circle Talk automatically upon reception.
- 3 Reject S! Circle Talk automatically upon reception.

#### Advanced

- Advanced Settings P.10-12
- Adding S! Friend's Status Members
- Setting to Standby Window
- Viewing S! Friend's Status Notification
- Making a Voice/Video Call and Sending a Mail
- Initiating S! Circle Talk
- Adding Members to Phonebook
- Editing Members in Phonebook
- Editing Group Names
- Changing Groups
- Removing a Member

## S! Circle Talk

Talk with multiple people (up to 11). Send messages to a group or make a comment.

- A member may talk while pressing a. Only one member can talk at a time.
- S! Circle Talk requires a separate subscription.
- S! Circle Talk is a free-based service.



#### Note

- Set IP service setting (♥P.13-21) to On before using the service. Also set network connection status (♥P.10-12) of My Status to Online. S! Circle Talk is not available when the status is Offline.
- Calling S! Circle Talk is not available while using Voice/Video Call or S! Circle Talk.
- Only available with handsets which support S! Circle Talk.

## Viewing S! Circle Talk Window



- 1 Call status/Talk Status
- 2 S! Circle Talk Member

If saved in Phonebook, name appears. Otherwise, phone number appears.

<sup>3</sup> S! Circle Talk Member Connection Status

## Initiating S! Circle Talk

Upon initiation, registration confirmation appears. Save members or groups to members list to begin use.



Members Window

 Select Save now or Save later. For Save now, member is saved immediately (●P.10-9).

## Select member or group from S! Circle Talk members

#### To select a member or group

Select a member or group directly

- To select multiple members or groups
  - $\square (Multiple) \rightarrow Check members or groups to call \rightarrow \square (Call)$



• When a member connects, S! Circle Talk starts.

) Talk while holding 💻 ( 🝵 ) or 🖗



- Talk while 🖋 appears.
- All members can hear speaker.
- Talk for 30 seconds at a time. After 30 seconds, alert beeps and session ends.
- Warning appears five seconds before session ends.

To talk again, press 🔳 ( 着 ) or 🗟 while *Press 🛓 to speak* appears



• While a member is talking, a message appears and other members cannot talk.



To end S! Circle Talk,

• When only one member remains, S! Circle Talk ends.

 In S! Circle Talk, press 
 ( 「 / 「 ) to toggle Loud speaker On or Off.

#### Note

- If a call is received in S! Circle Talk, 820SC follows Incoming Calls setting (€P.10-14).
- If Alarm time arrives in S! Circle Talk, Alarm sounds and indicator appears. Press 
   (OK) to clear Alarm.



• If My Status (S! Circle Talk) is Auto Join, S! Circle Talk starts automatically for a call. If My Status (S! Circle Talk) is Join NG, call is automatically rejected.

## Adding & Deleting S! Circle Talk Members

## Adding S! Circle Talk Members

Add members before S! Circle Talk calls.



#### Add members 2

To use S! Circle Talk members

S! Circle Talk members  $\rightarrow$  Select a member  $\rightarrow \square$  (Call)

To use S! Friend's Status members list

S! Friend's Status members list  $\rightarrow$ 

Select a member  $\rightarrow | = |$  (Call)

To use Phonebook

*Phonebook*  $\rightarrow$  Search Phonebook to add and select entry ( $\bigcirc$ P.2-21)  $\rightarrow$ Select phone number  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Call)

#### To enter phone number

*New entry*  $\rightarrow$  Enter phone number  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Call)

• Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to add multiple members or groups.

## **Deleting S! Circle Talk Members**

Delete members from list before S! Circle Talk call. Members cannot be deleted during S! Circle Talk call.







Communication Services



## Highlight member $\rightarrow \mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Delete$





### **Delete members**

■ To delete a member Selected → Yes

To delete all members

 $All \rightarrow Yes$ 

## Creating S! Circle Talk Members

Add phone numbers to S! Circle Talk members from S! Friend's Status members list or Phonebook.

- Save individual entries or groups as S! Circle Talk members. Save frequent numbers as a group.
- Save up to 30 members or groups. A single group can include up to 10 members.

## Adding Individual to Members List



## **B**

## Add a member

#### To use S! Friend's Status members list

S! Friend's Status members list  $\rightarrow$  Select a member

### To use Phonebook

*Phonebook* → Search Phonebook and select entry to add ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21) → Select phone number

### To enter phone number

*New entry*  $\rightarrow$  Enter phone number

## Adding Group to Members List

Example: Creating a new group.





## Group name: → Enter a group name



### Member 01: to Member 10:





## Add a member

#### To use S! Friend's Status members list

S! Friend's Status members list  $\rightarrow$  Select a member

#### To use Phonebook

*Phonebook* → Search Phonebook and select entry to add ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21) → Select phone number

#### To enter phone number

New entry  $\rightarrow$  Enter phone number

## 🖻 🖾 (Save)

• Edit Group names and members saved in groups later.

#### Advanced

#### **\ Advanced Settings** ( P.10-14

- Setting Speaker Phone for S! Circle Talk
- Setting a Group of S! Circle Talk Members
- Setting Accept/Reject for S! Circle Talk Call
- Deleting S! Circle Talk Members
- Adding Members during S! Circle Talk
- Rejoining S! Circle Talk

## Near Chat (Japanese)

- This application employs the use restriction function that enables supervising adults to restrict the usage by children under 18 years old. When resetting "S! Appli settings" (◆P.13-9) using "Phone Password", the password used for restricting the application is also reset and the restriction is canceled.
- For details on password restriction, see Near Chat S! Appli instructions.
- Users may receive unsolicited connection requests from unknown sources, as Near Chat employs Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> technology. You can reject such requests.

## **About Near Chat**

Exchange real-time text messages wirelessly with compatible devices within 10 meters.

- This application employs Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> technology. Therefore, connection fees do not apply.
- Near Chat S! Appli is required. This application is pre-installed in 820SC.

#### Note

- Near Chat range may vary by ambient conditions.
- The pre-installed Near Chat S! Appli cannot be deleted.

## **Using Near Chat**

## Setup

- First, activate these settings.
- Bluetooth
- Bluetooth Visibility
- S! Appli request setting
- Activating Near Chat activates Bluetooth. Bluetooth remains active even after Near Chat ends

#### Note

- When Bluetooth On/Off is Off, you cannot use Near Chat S! Appli.
- When Bluetooth On/Off is On and Visibility in Bluetooth settings is Show my phone, 820SC is visible to other Bluetooth® devices. Connection requests from other devices may be received.
- When Visibility is Hide my phone and S! Appli request is Off, Near Chat will not start from other device requests.

## S! Appli Request

 $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$ *Connectivity*  $\rightarrow$  *Bluetooth*  $\rightarrow$ S! Appli request



On or Off

Starting Near Chat via 820SC Operation



● If Bluetooth On/Off is Off, press 🖾 (Yes).



Send Near Chat request via S!

To exit Near Chat, exit S! Appli (€P.8-10)

## **Receiving Near Chat Request**

For details on Near Chat operations, see Near Chat S! Appli instructions.





When a confirmation appears, press 🖂 (はい)

To exit Near Chat, exit S! Appli (€P.8-10)

• After 30 seconds of inactivity, notification appears.

#### **\** Advanced Settings

## **S! Friend's Status**

#### Setting S! Friend's Status Connection

Open My Status details  $\rightarrow$  Select Network connection status  $\rightarrow$  Online or Offline

• For *Offline*, other items in My Status or S! Circle Talk cannot be edited or updated.

#### Adding S! Friend's Status Members

In S! Friend's Status members list,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Add$  member

#### To select from Phonebook

*From phonebook* → Search Phonebook and select an entry ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-21) → Select a phone number → *Yes* 

#### To enter phone number directly

*New entry*  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Select)  $\rightarrow$  Enter phone number  $\rightarrow$   $\boxdot$  (Save)  $\rightarrow$  *Yes* 

## Setting Whether to Display My Status in Standby Window

In S! Friend's Status members list, highlight My status

- $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}'$   $\rightarrow$  Set Standby window  $\rightarrow$  Yes or No
- Choose Yes to show or No to hide.

#### Setting to Standby Window

In S! Friend's Status members list,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Set Standby$ 

window → Yes → Select save location

• Alternatively, in Member Status window, press raised and select *Set Standby window*.

#### Canceling from Standby Windov

In SI Friend's Status members list,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Set Standby$ window  $\rightarrow Yes$ 

To delete a member

Highlight member  $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Delete$ 

- To delete all members
  - $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Delete \ all$
- Alternatively, in Member Status window, press **Y** and select *Set Standby window*.

#### Viewing S! Friend's Status Notification

In S! Friend's Status members list,  $\textcircled{F} \rightarrow S!$  Friend's Status notification  $\rightarrow$  Select notification list

- Press 🔳 (Display) to check notification details.
- Request notification can also be selected (●P.10-4).

#### Deleting S! Friend's Status Notification

In S! Friend's Status members list,  $\textcircled{P} \rightarrow S!$  Friend's Status notification  $\rightarrow$  Check a notification to delete  $\rightarrow \textcircled{P}$  (Delete)

#### Making a Voice/Video Call and Sending a Mail

#### To make a call

In S! Friend's Status members list, highlight

member  $\rightarrow \mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Voice \ call$  or Video call

#### To send a message

In S! Friend's Status members list highlight member

→ 🐨 → Create message S! Mail or SMS (●P.4-3 Sending S! Mail, P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages)

#### Initiating S! Circle Talk

In S! Friend's Status members list,  $\textcircled{P} \rightarrow Call S!$  *Circle Talk*  $\rightarrow$  *Individual* or *Group*  $\rightarrow$  (PP.10-7 Initiating S! Circle Talk O)

#### Adding Members to Phonebook

In S! Friend's Status members list highlight a member

→  $\mathbf{x}$ ? → *Add to phonebook* ( $\bigcirc$  P.2-43 Enter and Save Phone Number)

• Alternatively, in Member Status window, press raised and select *Add to phonebook*.

#### Editing Members in Phonebook

- In S! Friend's Status members list, highlight a member
- →  $\mathbf{x}_{r}$  → *Edit phonebook* → Edit phonebook ( $\mathbf{\Theta}$  P.2-18)
- Alternatively, in Member Status window, press **x**? and select *Edit phonebook*.

<mark>1</mark>0-12

#### Setting Actions When Saving

In S! Friend's Status members list,  $\fbox \to Settings \to Request reply \to Always answer, Known only, or Do not answer$ 

 If Do not answer is selected, Rejection request is always returned.

#### Setting Answer Status

In S! Friend's Status members list,  $\textcircled{P} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow My \ status \ one \ time \ settings \rightarrow User \ Settings \rightarrow$ Select answer status  $\rightarrow$  Select answer status icon  $\rightarrow$ O (Save)

#### Changing Status Icons or Status Labels

- In S! Friend's Status members list,  $\fbox \to Settings \to Status setting \to Select an icon to change <math>\to Status$   $Icon \to Select an icon \to Status Label \to Enter text$  $\to \boxdot$  (Save)
- Selectable icons in Status Icon is same as those for pictograms.
- Up to 4 characters can be entered in Status Label.

#### Updating Lists

- In S! Friend's Status members list,  $\mathbf{F} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Update \ list$
- Information in S! Friend's Status is basically updated automatically.

#### **Editing Group Names**

In S! Friend's Status members list, use  $\frown$  to switch to group to change name  $\rightarrow \boxdot \rightarrow$  *Change group name*  $\rightarrow$  Enter group name

#### **Changing Groups**

- To change group in S! Friend's Status members list window
  - In S! Friend's Status members list, use 🔤 to
  - switch to group to change  $\rightarrow$  highlight a member
  - $\rightarrow$  **x**  $\rightarrow$  *Change group*  $\rightarrow$  Select group to change
- To change group in Member Status window In Member Status window, select a member to change group → Use the to select Group field → Select a group to change

#### Removing a Member

In S! Friend's Status members list, highlight a member

- $\rightarrow$  **Y**  $\rightarrow$  Unregister  $\rightarrow$  Yes
- The removed member cannot be added to the list for 24 hours.
- If Unregistered notification is not received by the removed member within 24 hours, the S! Status Request is sent from the member.
- Alternatively, in Member Status window press raised and select *Unregister*.

#### Editing Names

- In S! Friend's Status members list, select a member ightarrow
- Use  $\frown$  to select Name field  $\rightarrow$  Select Last name field
- $\rightarrow$  Edit  $\rightarrow$  Select First name field  $\rightarrow$  Edit  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (OK)
- $\rightarrow \square$  (Save)  $\rightarrow \square$  (Save)
- The name in Phonebook is also changed.

#### Setting Images of S! Friend's Status Members

In S! Friend's Status members list, select a member  $\rightarrow$  Use  $\fbox$  to select Image icon

To set from saved still image

 $\begin{array}{c} \textit{Pictures} \rightarrow \textit{Select a file} \rightarrow \boxdot (\textit{Save}) \rightarrow \boxdot (\textit{Save}) \end{array}$ (Save)

- With Memory Card inserted, files can be selected from *Pictures* and *Digital camera* folders after *Pictures* is selected.
- To set by capturing still image

*Take photo*  $\rightarrow$  Capture still image ( $\bigcirc$  P.7-5 Single Shot (2) to (4))  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Save)  $\rightarrow \boxdot$  (Save)

- To cancel set image
  - $Off \rightarrow \square(Save) \rightarrow \square(Save)$
- The incoming image in Phonebook is also changed.

#### Making Voice/Video/S! Circle Talk Calls and Sending Messages to Saved Members

In S! Friend's Status members list, select a member

#### To make a call

Select Phone field of Answer status  $\rightarrow$  *Voice call* or *Video call* 

#### To send a message

Select Message field of Answer status  $\rightarrow$  S! Mail or SMS ( $\bigcirc$  P.4-3 Sending S! Mail  $\bigcirc$ , P.4-8

Sending SMS Messages 6)

#### To initiate S! Circle Talk

Select S! Circle Talk field of Answer Status  $\rightarrow$  (Call) ( $\bigcirc$  P.10-6 S! Circle Talk)

• S! Circle Talk is not available if Answer status is

## S! Circle Talk

Adding Member List from S! Friend's Status or Phonebook

#### Setting Speaker Phone for S! Circle Talk

In S! Circle Talk members list,  $\textcircled{r} \rightarrow Loud speaker \rightarrow On \text{ or } Off$ 

• Alternatively, press 🖾 ( 🛒 / 🗐 ) during S! Circle Talk.

#### Setting a Group of S! Circle Talk Members

Highlight a group in S! Circle Talk members list  $\rightarrow \mathbf{r}$  $\rightarrow Group settings (\textcircled{P}.10-9 Adding Group to Members List (S))$ 

#### Setting Accept/Reject for S! Circle Talk Ca

In S! Circle Talk members list,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Incoming \ calls$ 

- $\rightarrow$  Voice calls or Video calls  $\rightarrow$  Reject calls or Accept calls
- S! Circle Talk automatically ends when receiving a call with *Accept calls* set.

#### Deleting S! Circle Talk Members

#### To delete an entry

Highlight a member in S! Circle Talk members list

 $\rightarrow$   $\mathbf{x}' \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Selected \rightarrow Yes$ 

#### To delete all entries

In S! Circle Talk members list,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow All \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow \mathbf{I} (OK) \rightarrow Yes$ 

#### Adding Members during S! Circle Talk

During S! Circle Talk,  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Add \text{ member} (\bigcirc P.10-8$ Adding S! Circle Talk Members  $(\bigcirc)$ 

## Initiating S! Circle Talk by Entering Phone Number

Enter phone number  $\rightarrow [1]{} \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.10-7 \text{ Initiating S!} \text{ Circle Talk } \bigcirc)$ 

#### Rejoining S! Circle Talk

## **Handset Security**

Changing Phone Password	-2
Setting PINs	-2
PIN Certification	
Changing PIN/PIN2	
Canceling PIN Lock	
Setting USIM Lock	
Locking & Restricting Handset Operations	
Phone Lock	
Password Lock	
Application Lock	
Secret Mode	
Secret Folders	
Mobile Tracker	
Facial Recognition	
Using Facial Recognition	
User Registration	
Toggling Facial Recognition	
Starting Facial Recognition	
Restoring Default Settings	
Clearing Phone Memory 11-	11
Resetting Settings	12
All Reset	12
Advanced Settings	
Facial Recognition	13



## **Changing Phone Password**

By default, Phone password is set to "9999".

• 
$$\rightarrow$$
 Settings  $\rightarrow$  Security  $\rightarrow$ 

Change password





3	Enter new Phone Password (4
	digits) → 🔳 (OK)

	pass m pass	
	OK	Cancel



Rettings

```
    Change Phone Password (IPP P.13-21)
```

## **Setting PINs**

PINs are security codes for USIM Card. For details, see "USIM Card" (€P.14-4).

## **PIN Certification**

To activate PIN certification each time the power is turned on, set this function to On.









Handset Security



 When PIN certification (●P.11-2) is set to Off, PIN cannot be changed.



## Enter current PIN or PIN2 → (OK)

Ch		inge e Pl		IN code
000000000	New	PIN	СС	ode
000000				
			_	
		OK		Cancel

Enter new PIN digits) → ■	or PIN2 (4 to 8 (OK)
Change PIN	
Change PIN code	
Confirm PIN code	
OK Cancel	

Enter new PIN or PIN2 (4 to 8 digits)  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (OK)

## **Canceling PIN Lock**

If PIN or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three consecutive times. PIN lock or PIN2 lock is activated to restrict handset operations. To cancel PIN lock or PIN2 lock, perform following operations.

In PUK Code entry window, enter PUK Code  $\rightarrow | \bullet |$  (OK)



Enter new PIN or PIN2 (4 to 8 digits) $\rightarrow$ $\blacksquare$ (OK)			
Change PIN PUK code Confirm PIN code			
ОК			



Enter new PIN or PIN2 (4 to 8 digits)  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (OK)

#### Note

- For more information about PUK and PUK2. contact Customer Service (€P.14-30).
- Entering incorrect PUK Code 10 consecutive times locks USIM Card (turning 820SC off does not reset the count).
- Once locked, USIM Card cannot be unlocked. Contact Customer Service (OP.14-30).

#### Advanced

#### ۲ Settings

Activate or cancel PIN Certification (IBP P.13-20)

- Change PIN (IPP P.13-20)
- Change PIN2 (IPP P.13-20)

## Setting USIM Lock

Activate this function to require USIM Password entry to use 820SC with a different USIM Card.

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow USIM lock$ 



Handset Security

11

- On or Off USIM lock

3



• To set to *On*, enter USIM password (4 to 8 digits) again and press (OK).

- USIM Password is dedicated to USIM Card authentication. If USIM Password matches, another USIM Card can be used in 820SC. Change USIM Password each time USIM lock is set to On.
- If you forget USIM Password, insert USIM Card with USIM lock set to On and reset all settings (€ P.11-12).

#### Advanced

#### **ペ** Settings

Activate or cancel USIM Lock (IPP P.13-20)

## Locking & Restricting Handset Operations

## Phone Lock

Activate this function to require Phone Password entry each time 820SC is powered on.









Enter Phone Password  $\rightarrow$  (OK)

## Password Lock

Lock 820SC in Standby. Activate this function to require Phone Password entry to use 820SC.

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow$ **Password** lock Password lock •0n <u>?</u> On or O<u>ff</u> Password lock Enter Phone Password  $\rightarrow | \blacksquare |$ 3 (OK)

• Entering Phone Password cancels Password Lock. Password lock remains *Off.* 

## **Application Lock**

Activate this function to require Phone Password entry to open Phonebook, Calendar, Messaging, Call log, or Data Folder.



Enter Phone Password → (OK)

## Secret Mode

Select *Hide* to activate this function and hide Secret Phonebook entries, Messaging folders, Calendar schedules, or Tasks. • Powering 820SC off then back on activates Secret mode.

## **Secret Folders**

Activate Secret mode to see Secret folders within Data Folder.



Security Password	00000000
	000000000000000000000000000000000000000
OK Cance	l

Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK)



Show or Hide

Powering 820SC off then back on activates Secret mode.

## Mobile Tracker

Activate this function to send SMS notification to a specified address if a different USIM Card is inserted. Specify up to 2 addresses.





Enter Phone Password → ■ (OK)



Handset Security



## Select Activation field $\rightarrow On$

Mobile tracker	
Activation	
On	
Recipients	
Empty	
Sender  2	20
Messages	
Please keep this m	n
Save Select	



#### Select Recipients field



Select Save

- To enter an address from Phonebook, highlight To field  $\rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow Phonebook \rightarrow$ Search Phonebook and select entry (€P.2-21) → Select a phone number.
- Select Sender field  $\rightarrow$  Enter sender name



Press  $\square$  (Save)  $\rightarrow$  Confirm message



## (Agree)

Not to agree the message, press x? (Reject).

- When a different USIM Card is inserted, SMS notification is sent to the specified address upon 820SC activation. Nothing appears on 820SC. If Phone Password is incorrectly entered three consecutive times when trying to set Mobile Tracker, SMS notification is also sent.
- To delete a recipient address, press x and select Delete in Step 5.

#### **𝕄** Settings

- Activate or cancel Phone Lock (IPP P.13-20)
- Activate or cancel Password Lock (IBP P.13-20)
- Activate or cancel Secret mode (IPP P.13-20)
- Activate Mobile Tracker (IPP P.13-21)

## **Facial Recognition**

When powered on, 820SC verifies an authorized user from a registered image. If Facial Recognition fails, 820SC is disabled.

- While functions are in use, Facial Recognition may take time. In this case, after exiting all functions in use, the recognition starts.
- Facial Recognition matches the saved image to the one at the time of recognition. When capturing an image or using Facial Recognition, remember the following points.
- Make sure your face (eyes, mouth, nose, eyebrows, etc.) is clearly visible. Facial features may be obscured by hair, colored glasses, hat, etc., inhibiting image capture or recognition.
- The face should be lit evenly and brightly. Avoid backlight, strong light, or shadows.

#### Note

- Identification accuracy is not guaranteed.
   SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages associated with Facial Recognition.
- Phone Password is required for Facial Recognition settings or cancellation upon recognition failure. Changing Phone Password enhances security. (OP.11-2).

## **Using Facial Recognition**

### **User Registration**

Save image, name and a question & answer from which to verify identification, should recognition fail.

Save up to five users. Save up to five images per user. Change location (home, office, inside vehicle or station, etc.) or condition (face angle, accessories, glasses, etc.) for each shot.



## $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Facial recognition$





3

#### User registration









Handset Security



## Select from *Image1* to *Image5* $\rightarrow \square$ (Capture)





	User1
1	Face image
	User name
	Saito Ai
	Riddle
	Answer
	Edit

# Frame your face on Display → (Capture) → (Save) → (OK)



• After saving image, if *Facial recognition* is *Off*, an activation confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to activate Facial Recognition.

## *Riddle* $\rightarrow$ Enter question





User1 1 Face image 2 User name 3 Riddle 4 Answer Monkey Edit

- Image capture may take time. Stay still until complete.
- A confirmation appears if registration fails. Change shooting conditions and start over.
- If a question and answer are not saved, enter Phone Password for recognition.
- Saving multiple images increase recognition accuracy, however, security may be compromised.
- The same image can be saved to multiple users. This may increase recognition accuracy.
- Look straight and frame whole face with no expression. If face is too small, image may not be saved. Do not change face angle while shooting.

## **Toggling Facial Recognition**

Activate Facial Recognition. Save a user beforehand.

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow$ 

Facial recognition Facial recognition 2 Guidance 3 Security level 4 User registration Select On/Off 2 Facial recognition ● 0n **O**0ff Select *On* or *Off*  $\rightarrow$  Enter Phone Password  $\rightarrow$  (OK)

 Set to On to match your face to the saved portrait when 820SC is turned on. If the recognition fails, 820SC is disabled.

## **Recognition Guidance**

Activate this function to show guidance in Facial Recognition. Cancel it for recognition message with no image. Select to *Preview* to show image.

 $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Security  $\rightarrow$ Facial recognition





**Off or Preview** 

## Select to *Preview* to show image.

## Setting Security Level

Select recognition accuracy level.

• Accuracy levels are as follows.

ltem	Description	
High	Unsaved faces are least likely to be recognized by mistake. However, your face may also be difficult to recognize.	
Normal	An intermediate setting.	
Low	Your face is most recognizable. However, unsaved faces are more likely to be recognized by mistake.	



## $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Facial recognition$



11-10

Handset Security



High, Normal, or Low

## **Starting Facial Recognition**

Facial Recognition starts when the power is turned on. When face is recognized, 820SC is enabled.



## Face Display

- When Guidance (
  P.11-10) is Preview, image appears. When face is recognized, focus moves to recognized face. Recognition result appears with Matching (green frame), Similar (yellow frame), or Unknown (red frame).
- Internal camera is used for Facial Recognition. Dust or smudges on the lens may lead to recognition failure. Clean with a soft cloth before use.
- While functions are in use, Facial Recognition may take time. End other functions.

## **If Facial Recognition Fails**

To try again, press 🖾 (Recog.).

If recognition fails, follow steps below accordingly:

- If similar
  - Use question and answer to complete recognition. Question appears. Press 
    (Answer) and enter it.
  - When a question and an answer are not saved, enter Phone Password. Enter Phone Password and press (OK) to complete recognition.
- If no match is found
  - Use Phone Password conduct the recognition. Press
  - (Code), enter Phone Password and press
     (OK) to complete recognition.

### Advanced

**\ Advanced Settings** IP.11-13

#### **⊀** Settings

- Activate or cancel Facial Recognition (IPP P.13-20)
- Show or hide Guidance (IPP P.13-20)
- Set Security Level (IPP P.13-20)
- Save Facial Recognition User (IPP P.13-20)

## **Restoring Default Settings**

### **Clearing Phone Memory**

Clear Data Folder, Messaging, 820SC Phonebook, Calendar, or User's dictionary. Alternatively, clear all 820SC files at once.



# $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Memory \\ settings \rightarrow Phone memory \rightarrow \\ Clear phone memory$





## **Resetting Settings**

Clear saved contents/settings regarding Settings, Alarms in Tools, and TV (other than TV links and Reservation list); then restore default settings. The following settings are not affected.

Item	Unaffected Settings
	Contents saved in Reject
	incoming calls $\rightarrow$ Reject list
	$\rightarrow$ Edit black list
	Settings saved in Optional
	services $\rightarrow$ Voice mail/Call
	forwarding $\rightarrow$ Call
Call settings	forwarding on
cui settings	Settings saved in Optional
	services $\rightarrow$ Call waiting
	Settings saved in Optional
	services $\rightarrow$ Call barring
	Settings saved in Optional
	services $\rightarrow$ Voice mail/Call
	forwarding $\rightarrow$ Voice mail on
Phonebook	Settings saved in Account
FIIUHEDUOK	details, Group settings
Convitu	USIM lock, PIN certification,
Security	Change PIN, Change PIN2

 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow$ 

Reset  $\rightarrow$  Reset settings



Enter Phone Password  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (OK)  $\rightarrow Yes$ 

## All Reset

Restore 820SC to defaults and delete Phonebook (Phone), Messaging, and Data Folder contents/ settings. However, preinstalled files and S! Appli are not deleted.



 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Reset \rightarrow All reset$ 



2 Enter Phone Password  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (OK)  $\rightarrow Yes$ 

#### Advanced

#### **𝕄** Settings

- Delete Phonebook entries, messages, etc. (IPP P.13-20)
- Restore Settings to default values (IPP.13-20)

#### **1** Advanced Settings

## **Facial Recognition**



#### **Deleting Images**

■ → Settings → Security → Facial recognition → User registration → Select a user → Face image → Highlight image → 😰 (Delete) → Yes

## **Connectivity & File Backup**

Connectivity	12-2
Transmission Types	12-2
Infrared	12-2
Getting Started	12-2
Infrared Precautions	12-2
Infrared Data Transmission	12-3
Sending Data	12-3
Receiving One by One	12-3
Transferring All	
Receiving All	. 12-4
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup>	12-5
Getting Started	
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> Precautions	12-5
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> Data Transmission.	12-6
Toggling Bluetooth <sup>®</sup>	12-6
Searching for Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> Devices	. 12-6
Browsing Connected Device Files.	
Sending	
Receiving One by One	12-7
Transferring All	
Receiving All	. 12-8
A/V Headset	
USB Connection	12-9
Getting Started	12-9
Connecting to a PC	12-9

аскир	(12)
Memory Card Backup	
Memory Card Backup Precautions	
Backing Up to Memory Card	
Loading from Memory Card	
Mass Storage	
Connecting to a PC	
Removing Device	
S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)	
SAB Precautions	
Synchronization Modes	
Synchronizing Phonebook	
Synchronizing Phonebook Automatically	
Advanced Settings	
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> Settings	
S! Addressbook Back-up	

## Connectivity

Transfer files wirelessly between 820SC and other Infrared or Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>-compatible devices, or connect 820SC to PCs or printers via USB Cable.

### **Transmission Types**

Transfer files via Infrared or Blutooth<sup>®</sup> as follows.

Transmission Type	Description	
Transfer Each	Receive single files/send multiple	
	files. Received files are	
	automatically saved to the	
	appropriate location by file type.	
Transfer All	Receive/send all files by function at	
	once.	

 Most received files are saved to the appropriate location by file type, however, some may be saved to Other documents in Data Folder.

## Infrared

Exchange files wirelessly with infrared-compatible handsets, PCs or other devices.

## **Getting Started**

- 820SC Infrared is based on IrMC1.1. Transmission may be unavailable for some functions, even when IrMC1.1 is supported on the other party's handset.
- Infrared data transmission is unavailable while sending/receiving message or using Internet.
- Calling or sending mail are unavailable during Infrared transmissions.
- Transmissions may be inhibited in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared devices.
- Authorization Code is the 4-digit password used to allow transmissions between infrared devices.
   Enter same Authorization Code on both devices when transmitting all files at once.

## **Infrared Precautions**

 Place devices within 30 cm. Align device ports. Do not place objects in between devices.



- · Maintain port alignment until transmission ends.
- A soiled port may inhibit transmission. Clean port with a soft cloth beforehand.
- If transmission fails, a confirmation appears. Review precautions, choose *Yes* to try again.

## Infrared Data Transmission

Send and receive Phonebook or Calendar entries, Account details, Schedules, Tasks, still images, videos, sound files, vFiles, and others. Send either all Phonebook entries, Schedules, Tasks or Bookmarks in a single transfer.

#### Note

 Infrared is unavailable while Internet services/ Media Player is use, or while editing mail/files.
 Some received files cannot be saved on 820SC.

## Sending Data

First, activate Infrared on the other device.



## Send data

#### To send from Data Folder

In list,  $\boxed{\mathbf{v}} \rightarrow Send \rightarrow Via infrared$   $\rightarrow$  Select data  $\rightarrow \boxed{\boldsymbol{\Box}}$  (Send) **To send from Calendar, Tasks, Bookmarks or Phonebook** Highlight item  $\rightarrow \boxed{\mathbf{v}} \rightarrow Send \rightarrow$ *Via infrared* 

• Some functions allow sending from Details/ Playback window.

## **Receiving One by One**



 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow$ 

 $\textit{Connectivity} \rightarrow \textit{Infrared} \rightarrow$ 

### Infrared On/Off $\rightarrow$ On (3 min.)

- If Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> is active, cancellation confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to activate Infrared.
- 820SC is ready to receive data.
- Begin sending from other device within 3 minutes



Cancel Calling confirmation appears, choose *Yes* 



## 4

## Receive confirmation appears, choose *Yes*



- Save confirmation appears, choose *Yes*
- To save pictograms, select *Pictures* or *My Pictogram*.
- Press 🔄 (Cancel) to cancel receiving.
- Press 🕝 to terminate data reception.

#### Note

 Receive files in Standby. Files cannot be received when Password Lock is active, All Keys locked or during Software Update.





### Phonebook, Calendar, or Bookmarks



• For *Phonebook*, choose *Yes* to transfer images

## Enter Authorization Code (4 digits) → ■ (OK)

## **Receiving All**



→ Settings →
 Connectivity → Infrared →
 Infrared On/Off → On (3 min.)
 820SC is ready to receive files.



## Begin sending from other device within 3 minutes



4			
	đ	5	
	-	~	

No Calling confirmation appears, choose *Yes* 

Transfer all
Author i mati an Le
Authorizatior 4
Cancel
Cancer



## Enter Authorization Code



• Enter same Authorization Code as sender.

## Select a saving method

#### To add files as new entries

Add New

#### To overwrite current entries

- *Overwrite*  $\rightarrow$  *Yes*  $\rightarrow$  Enter Phone Password  $\rightarrow$   $\square$  (OK)
- Receiving all entries deletes existing 820SC entries except Account details. Receiving Account details deletes existing Account details except handset phone number.
- Press v (Cancel) to cancel receiving.
   Press v to terminate reception.

#### Advanced

#### Settings

- Activate or cancel Infrared transmission (IBP P.13-27)
- Transfer Phonebook or Calendar entries, and Bookmarks at once (IPP P.13-27)

## Bluetooth®

Connect Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>-compatible handsets or other devices to exchange files wirelessly, or handsfree devices for handsfree calling. Connect 820SC to PCs and other devices for Internet access, etc.

## **Getting Started**

Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> transmissions require Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>compatible devices with the same profiles. See 820SC Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> specifications below:

Item	Specification
Communication Standard	Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> Standard Ver. 2.0
Applicable Profiles	Headset Handsfree Serial Port Dialup Networking File Transfer Object Push Advanced Audio Distribute Audio/Video Remote Control Basic Imaging <sup>1</sup> Basic Printing
Output	Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> Power Class2
Communication Distance <sup>2</sup>	Approximately 10 m

Item	Specification
Frequency Band Used	2.4 GHz
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> QD ID	B013533

820SC only supports printing.

2 Varies by radio interference and other conditions.

## **Bluetooth® Precautions**

- 820SC may not work with all Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> devices.
- File transfers may not be available with some Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> devices. Operations, displays or actions vary by device, even if device meets Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> standards by interference.
- The 2.4 GHz band used by Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> devices is shared with other devices. Transmission rate or distance may be reduced, or transmissions terminated.
- Use of handsfree devices may create noise depending on connected devices or the usage environment.
- 820SC cannot be connected to other devices when connected to Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> headphones while playing media files.
- $\bullet\, {\rm USB}$  and  ${\rm Bluetooth}^{\textcircled{R}}$  cannot be used simultaneously.
- $\bullet$  Deactivate Bluetooth  $^{\textcircled{\sc B}}$  before connecting USB Cable.
#### Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Data Transmission

Send and receive Phonebook or Calendar entries. Account details, Schedules, Tasks, still images, videos, sound files, vFiles, and others. Send either all Phonebook entries, Schedules, Tasks or Bookmarks in a single transfer.



#### Searching for Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Devices

Save Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> devices to Paired devices list. Up to 10 can be saved. Enter same Authorization Code on both 820SC and device. Activate Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> on device beforehand.

 $\blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$ *Connectivity*  $\rightarrow$  *Bluetooth*  $\rightarrow$ Search for devices





Select

Meni • If Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> is *Off*, choose *Yes*.



When devices appear, select one



Enter Authorization Code
(4 to 16 digits) $\rightarrow$ $\blacksquare$ (OK
Search for devices



Enter same Authorization Code on device within 30 seconds

**Connectivity & File Backup** 12

- Authorization Code is a 4- to 16-digit password required for transmissions between Bluetooth® devices. When connecting to a handsfree device, enter specified Authorization Code. Authorization Code entry is not required for registered devices.
- If authorization fails, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* and repeat from step 4.
- If 10 paired devices are already registered, oldest is deleted to make room for the new one. If all are authenticated, memory full confirmation appears.
- Paired Devices Indicators
- 🖏: Personal Computer 🔤 🔤 Mobile Phone
  - 👾 Printer
- DA: PDA Contraction Contraction
- Tea: Handsfree Device/Headset
- If a Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> connection request appears, choose Yes and enter specified Authorization Code within 30 seconds. For paired devices, choose Yes to establish connection without Authorization Code.

#### **Browsing Connected Device Files**

Access connected device's shared folders or files Import or delete files from the other device.

 $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Connectivity  $\rightarrow$  Bluetooth  $\rightarrow$  Paired devices Paired devices kaori

- Select Select a device
- Approve access on source device

#### Sending



#### Select file and send

From Data Folder, Phonebook. Bookmarks, or Tasks In list.  $\mathbf{Y} \rightarrow Send \rightarrow Via$  $bluetooth \rightarrow Select entries \rightarrow \square$  $(Send) \rightarrow Yes$ 

From Calendar

In list, highlight entry  $\rightarrow |\mathbf{x}| \rightarrow$ Send  $\rightarrow$  Via bluetooth



#### Select receiving device

- Receiver accepts and transfer begins.
- If device is not registered, register it first.
- Some functions allow sending option from Details or Playback window.

#### **Receiving One by One**

After sender approves connection, file transfer begins and received file is saved in Data Folder.

#### **Transfer confirmation** appears, choose Yes



#### **Received confirmation** appears, choose Yes

 Save received pictogram files to Pictures or My Pictograms.

Received folders are saved to Other documents.

#### **Transferring All**



 $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow$ 

Connectivity  $\rightarrow$  Bluetooth  $\rightarrow$ Transfer all







• If device is not registered, register it first.



Phonebook, Calendar, or Bookmark • When Phonebook is selected to transfer image data, choose *Yes*.

#### **Receiving All**



Bluetooth	On/Off
DOn	
<b>D</b> Off	
Sele	ct

• 820SC is set in standby mode to receive data. Begin sending files from other device.

## Connection confirmation appears, choose *Yes*





#### Select a saving method

#### To add new data

Add

#### To delete all to overwrite data

 $Overwrite \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow Enter Phone$ Password  $\blacksquare$  (OK)

- When receiving phonebook entries, all entries except My Phonebook Information are deleted. When receiving My Phonebook Information, all data except the phone number is overwritten.
- Press  $\mathbf{\overline{x_{\prime}}}$  (Cancel) to cancel the reception.
- Press 
   to terminate data reception.

#### A/V Headset

 $\label{eq:connect_state} \mbox{Connect Bluetooth}^{\textcircled{\mbox{${\rm B}$}}\mbox{-}\mbox{compatible headphones to listen}} to music.$ 



#### Activate Media Player





### $] \rightarrow Transfer to A/V headset$

Select a device to connect

• When no device is registered, search and register new device.

• To switch output from headsets to 820SC, press

 $\mathbf{Y}' \rightarrow Transfer to Phone.$ 

#### Advanced

Advanced Settings P.12-15

- Disconnecting Currently Connected Device
- Browsing Currently Connected Device
- Editing Name of Paired Device
- Authorizing Paired Device
- Deleting Connected Device
- Viewing Paired Device Details
- Searching Devices by Type

#### ۲**€ Settings**

- Activate or cancel Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> functions (IPP P.13-26)
- Search for a new Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> device (IPP P.13-26)
- Reference connected device files (IPP P.13-26)
- Search/save from Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> devices (IPP P.13-26)
- Set Secure mode (IPP P.13-26)
- Set Answering mode (IPP P.13-26)
- Confirm 820SC device address (IPP P.13-27)
- Edit 820SC name (IPP P.13-27)
- Confirm available Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> functions (IPP.13-27)
- Activate or cancel S! Appli communication (IPP P.13-27)
- Transfer all Phonebook or Calendar entries, or Bookmarks at once (IPP P.13-27)

#### **USB** Connection

Connect 820SC to a PC to transfer files between devices. Connect printer to print still images. 820SC supports USB 2.0.

#### **Getting Started**

Install Samsung PC Studio and USB driver first. For installation instructions, PC operating environment, etc., see user guide on the included CD-ROM.

#### Connecting to a PC

The following operations are available:

- Transfer 820SC Data Folder files to PC
- Import PC files and save to Data Folder
- Perform Packet Communications

#### Note

 To access to the Internet through PC or PDA connection (Mobile data communication), a large volume of packet communication is required in short period that will apply for high packet communication charge. Please pay attention on communication fee when using mobile data communication.

#### **Memory Card Backup**

Back up Phonebook entries, etc. to Memory Card (Package backup). Restore backed up items as required (Package restoration).

- Restore from Backup in case of accidental loss.
- Backups are saved by type (transfer date is file name).
- Available Backup types
- -Phonebook
- -Calendar
- -Tasks
- -Content Key
- -Bookmarks
- Use Backup to save files, share information between microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Card-compatible handsets, or move files to a newly purchased handset.

#### Memory Card Backup Precautions

- Not available when battery is low.
- During backup or loading data, Voice Call or Messaging are unavailable (Call reception is also unavailable).
- Some data may no be transferable. Alternatively, some content of backup data may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.

- Data transfer may not be carried out correctly when 820SC or Memory Card have low free space.
- 820SC can hold up to 200 schedules or tasks of Calendar and Tasks. When the number of items exceeds 200 during loading from Memory Card, a confirmation appears and the excess will not be saved.
- Yahoo! Keitai, PC Site Browser bookmarks are backed up.
- With some data format, the bookmarks with large size may not be transferred correctly.
- Some images set to Phonebook entries may not be transferred because of its size.
- Backup data saved in Memory Card is not accessible on 820SC until being loaded from Memory Card.
- Note the following precautions to back up Content Keys.
  - Backup file can hold only one Content Key at a time.
     To backup another Content Key, a confirmation appears and the previous backup file is overwritten (To keep the previously backed up files, load the Content Key to 820SC from Memory Card and then perform backup again).
  - To backup files to Memory Card, Content Key is moved from 820SC and the file is inaccessible.
- To load to 820SC, Content Key is added and the existing Content Key on 820SC is not overwritten.

#### **Backing Up to Memory Card**



■ → Settings → Memory settings → Memory card → Backup & Restore







#### Phonebook, Calendar, Tasks, Contents keys, or Bookmarks





- Press 🖅 (Cancel) to cancel backup.
- If Content Key backup file already exists, an overwrite confirmation appears. Press (Yes) to overwrite the file.

Loading from Memory Card  $| \bullet | \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Memory$ settings  $\rightarrow$  Memory card  $\rightarrow$ **Backup & Restore** Backup & Restore 1 Backup 2 Restore Select Restore  $\rightarrow$  Yes Backup & Restore Cance







#### Phonebook, Calendar, Tasks, Contents keys, or Bookmarks





#### Add or Overwrite

• Press 🖅 (Cancel) to cancel restoration.

#### ۲<br/> Settings

Connectivity &

File Backup

12

Backup Memory ( P.13-28)

Restore Memory ( P.13-28)

#### **Mass Storage**

Connect 820SC, Memory Card inserted, to a PC via USB Cable to manage Memory Card files on the PC.



# No calls & No messages



Connect 820SC to PC via USB

#### Use PC to access Memory Card files

#### Mass Storage is unavailable while receiving S! Mail, using Samsung PC Studio, or when My status in S! Friend's Status is Online.

#### Calling and Messaging are unavailable in Mass Storage.

#### **Removing Device**



#### Note

 Never disconnect USB Cable before removing device from PC.

#### **K** Settings

Activate Mass Storage (IPP P.13-27)

#### S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)

Back up 820SC Phonebook entries on Server or synchronize 820SC Phonebook entries with SAB. Restore lost 820SC Phonebook entries from SAB.



- SAB use requires a separate subscription.
- If you should change handsets, select an SAB compatible handset to access SAB entries.

#### Note

 Packet Communication charges apply to connections between 820SC and SAB (Backup, Restore, or Synchronize).

#### **SAB** Precautions

- These items cannot be synchronized with SAB; using Restore for these items will delete them from 820SC:
   Picture
- Ringtone settings, Vibration settings (Voice Call, Video Call, Messages, S! Friend's Status, or S! Circle Talk)
- Blood type
- Hobby
- Select back up/restore timing and sync mode carefully to avoid accidental deletion of entries.
- Delete all 820SC entries then select *Synchronize*, *Sync from client*, or *Backup* to delete all SAB entries.
- Delete all SAB entries then select *Synchronize*, *Sync from server*, or *Restore* to delete all 820SC entries.
- If number of entry items savable on handset varies from SAB, synchronization will reflect lower number.
- Post handset change service continues as follows:

Content		Detail
Soft	Bank 3G Handsets	
	SAB Supported	SAB entries remain.
	SAB Not Supported	SAB service usable and entries remain; handset access unavailable but PC access available.

Content		Detail
V3, V4, V5, V6, V8 Series		
SAB service is automatically canceled and		
	SAB entries are dele	ted.

• When SAB service is cancelled and Phonebook entries on Server are deleted.

#### **Synchronization Modes**

Available synchronization modes are as follows.

Sync Mode	Description
Synchronize	Backs up 820SC entries and updates SAB. <sup>1</sup>
Sync from client	Backs up updated 820SC entries. <sup>2</sup>
Sync from server	Downloads updated SAB entries to 820SC. <sup>3</sup>
Backup	Deletes SAB entries and uploads 820SC entries. <sup>4</sup>
Restore	Deletes all 820SC entries and downloads SAB entries to 820SC (up to 820SC limit) last edited first. <sup>5</sup>

- entries connectivity & File Backup and 820SC dited em are 12
- 1 If 820SC Phonebook entry and SAB entry item are both updated, SAB entry item takes priority.
- 2 Phonebook update information on Server is not applied to the one on 820SC.
- 3 Phonebook update information of 820SC is not applied to the one on Server.

- 4 Be careful that all Phonebook entries on Server is deleted.
- 5 Be careful that all Phonebook entries of 820SC is deleted.
- Slow sync is performed regardless of Sync mode setting when using SAB for the first time or the last synch was not completed correctly by canceling, etc., Slow sync works as the same with Synchronize. View Sync type in Sync log to see if Slow sync was performed.

#### Synchronizing Phonebook

Connect to Phonebook managed on Server and synchronize it with 820SC Phonebook entries.

1

■ → Phonebook → S! Addressbook Back-up → Start sync





S!	Addressbook Back-
1	
2	Sync from client
3	Sync from server
4	Backup
5	Restore
	Select

Synchronize, Sync from client, Sync from server, Back up, or Restore → Yes → (OK) → (OK)

#### Note

 Starting synch connect to network. Packet Communication charges apply. Network connection is automatically disconnected when the synchronization ends.

#### Synchronizing Phonebook Automatically

Setting *Auto sync* to *On* requires Set frequency and Sync mode settings.

#### Setting & Canceling Auto Sync





*On/Off* → *ON* or *OFF* • When selecting *ON*, press  $\blacksquare$  (OK)

#### **Setting Frequency**





To back up once a month

*Every month*  $\rightarrow$  Enter date  $\rightarrow$  Enter time

To back up once a week

*Every week*  $\rightarrow$  Select day  $\rightarrow$  Enter time

To back up once a day

*Every day*  $\rightarrow$  Enter time

To back up 10 minutes after editing Phonebook entries

Every editing (after 10 min)

#### Sync mode



Synchronize, Sync from client, Sync from server, Back up, or Restore → (OK)

#### Advanced

**\** Advanced Settings P.12-16

#### **\** Advanced Settings

#### Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Settings

#### isconnecting Currently Connected Device

 $\fbox{ } \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Connectivity \rightarrow Bluetooth \rightarrow Paired devices \rightarrow Highlight a device \rightarrow \fbox \rightarrow Disconnect$ 

#### Browsing Currently Connected Device

■ → Settings → Connectivity → Bluetooth → Paired devices → Highlight a device →  $\mathbf{Y}$  → Browse device → Approve access on source device

#### Editing Name of Paired Device

 $\begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|c|c|} \hline \blacksquare & \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Connectivity \rightarrow Bluetooth \rightarrow \\ Paired devices \rightarrow & Highlight a device \rightarrow & \hline \blacksquare \rightarrow \\ Rename \rightarrow & Rename paired device \\ \end{array}$ 

#### Authorizing Paired Device

- → Settings → Connectivity → Bluetooth → Paired devices → Highlight a device →  $\mathbf{x}$  → Authorize device of Unauthorize device
- When *Authorize device* is set , the setting turns to *Unauthorized device*

■ → Settings → Connectivity → Bluetooth → Search for devices → Highlight Search new devices →  $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$  → Search setting → Select a search type • Select an item from All, Headset, Mobile phone,

 Select an item from All, Headset, Mobile phone PC/PDA, Printer, or Device address. When selecting Device address, Enter an address. 

#### Deleting Data on Connected Device

■ → Settings → Connectivity → Bluetooth → Paired devices → Highlight a device →  $\boxed{x}$  → Browse device → Approve access on source device →  $\boxed{x}$  → Open ■ To delete a file Highlight a file →  $\boxed{x}$  → Delete → Selected → Yes ■ To delete multiple files Highlight a file →  $\boxed{x}$  → Delete → Multiple → Yes → Check files → [] (Delete) ■ To delete all files Highlight a file →  $\boxed{x}$  → Delete → All → Yes

#### S! Addressbook Back-up

Viewing S! Addressbook Back-up History  $\rightarrow$  Phonebook  $\rightarrow$  S! Addressbook Back-up  $\rightarrow$  Sync log Deleting S! Addressbook Back-up History  $\rightarrow$  Phonebook  $\rightarrow$  S! Addressbook Back-up  $\rightarrow$  Sync log To delete a log Highlight a log  $\rightarrow$   $\bowtie$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow$  Yes To delete all logs  $\checkmark$  (Delete all)  $\rightarrow$  Yes

# **Handset Customization**

Messaging Settings	13-2
Custom Mail Address	13-2
S! Mail & SMS	
S! Mail	13-3
SMS	13-5
Internet Settings	13-5
Yahoo! Keitai	13-5
PC Site Browser	13-6
Media Player Settings	13-7
Music	13-7
Movie	13-7
Mobile Camera Settings	13-8
Camera & Video	13-8
Photo	13-8
Video	13-8
S! Appli Settings	13-9
Digital TV Settings	13-9
TV Alarm	13-9
Data Broadcast	13-10
Display	13-10
Sound	
Touch Key Lock	13-10
Incoming Calls & Alarms	
Auto Power Off	13-11
Phonebook Settings	13-11
Standby Window Settings	13-12
Sounds & Alerts Settings	13-14
Manner Mode Settings	13-15



Display Settings	 	12	3-16
Phone Settings	 	13	3-18
Security Settings	 	13	3-20
Call Settings	 	13	3-21
Mode Settings	 	13	3-26
<b>Connectivity Settings</b>	 	13	3-26
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup>	 	1	3-26
Infrared	 	1	3-27
Mass Storage	 	1	3-27
Network	 	1	3-27
Memory Settings	 	13	3-27

#### **₹** Settings

#### **Messaging Settings**

#### **Custom Mail Address**

Customize or change handset mail address	<ul> <li>➡ Settings → Custom mail address → Follow onscreen instructions</li> <li>Change mail account name (alphanumerics before @). Random alphanumerics set by default.</li> </ul>
S! Mail & SMS Start Here	$\boxtimes \to Settings \to Universal \ settings$
Change font size Default Standard	Font size $\rightarrow$ Large, Standard, Small, or Tiny
Change scroll unit Default Single line	Scroll unit $\rightarrow$ Single line, Half screen, or Whole screen
Request or cancel Delivery Report Default Off	Delivery report $\rightarrow On$ or Off • On: Receive a message confirming successful delivery of a sent message.
Insert or hide Signature Default Off	Signature $\rightarrow$ Auto insert $\rightarrow$ On, New, or Off
Edit Signature	Signature $\rightarrow Edit \rightarrow$ Enter a signature
Show or hide transmission progress bar Default Show	Sending progress settings $\rightarrow$ Sending progress $\rightarrow$ Show of Do not show
Always show or hide send result (progress bar hidden)	Sending progress settings → Sending result notice → With notice, Without notice, or Check every time • Sending result notice is only selectable when Sending progress is set to Do not show.
Set received message notice content or hide notice Default Sender	Message notice → View setting → Sender, Subject, Sender & Subject, or Off • Received message notice scrolls above active function windows.
Select secret folder message notice setting Default Show	Message notice → Secret folder → Enter Phone Password → (OK) → Show or Not show • Not show: Incoming message notice window for messages sorted to secret folders or Message notice does not appear.
Change message list view Default 2 line	Message list view $\rightarrow 2$ line, 1 line (subject), or 1 line (sender)

Change received message view Default Folder view	Received messages view $\rightarrow$ Folder view of List view
Change sent message view Default Folder view	Sent messages view $\rightarrow$ Folder view or List view
Adjust 3D Pictogram auto play setting Default Always	<ul> <li>3D pictograms → 3D Picto. Auto play → Always, Only unread, or Disable</li> <li>Each setting is as follows. Always: Apply 3D Pictogram for all messages Only unread: Apply 3D Pictogram for unread messages only Disable: Disable 3D Pictogram</li> <li>The first time a received message is viewed 3D Picto., Auto play confirmation appears.</li> </ul>
Select 3D Pictogram color settings Default Pattern1	3D pictograms → Color settings → Press $\Box$ to show target pattern → $\blacksquare$ (Select) • In Color settings, press $\boxdot$ (Preview) for current settings.
Select 3D Pictogram display speed Default Standard	3D pictograms $\rightarrow$ Display speed $\rightarrow$ Standard, High, Or Low • In Display speed, press ( (Preview) for current settings.
S! Mail Start Here	$\square \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow S! Mail settings$
Set message sending priority Default Normal	Sending options $\rightarrow$ Priority $\rightarrow$ Urgent, Normal, or Low
Set sent message Mail Service Center expiry Default Maximum	<ul> <li>Sending options → Expiry time → Maximum, 1 hour, 3 hours, 6 hours, 12 hours, 1 day, 3 days, or 1 week</li> <li>When the expiry time has elapsed, S! Mails are automatically deleted from Mail Server.</li> </ul>
Set time to send a message via Mail Service Center Default Immediately	Sending options → Delivery time → Immediately, 1 hour, 3 hours, 6 hours, 12 hours, 1 day, 3 days, or 1 week • When set time has elapsed, Mail Service Center sends S! Mail message.
Set receiving options for S! Mail Default Auto download	<ul> <li>Receiving options → Home auto settings → Auto download, From number only, or Manual retrieval</li> <li>Each setting is as follows.</li> <li>Auto download: Mail Service Center sends complete S! Mail messages automatically From number only: Mail Service Center sends complete S! Mail sent to handset number Manual retrieval: Mail Service Center sends S! Mail Notice; retrieve complete message</li> </ul>

Set receiving options for S! Mail while roaming Default Manual retrieval	Receiving options → Roaming auto settings → Auto download or Manual retrieval • Each setting is as follows. Auto download: Mail Service Center sends complete S! Mail messages automatically Manual retrieval: Mail Service Center sends S! Mail Notice; retrieve complete message
Select reply setting Default Off	<ul> <li>Reply settings → On or Off</li> <li>Each setting is as follows.</li> <li>On: Replies to sent messages are automatically addressed to "Reply to" address</li> <li>Off. Replies to sent messages are addressed to 820SC number/mail address</li> <li>Set address that appears in To: field of replies to messages sent from 820SC.</li> </ul>
Set "reply to" address	"Reply to" address → Phonebook or Enter address • Select Phonebook → select an entry ( $\bigcirc$ P.2-21) → highlight number or address → (Select). • Alternatively, select Enter address and enter an address.
Show or hide emotion in received Feeling Mail Notification Default On	Link to feeling $\rightarrow$ Idle screen Info. $\rightarrow$ On of Off
Set Feeling Mail vibration Default On	Link to feeling $\rightarrow$ Vibration pattern $\rightarrow$ On or Off
Set whether to sound 820SC when Feeling Mail arrives Default On	Link to feeling $\rightarrow$ Ringtone $\rightarrow$ On/Off $\rightarrow$ On or Off
Set Feeling Mail ringtone	Link to feeling $\rightarrow$ Ringtone $\rightarrow$ Assign tone $\rightarrow$ Select Happy/Glad, OK/Good, Sad/Sorry, NG/Bad, or Important/Notice $\rightarrow$ Select folder $\rightarrow$ Select file
Set Feeling Mail ringtone duration Default 5 seconds	Link to feeling $\rightarrow$ Ringtone $\rightarrow$ Duration $\rightarrow$ Enter time
Set attached image appearance Default Normal	Picture appearance $\rightarrow$ Normal or Fit to screen
Set attached image auto playback Default On	Auto play file $\rightarrow$ Picture $\rightarrow$ On or Off
Set attached sound auto playback Default Off	Auto play file $\rightarrow$ Sound $\rightarrow$ On or Off

SMS Start Here	$\boxtimes \to Settings \to SMS \ settings$
Set Mail Service Center message expiry time Default None	Expiry time → None, 1 hour, 6 hours, 12 hours, 1 day, or 3 days • Upon expiry Mail Service Center SMS messages are automatically deleted.
Set Message Center Number         Default         Setting 1         +819066519300	Message center $\rightarrow$ Select an item
Edit Message Center Number Default +819066519300	Message center $\rightarrow$ Highlight item $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Edit) $\rightarrow$ Edit Message center number
Change character code Default Unicode	<i>Char-code</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Unicode</i> or <i>GSM</i> 7 <i>bit</i>

#### **Internet Settings**

Yahoo! Keitai Start Here	■ → Yahoo! Keitai → Yahoo! Keitai browser settings
Change page font size Default Standard	Font size $\rightarrow$ Small, Standard, or Large
Set page scroll unit Default Single line	Scroll unit → Single line, Half screen, or Whole screen
Show or hide page images Default Show images	Downloads → Images → Show images or Do not show • Select Do not show to help reduce download time.
Play or mute page sounds Default Play sounds	Downloads → $Sounds$ → $Play$ sounds or $Do$ not $play• Select Do not play to help reduce download time.$
Delete cache/Cookie/certificates	Memory manager $\rightarrow$ Clear cache, Delete cookies, or Delete certificates $\rightarrow$ Yes
Show or hide Manufacture Number Default Off	Security $\rightarrow$ Manufacture number $\rightarrow$ On or Off • On: 820SC automatically sends Manufacture Number to websites upon request as user ID.
Send or hide Referer Default Send	Security $\rightarrow$ Send referer $\rightarrow$ Send of Not send
Select Cookie setting Default Enabled	Security $\rightarrow$ Cookies $\rightarrow$ Enabled, Disable, or Confirm
Select Script setting Default Ask NW access	Security $\rightarrow$ Script $\rightarrow$ On, Ask NW access, Confirm, or Off
Confirm Root Certificate	Security $\rightarrow$ Root certificates $\rightarrow$ Select a certificate
Set Certificate retention period Default Per browsing	Security $\rightarrow$ Certificate retention $\rightarrow$ Per browsing, On, or Off

Initialize Browser	<i>Initialized browser</i> $\rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ <i>Yes</i>
Reset settings	Reset settings $\rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password $\rightarrow$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ Yes
PC Site Browser Start Here	$\square \rightarrow Yahoo! Keitai \rightarrow PC site browser \rightarrow PC site browser settings$
Change page font size Default Standard	Font size $\rightarrow$ Small, Standard, or Large
Set page scroll unit Default Single line	Scroll unit $\rightarrow$ Single line, Half screen, or Whole screen
Show or hide page images Default Show images	Downloads → Images → Show images or Do not show • Select Do not show to help reduce download time.
Play or mute page sounds Default Play sounds	Downloads → $Sounds$ → $Play$ sounds or $Do$ not $play• Select Do not play to help reduce download time.$
Delete cache/Cookie/certificates	Memory manager $\rightarrow$ Clear cache, Delete cookies, or Delete certificates $\rightarrow$ Yes
Show or hide Manufacture Number Default Off	Security $\rightarrow$ Manufacture number $\rightarrow$ On or Off • On: 820SC automatically sends Manufacture Number to websites upon request as user ID.
Send or hide Referer Default Send	Security $\rightarrow$ Send referer $\rightarrow$ Send or Not send
Select Cookie setting Default Enabled	Security $\rightarrow$ Cookies $\rightarrow$ Enabled, Disable, or Confirm
Select Script setting Default On	Security $\rightarrow$ Script $\rightarrow$ On, Ask NW access, Confirm, or Off
Confirm Root Certificate	Security $\rightarrow$ Root certificates $\rightarrow$ Select a certificate
Set Certificate retention period <b>Default</b> Per browsing	Security $\rightarrow$ Certificate retention $\rightarrow$ Per browsing, On, or Off
Show or hide warning Default Activate PC site browser: On, Switch to Yahoo! Keitai: On	Warning messages → Activate PC site browser or Switch to Yahoo! Keitai → On or Off • Show or hide PC Site Browser activation, or Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser switching warning.
Initialize Browser	Initialized browser $\rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password $\rightarrow$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ Yes
Reset settings	Reset settings $\rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password $\rightarrow \square$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ Yes

13-6

#### Media Player Settings

Music Start Here	$\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Music$
Set Repeat mode Default Off	Repeat mode → One, Shuffle (with repeat), Shuffle (without repeat), All, or Off • Play a single track repeatedly, all music, or all files in Playlist randomly or repeatedly.
Set Equalizer Default Normal	<i>Equalizer</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Normal, Club, Live, Rock, Soft</i> , or <i>Soft rock</i> $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (OK) • Select Equalizer only when using Stereo Earphone Microphone or Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> headphones.
Adjust Tone volume level         Default         70	<i>Tone volume</i> $\rightarrow$ Use $[]{ }$ to adjust volume $\rightarrow$ $[]{ }$ (Save)
Set Music sub folders Default Recent music, Most played music, Artist	Music menu → Check Recent music, Most played music, Artist, Album, or Genre → ⊠ (Save) • Select folders to appear in Music.
Movie Start Here	$\blacksquare \rightarrow Media \ Player \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Movie$
Set Repeat mode Default Off	Repeat mode → One, Shuffle (with repeat), Shuffle (without repeat), All, or Off • Play a single file repeatedly, all videos, or all files in Playlist randomly or repeatedly.
Adjust Tone volume level Default 70	<i>Tone volume</i> $\rightarrow$ Use $[]{}$ to adjust volume $\rightarrow$ $[]{}$ (Save)
Set Backlight Default Normal	Backlight → Normal, Always On, or Always Off
Set Video sub folders Default Recent video, Most played video	<i>Video menu</i> → Check <i>Recent video</i> or <i>Most played video</i> → $\boxdot$ (Save) • Select folders to appear in <i>Video</i> .
Show or hide Video thumbnails Default On	<i>Video thumbnail display</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Access or ignore linked information Default On	Web link $\rightarrow$ On or Off • On: After playing a file with linked info, access confirmation appears.

#### **Mobile Camera Settings**

Camera & Video	tart Here	(2+ seconds) $\rightarrow \mathbf{x}_{7} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow General$
Show or hide Indicators	Default On	Indicators $\rightarrow On$ or Off • Set to On to show indicators.
Activate or cancel Auto Focus	Default On	Auto focus $\rightarrow On$ or $Off$
Activate or cancel Auto Save	Default Off	Auto Save $\rightarrow$ On or Off • On: Images or video is automatically saved after capturing or recording.
Show or hide menu item guidance	Default On	$Help \rightarrow On \text{ or } Off$ • Set to $On$ to show help for the selected menu.
Photo S	tart Here	(2+ seconds) $\rightarrow \mathbf{x} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Photo$
Select Quality Defa	ult Normal	Quality $\rightarrow$ Superfine, Fine, Normal, or Economy
Set ISO De	fault Auto	$ISO \rightarrow Auto, 100, 200, \text{ or } 400$
Set Exposure metering Defa	ult Normal	Exposure metering $\rightarrow$ Normal, or Spot
Set save location Def	ault Phone	Save to → Phone, Memory card, Digital camera, or Ask each time • Digital Camera is unavailable for 320x240 or 240x320 images; save to Memory Card. • The save location when Memory Card is inserted is set. • If Memory Card is not inserted, images are automatically saved to 820SC.
Show or hide Guideline	Default Off	<i>Guideline</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Set Shutter sound Defau	It Pattern1	Shutter sound $\rightarrow$ Pattern1, Pattern2, or Pattern3
Video Si	tart Here	$\textcircled{\textbf{0}} (2+ \text{ seconds}) \rightarrow \textcircled{\textbf{r}} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Video$
Select Quality Defaul	t Economy	Quality $\rightarrow$ Fine, Normal, or Economy
Set save location Def	ault Phone	Save to → Phone or Memory card • When Memory Card is not inserted, images are automatically saved to 820SC.

#### S! Appli Settings Start Here $\blacksquare \rightarrow S! Appli \rightarrow Settings$

Adjust volume Default Level 3	<i>Volume</i> → Use $\mathbf{P}$ to adjust volume → <b>(</b> $\mathbf{O}$ (OK) • While Manner mode is active, Manner mode setting is applied.
Adjust Backlight setting Default Normal settings	Backlight → Always On, Always Off, or Normal settings • Normal settings: Backlight setting in Display settings (�P.13-16) applies.
Activate or cancel Vibration while S! Appli is in use Default On	<i>Vibration</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>
Sort S! Appli Default By date	S! Appli list sort $\rightarrow$ By date, By name, or By vendor
Restore S! Appli settings to defaults	Reset S! Appli settings $\rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ Yes
Confirm Java Root Certificate	Java root certificate $\rightarrow$ Select a certificate

#### **Digital TV Settings**

TV Alarm	Start Here	$\textcircled{\texttt{b}} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow TV A larm$
Set alert tone	Default Boarding School.mmf	Alert tone $\rightarrow$ Select a save location $\rightarrow$ Highlight a file $\rightarrow \boxtimes$ (Play) $\rightarrow \mathbf{x}$ ? (Select)
Set volume	Default Level 4	$Volume \rightarrow$ Use $\checkmark$ to adjust volume $\rightarrow \bowtie$ (Play) $\rightarrow$ $\blacksquare$ (Select)
Set vibration	Default Off	<i>Vibration</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Off</i> or <i>Pattern 1</i> to <i>Pattern 5</i> $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Play) $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (Select)
Set notification light	Default Off	$Light \rightarrow On \text{ or } Off$
Set reminder time	Default 1 minute before	Reminder timer $\rightarrow 1$ minute before, 3 minute before, or 5 minute before
Set alarm duration	Default 10 secs	Duration $\rightarrow 10$ secs, 20 secs, or 30 secs

Data Broadcast Start Here	$\textcircled{ imes}$ $\rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow$ Set broadcast data
Set recording type Default Image + Text	Set recording → Image + Text or Image only
Select save location Default Phone	Image location $\rightarrow$ Phone or Memory card
Select connection notification type Default Check each time	Notify connection $\rightarrow On$ , Off, or Check each time
Show or hide Manufacture Number Default Off	Manufacture number $\rightarrow On$ or $Off$
Delete station data	Delete station data $\rightarrow$ Select a station $\rightarrow$ Highlight an item to delete $\rightarrow \mathbf{v} \rightarrow Delete$ or Delete All • When All is selected, enter Phone Password.
Display	
Adjust display brightness Default Level 3	( $\textcircled{m}$ ) → Settings → Display brightness → Use $\blacksquare$ to adjust brightness → $\blacksquare$ (Select)
Sound Start Here	$\textcircled{\texttt{m}} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Sound$
Adjust sound quality Default Normal	Sound mode → Normal, Music, News, Movie, or Sports
Select language Default Main	Sound language $\rightarrow$ Main, Sub, or Main + Sub
Select output device Default Earphone	Sound output $\rightarrow$ Earphone of Loud speaker
Touch Key Lock Start Here	$\textcircled{\texttt{m}} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Touch \ key \ lock$
Enable Touch Key Lock Default After 15 sec	Timing $\rightarrow$ Off, After 15 sec, After 30 sec, or After 1 min • Lock Touch Key after set time since last used.
Set popup message Default Off	$Popup \rightarrow On$ or $Off$ • When $On$ is set, show popup message for Touch Key use.

Incoming Calls & Alarms Start Here	$\textcircled{\textcircled{\baselineskip}{1.5}} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Calls \ \& \ Alarms$	
Handle Incoming Calls & Alarms Default Voice call/Video call/S! Circle Talk: Call priority, Alarms: Alarm priority	<ul> <li>Voice call, Video call, or S! Circle Talk → Call priority or Notice a call Alarms → Alarm priority of Alarm notice</li> <li>When Call priority or Alarm priority is set, incoming call window or alarm window appears (TV reception paused).</li> <li>When Notice a call or Alarm notice is set, a notification appears on top of Display and handset vibrates (TV reception continues). Press  to accept a call; press  (Stop) to reject/end a call.</li> </ul>	
Auto Power Off Start Here	$\textcircled{m} \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Auto \ power \ off$	
End TV after set duration Default Off	Auto power of $f \rightarrow Off$ , 10 min, 30 min, 60 min, or 120 min	
End TV when closed Default On	Phone closing $\rightarrow$ Call priority or Notice a call	
<b>Phonebook Settings</b> Start Here $\blacksquare \rightarrow Phonebook \rightarrow Settings$		
Select Phonebook Save Location Default Phone	Save settings $\rightarrow$ Phone, USIM, or Ask each time	
	• Ask each time: A confirmation appears each time a new entry is saved.	
Change Phonebook preference (Phone/USIM) Default Phone	Change view $\rightarrow$ Phone or USIM	
Change Search Method Default A-ka-sa-ta-na	Search method $\rightarrow$ A-ka-sa-ta-na, Reading, or Group	
Backup Phonebook entries	Backup $\rightarrow$ Copy all to USIM or Copy all from USIM $\rightarrow$ Yes	
Change Phonebook font size Default Standard	Font size $\rightarrow$ Large, Standard, or Small	

#### **Standby Window Settings Start Here** $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Standby window$

Show or hide Standby Window Default On (manually)	$On/Off \rightarrow On$ (always), $On$ (manually), or $Off$
Set/cancel Shortcut mode Default On	Shortcut $\rightarrow$ Display On/Off $\rightarrow$ On or Off
Add functions to Shortcut	Shortcut $\rightarrow$ Set shortcut $\rightarrow$ Add $\rightarrow$ Select an item $\rightarrow$ Applications $\rightarrow$ Highlight item $\rightarrow \boxtimes$ (Assign)
Add Yahoo! Keitai bookmark to Shortcut	Shortcut $\rightarrow$ Set shortcut $\rightarrow$ Add $\rightarrow$ Select an item $\rightarrow$ Bookmarks $\rightarrow$ Select Yahoo! Keitai bookmark $\rightarrow$ Select an icon
Cancel Shortcut mode	Shortcut $\rightarrow$ Set shortcut $\rightarrow$ Remove $\rightarrow$ Select item to remove
Add S! Friend's Status member to the list in Shortcut mode	Shortcut $\rightarrow$ Add member $\rightarrow$ Add $\rightarrow$ Select an item $\rightarrow$ From S! Friend's Status $\rightarrow$ Select a member to add
Add S! Friend's Status member from Phonebook in Shortcut mode	Shortcut $\rightarrow$ Add member $\rightarrow$ Add $\rightarrow$ Select an item $\rightarrow$ From phone book $\rightarrow$ Search Phonebook and select entry ( $\bigcirc$ P.2-21)
Cancel S! Friend's Status member in Shortcut mode	Shortcut $\rightarrow$ Add member $\rightarrow$ Remove $\rightarrow$ Select member to remove
Add contents in Shortcut mode	Shortcut $\rightarrow$ Add content $\rightarrow$ Add content $\rightarrow$ Select an item and save
Remove content from Shortcut mode	Shortcut $\rightarrow$ Add content $\rightarrow$ Remove content $\rightarrow$ Highlight content $\rightarrow \boxtimes$ (Delete) $\rightarrow$ Yes • To remove multiple contents, select Remove content $\rightarrow \boxdot \rightarrow$ Delete $\rightarrow$ Multiple or All ( $\textcircled{O}$ P.1-23 Removing S! Quick News Content).
Add S! Loop topic in Shortcut mode	Shortcut $\rightarrow$ Add content $\rightarrow$ Add topic $\rightarrow$ Add a topic
Remove S! Loop topic from Shortcut mode	Shortcut → Add content → Remove topic → Highlight topic → 🖾 (Delete) → Yes • To remove multiple topics, select Remove topic → 🗹 → Delete → Multiple or All (●P.1-23 Removing S! Loop).
Change template for Shortcut mode Default News (Only text)	Shortcut $\rightarrow$ Change templates $\rightarrow$ Select a template
Change marquee speed for news Default Normal	Shortcut $\rightarrow$ Display settings $\rightarrow$ Marquee speed $\rightarrow$ Fast, Normal, or Slow
Change display type for news Default Unread&Read	Shortcut $\rightarrow$ Display settings $\rightarrow$ Unread/Read setting $\rightarrow$ Unread&Read of Only unread

Refresh newsflash Default Off	Shortcut $\rightarrow$ Display settings $\rightarrow$ Auto refresh setting $\rightarrow$ S! Quick News $\rightarrow$ Flash news $\rightarrow$ $\blacksquare$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ 1 hour, 2 hours, 4 hours, 8 hours, or Off
Refresh general contents in Shortcut mode Default Off	Shortcut $\rightarrow$ Display settings $\rightarrow$ Auto refresh setting $\rightarrow$ S! Quick News $\rightarrow$ General $\rightarrow$ $\blacksquare$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ On or Off
Select S! Loop auto refresh setting Default Off	Shortcut $\rightarrow$ Display settings $\rightarrow$ Auto refresh setting $\rightarrow$ S! Loop $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ On or Off
Set/cancel News mode Default On	News headline $\rightarrow$ Display On/Off $\rightarrow$ On or Off
Add News mode contents	<i>News headline</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Add content</i> $\rightarrow$ Select content and save
Remove News mode contents	<i>News headline</i> → <i>Remove content</i> → Highlight content → 🖾 (Delete) → <i>Yes</i> • To remove multiple contents, select <i>Remove content</i> → 🐨 → <i>Delete</i> → <i>Multiple</i> or <i>All</i> ( $\bigcirc$ P.1-23 Removing News Content).
Refresh newsflash in News mode Default Off	News headline $\rightarrow$ Auto refresh $\rightarrow$ Quick News $\rightarrow$ Flash news $\rightarrow$ $\blacksquare$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ 1 hour, 2 hours, 4 hours, 6 hours, or Off
Refresh general contents in News mode Default Off	News headline $\rightarrow$ Auto refresh $\rightarrow$ Quick News $\rightarrow$ General $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ On or Off
Refresh S! Loop in News mode Default Off	<i>News headline</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Auto refresh</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>S</i> ! <i>Loop</i> $\rightarrow$ $\blacksquare$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Show or hide image in News mode Default On	News headline $\rightarrow$ Show image $\rightarrow$ On or Off
Set/cancel Communication mode Default On	Communication $\rightarrow$ Display On/Off $\rightarrow$ On or Off
Add S! Friend's Status members from list	Communication $\rightarrow$ Add member $\rightarrow$ Select an item $\rightarrow$ From S! Friend's Status $\rightarrow$ Select member
Add S! Friend's Status members from Phonebook	Communication $\rightarrow$ Add member $\rightarrow$ Select an item $\rightarrow$ From phone book $\rightarrow$ Search Phonebook and select an entry ( $\bigcirc$ P.2-21)
Remove S! Friend's Status members	Communication $\rightarrow$ Remove member $\rightarrow$ Select member to remove

#### Sounds & Alerts Settings Start Here $\blacksquare$ Settings $\rightarrow$ Sounds & Alerts

Adjust volume Default Voice call/Video call/Message/S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk/Missed call notification/S! Quick News/Delivery Report/Phone sounds: Level 3, S! Quick News: Off	Volume → Voice call, Video call, Message, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Missed call notification, S! Quick News, Delivery report, or Phone sounds → Adjust volume → (Play) → (Select) • There is no Play option to sample Phone sounds.
Set Ringtone for Voice Call/Video Call/S! Circle Talk Default Voice call: Right Here.mmf, Video call: Revelation.mmf, S! Circle Talk: Sunny day.mp4	<i>Ringtone</i> → <i>Voice call, Video call,</i> or <i>S</i> ! <i>Circle Talk</i> → Select save location for a file → Highlight a file → $\square$ (Play) → $\boxed{r}$ (Select)
Set ringtone other than Voice Call Default Sunny day.mp4	$\begin{array}{l} Ringtone \rightarrow Message, S! \ Friend's \ Status, Missed \ call \ notification, S! \ Quick \ News, \ or \\ Delivery \ report \rightarrow Assign \ tone \rightarrow Select \ save \ location \ for \ a \ file \rightarrow Highlight \ a \ file \rightarrow \boxdot (Play) \\ \rightarrow \ \ragged \ Select) \end{array}$
Set ringtone duration other than Voice Call Default 5 Seconds	Ringtone $\rightarrow$ Message, S! Friend's Status, Missed call notification, S! Quick News, or Delivery report $\rightarrow$ Duration $\rightarrow$ Enter duration
Set Vibration Default Off	Vibration → Voice call, Video call, Message, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Missed call notification, S! Quick News, or Delivery report → Off or Pattern 1 to Pattern $5 \rightarrow \square$ (Play) → $\blacksquare$ (Select)
Set Keypad tones Default Xylophone	Phone sounds $\rightarrow$ Keypad tones $\rightarrow$ Beep, Xylophone, or Off
Set system sounds for S! Circle Talk Default Xylophone	Phone sounds $\rightarrow$ S! Circle Talk $\rightarrow$ Animal, Bird, Fantasy, Game, Joke, Xylophone, or Pl
Set system sounds Default Several tones on	Phone sounds $\rightarrow$ System sounds $\rightarrow$ All, Popup box alerts, Minute minder, Call connect tone, Call end tone, Power on, Power off, Open/Close folder, or Alerts on call $\rightarrow \square$ (Save)
Illuminate External Light for incoming transmissions Default On	External light $\rightarrow$ Incoming $\rightarrow$ Voice call, Video call, Message, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, or Missed call notification $\rightarrow$ On or Off
Illuminate External Light for missed calls Default On	External light $\rightarrow$ Notification $\rightarrow$ Missed call, Message, Answering machine, S! Friend's Status, or Missed call notification $\rightarrow$ On or Off

#### Manner Mode Settings Start Here $\blacksquare \rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow$ Manner mode settings

Set vibration Default Voice call/Video call/Message/S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk/Missed call notification/Delivery Report: Pattern 1, S! Quick News: Off	Vibration → Voice call, Video call, Message, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Missed call notification, S! Quick News, of Delivery report → $O$ ff of Pattern 1 to Pattern 5 → 🖾 (Play) → $\blacksquare$ (Select)
Set system sounds Default Alerts on call	System sounds $\rightarrow$ Check All, Minute minder, Call connect tone, Call end tone, or Alerts on call $\rightarrow \boxtimes$ (Save)
Illuminate External Light for incoming transmissions Default On	External light $\rightarrow$ Incoming $\rightarrow$ Voice call, Video call, Message, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, or Missed call notification $\rightarrow$ On or Off
Notify missed calls with external light Default On	External light $\rightarrow$ Notification $\rightarrow$ Missed call, Message, Answering machine, S! Friend's Status, or Missed call notification $\rightarrow$ On or Off
Set Answering Machine Default On	Answering machine $\rightarrow On$ or $Off$

• Changes to Manner mode settings apply when Manner is selected in Mode setting.

#### **Display Settings Start Here** $\blacksquare \rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow$ Display settings

Change Wallpaper Default Preset pictures	$Wallpaper → (\bigcirc P.2-6 Wallpaper 2)$
Set Menu style Default Magnifying Glass	Main menu style → Magnifying Glass, Panorama world, or Vivid Pixel • Change menu appearance (except Yahoo! Keitai menu).
Set Standby Display appearance Default Off	Clock/Calendar → Select Digital clock, Dual clock, Calendar (1 month), Calendar (2 month), Today, or Off, and edit as required → $\bigcirc$ (0K) • To set clock type, select Digital clock → use $\bigcirc$ to select clock type → $\bigcirc$ (0K). • Dual clock: 2 clocks appear in Standby. Local time (set in Date & Time) appears on top. To set clock below it, Dual clock → highlight Time zone field → use $\bigcirc$ to specify an area → highlight Daylight saving field to check as required → press $\boxdot$ (0K).
Set Font type Default Font 1	Font $\rightarrow$ Font type $\rightarrow$ Font 1 or Font 2
Change font size for menu list Default Large	Font $\rightarrow$ Font size $\rightarrow$ List font $\rightarrow$ Large or Small
Change font size for browser Default Standard	Font $\rightarrow$ Font size $\rightarrow$ Browser $\rightarrow$ Large, Standard, or Small
Change font size for Phonebook menu Default Standard	Font $\rightarrow$ Font size $\rightarrow$ Phonebook $\rightarrow$ Large, Standard, or Small
Change font size for text entry window Default Standard	Font $\rightarrow$ Font size $\rightarrow$ Editor $\rightarrow$ Large, Standard, or Small
Change Message text font size Default Standard	Font $\rightarrow$ Font size $\rightarrow$ Messages $\rightarrow$ Large, Standard, Small, or Tiny
Set S! Familiar Usability (Japanese)	S! Familiar Usability $\rightarrow$ Download S! Familiar Usability $\rightarrow$ Follow onscreen instructions
Adjust Display brightness Default 3	$Backlight \rightarrow Brightness \rightarrow$ Use $\mathbf{P}$ to adjust brightness $\rightarrow \mathbf{\Box}$ (OK)
Set Backlight time Default On: 15 seconds, Dim: 15 seconds	$Backlight \rightarrow Backlight time \rightarrow$ Select On field $\rightarrow Off$ , 5 seconds, 10 seconds, 15 seconds, 30 seconds, or 1 minute $\rightarrow$ Select Dim field $\rightarrow$ 5 seconds, 10 seconds, 15 seconds, 30 seconds, or 1 minute $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Save)         • When Backlight time is set to $Off$ , Display becomes dim.         • Display becomes dimmer when Backlight time elapses and turns off when Dim time elapses.
Change Sub display Cover design Default Preset pictures	Sub display $\rightarrow$ Cover design $\rightarrow$ Select file location $\rightarrow$ Select a file $\rightarrow$ Use $\clubsuit$ to adjust position $\rightarrow$ Use $\boxdot$ (Zoom out) or $\checkmark$ (Zoom in) to adjust size $\rightarrow$ $\blacksquare$ (Crop) $\rightarrow$ $\blacksquare$ (Set)

Set Date/Title Default Date	Sub display $\rightarrow$ Date/Title $\rightarrow$ Date or Title $\rightarrow$ Use $\square$ to select area $\rightarrow$ $\blacksquare$ (OK) • Press $\square$ (Edit) to enter text for Title.
Set Digital clock display Default Normal	Sub display → Digital clock display → Always On or Normal • Set Always On to show clock and indicator.
Set Popup menu Default Off	<ul> <li>Popup menu → On or Off</li> <li>Set whether to open a sub menu in Popup window when a menu item is highlighted.</li> <li>When a menu item with no sub menu is highlighted, Popup window does not appear. Also, Popup window for Alarms in Tool menu does not appear.</li> </ul>
Set Dialing window font type Default Font type: Normal	<i>Dialling display</i> → <i>Font type</i> → Use □ to change the type → □ (OK) • When <i>Normal</i> or <i>Serif</i> is selected, font size, color, and backlight color can also be changed.
Set Dialing window font size Default Standard	<i>Dialling display</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Font size</i> $\rightarrow$ Use $\square$ to change the size $\rightarrow$ $\square$ (OK)
Set Dialing window font color Default Basic	<i>Dialling display</i> → <i>Font color</i> → Use $\frown$ to change setting → Use $\frown$ to highlight Color field → Use $\frown$ to change color (only when <i>Monochrome</i> is selected) → $\frown$ (OK)
Set Dialing window background color	$Dialling display \rightarrow Background color \rightarrow Use$ $\Box$ to change color $\rightarrow \Box$ (OK)
Set Operator name Default Off	$Operator name \rightarrow On \text{ or } Off$

#### **Phone Settings Start Here** $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Phone settings$

Change user interface language Default 日本語	言語選択→Automatic, 日本語, English, or 한국어
Set Time zone updating Default Prompt first	Date & Time → Select Time zone updating field → Manual only, Prompt first, or Automatic         → ● (Select) → 図 (Save)         • Automatic: A confirmation appears. Choose Yes to restart 820SC.         • Time zone updating is disabled even when the setting is changed.
Change Home zone Default GMT+09:00	<i>Date &amp; Time</i> → Select Home zone field → Use $\frown$ to specify an area → $\bigcirc$ (OK) → $\boxdot$ (Save) • Select the zone closest to your locality. Complete this setting before selecting <i>Dual clock</i> .
Set Daylight saving Default Unchecked	$Date \ \& \ Time \rightarrow Select \ Home \ zone \ field \rightarrow Check \ Daylight \ saving \rightarrow \boxdot (Select) \rightarrow \boxdot (Save)$
Set time	<i>Date &amp; Time</i> → Highlight Time field → Enter time → $\square$ (Save) • Some functions are disabled when time is not set.
Set AM/PM (when Time format is set to 12H)	<i>Date &amp; Time</i> $\rightarrow$ Highlight Time field $\rightarrow$ Use $\square$ to move cursor to $AM$ or $PM \rightarrow$ Use $\square$ to toggle setting $\rightarrow \square$ (Save)
Set date	Date & Time → Highlight Date field → Enter date → $\boxdot$ (Save) • Some functions are disabled until date is set.
Change Time format Default 24H	<i>Date &amp; Time</i> $\rightarrow$ Select Time format field $\rightarrow 12H$ or $24H \rightarrow \boxtimes$ (Save)
Change Date format Default YYYY/MM/DD	<i>Date &amp; Time</i> → Highlight Date format field → <i>DD/MM/YYYY</i> , <i>MM/DD/YYYY</i> , <i>YYYY/DD/MM</i> , or <i>YYYY/MM/DD</i> → 🖾 (Save)
Activate or cancel S! Familiar Input (Japanese) Default Off	<ul> <li>S! Familiar Input → Off, 603T, 810SH, A5509T, N901iC, P901i, or V603SH</li> <li>Change text entry to mimic that of selected handset model; may disable some entry functions.</li> <li>Highlight a model and press <a href="#residual">(Preview)</a> to confirm text entry operations.</li> </ul>
Save entries to User's Dictionary	User's dictionary $\rightarrow$ New entry $\rightarrow$ Select Word field $\rightarrow$ Enter word or sentence $\rightarrow$ Select Reading field $\rightarrow$ Enter reading $\rightarrow \square$ (Save)
Edit User's Dictionary entries	User's dictionary $\rightarrow$ Edit entry $\rightarrow$ Select entry to edit $\rightarrow$ Edit word or reading $\rightarrow \square$ (Save)

Delete User's Dictionary entries	<i>User's dictionary</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Delete all</i> $\rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password $\rightarrow$ $\blacksquare$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ <i>Yes</i>
Reset entry history to default	User's dictionary $\rightarrow$ Reset learning $\rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password $\rightarrow$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ Yes • Previous Kanji conversions appear first for predicted/conversion alternatives. This action clears conversion history.
Activate or cancel Simple Search Default Off	Simple search $\rightarrow$ On or Off • On: In Standby, press keys assigned to characters used in Phonebook entry Readings.
Set Side Keys to activate Reject Call or mute ringer Default Silence	Side key $\rightarrow$ Reject or Silence • Set handset action when $\widehat{\blacksquare}$ or $\bigtriangledown$ is pressed for 1+ seconds during incoming transmission.
Set Any key answer Default Off	Any key answer $\rightarrow On$ or $Off$ • Set to $On$ to press any key except $\square$ , $\blacksquare$ , $[x]$ , $[x]$ , $[x]$ , $[b]$ , and $[c]$ to answer a call.
Activate or cancel 820SC open-to-answer calls function Default Off	Active folder $\rightarrow On \text{ or } Off$
Set function to activate automatically in Viewer Position Default TV	Auto active $\rightarrow$ TV, Camera, or Off • In Standby, turn 820SC into Viewer Position to activate TV or Camera automatically.
Set Keypad Light illumination mode Default Normal mode	Keypad light → Normal mode or Saving mode → Starting time field → Enter time → Ending time field → Enter time → Image (Save)         • Normal mode: Keypad Light illuminates for Backlight Time duration.         • Saving mode: Keypad Light turns off after set duration.

## Security Settings Start Here $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security$

Activate or cancel Phone Lock Default Off	Phone $lock \rightarrow On$ or $Off \rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (OK)
Activate or cancel Password Lock Default Off	<i>Password lock</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> → Enter Phone Password → $\blacksquare$ (OK)
Activate or cancel USIM Lock Default Off	$USIM \ lock \rightarrow On \ or \ Off \rightarrow Enter \ USIM \ password (4 to 8 digits) \rightarrow \bullet (OK) \rightarrow Enter \ USIM \ password \ again \ as required \rightarrow \bullet (OK)$
Activate or cancel Facial Recognition Default Off	Facial recognition $\rightarrow On/Off \rightarrow On$ or $Off \rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (OK)
Show or hide Guidance Default Preview	Facial recognition $\rightarrow$ Guidance $\rightarrow$ Off or Preview
Set Security Level Default Normal	Facial recognition $\rightarrow$ Security level $\rightarrow$ High, Normal, or Low
Save Facial Recognition User Default Empty	Facial recognition $\rightarrow$ User registration $\rightarrow$ User 1 to User 5 $\rightarrow$ Face image $\rightarrow$ Highlightimage 1 to 5 $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Capture) $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Capture) $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Save) $\rightarrow$ Yes $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (OK) $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ User name $\rightarrow$ Enter name $\rightarrow$ Riddle $\rightarrow$ Enter question $\rightarrow$ Answer $\rightarrow$ Enter answer• If Facial recognition is Off, activation confirmation appears after saving image. Choose Yes to activate.
Activate or cancel Application Lock Default Unlock all	Application lock $\rightarrow$ Check All, Phonebook, Calendar, Messages, Call log, or Data Folder $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Save) $\rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (OK)
Activate or cancel Secret mode Default Hide	Secret mode $\rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password $\rightarrow \square$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ Show or Hide
Create or cancel Secret folders in Data Folder Default Hide	Secret data folder $\rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password $\rightarrow$ $\blacksquare$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ Show or Hide
Delete Phonebook entries, messages, etc.	Reset $\rightarrow$ All reset $\rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password $\rightarrow$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ Yes
Restore Settings to default values	Reset $\rightarrow$ Reset settings $\rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ Yes
Activate or cancel PIN Certification Default Off	$PIN \ certification \rightarrow On \ or \ Off \rightarrow Enter \ PIN \rightarrow \ \blacksquare \ (OK)$
Change PIN	<i>Change PIN</i> → Enter current PIN → $\blacksquare$ (OK) → Enter new PIN → $\blacksquare$ (OK) → Enter new PIN again → $\blacksquare$ (OK)
Change PIN2	<i>Change PIN2</i> → Enter current PIN2 → $\blacksquare$ (OK) → Enter new PIN2 → $\blacksquare$ (OK) → Enter new PIN2 again → $\blacksquare$ (OK)

13-20

Change Phone Password Default	9999	<i>Change password</i> → Enter current password → $\blacksquare$ (OK) → Enter new password → $\blacksquare$ (OK) → Enter new password again → $\blacksquare$ (OK)
Set IP service setting Defau	<b>It</b> Off	<i>IP service setting</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Activate Mobile Tracker Defau	alt Off	$Mobile tracker \to Enter$ Phone Password $\to \blacksquare$ (OK) $\to$ Select Activation field $\to On \to$ Select         Recipients field $\to$ Select To field $\to$ Enter a recipient $\to \boxdot$ (Save) $\to$ Select Sender field $\to$ Enter         sender name $\to \boxdot$ (Save) $\to$ Confirm entries $\to \blacksquare$ (Agree) or $\heartsuit$ (Reject)

#### **Call Settings Start Here** $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Call settings$

Forward all calls to Voice Mail (820SC does not ring)	Optional services $\rightarrow$ Voice mail/Call forwarding $\rightarrow$ Voice mail on $\rightarrow$ Always(0 sec.)
Forward unanswered calls to Voice Mail (specify ring time)	Optional services $\rightarrow$ Voice mail/Call forwarding $\rightarrow$ Voice mail on $\rightarrow$ No reply(5 to 30 sec.) $\rightarrow$ 5 seconds, 10 seconds, 15 seconds, 20 seconds, 25 seconds, or 30 seconds
Activate and set Forwarding	Optional services $\rightarrow$ Voice mail/Call forwarding $\rightarrow$ Call forwarding on $\rightarrow$ Voice/Video call, Voice call, or Video call $\rightarrow$ Always(0 sec.) or No reply(5 to 30 sec.) $\rightarrow$ Last set number, Phonebook, or Enter number $\rightarrow$ Enter number as required
Cancel Voice Mail/Call Forwarding	<i>Optional services</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Deactivate All</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Yes</i>
Confirm current Voice Mail/Call Forwarding settings	<i>Optional services</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Get status</i>
Listen to Voice Mail message	<i>Optional services</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Listen to voice mail</i> $\rightarrow$ $\frown$
Activate or cancel Call Waiting	<i>Optional services</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Call waiting</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Confirm current Call Waiting settings	<i>Optional services</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Call waiting</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Get status</i>
Set Outgoing Call Barring	$\begin{array}{l} Optional \ services \rightarrow Call \ barring \rightarrow Outgoing \ call \rightarrow Bar \ all \ outgoing \ calls, Bar \ all \ international \ calls, \ or \ Bar \ international \ calls \rightarrow On \ or \ Off \rightarrow Enter \ Network \ Password \rightarrow \hline \bullet \ (OK) \end{array}$
Activate or cancel Incoming Call Barring	<i>Optional services</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Call barring</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Incoming call</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Bar all incoming calls</i> or <i>Bar all roaming calls</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> $\rightarrow$ Enter Network Password $\rightarrow$ $\blacksquare$ (OK)

	<i>Optional services</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Call barring</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Cancel all barring</i> $\rightarrow$ Enter Network Password $\rightarrow$
Cancel all Call Barring	$O(\mathbf{K}) \rightarrow Yes$
Confirm current Call Barring settings	Optional services $\rightarrow$ Call barring $\rightarrow$ Get status $\rightarrow$ All outgoing calls, All international calls, International calls, All incoming calls, or All roaming calls
Change Network Password	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call barring</i> → <i>Set security code</i> → Enter current Network Password in Old field $\blacksquare$ (OK) → Enter new Network Password in New field → $\blacksquare$ (OK) → Enter new Network Password again in Cnf field → $\blacksquare$ (OK)
Set Missed Call Notification	$Optional \ services \rightarrow Missed \ call \ notification \rightarrow \frown (Call)$
Change Network mode Default Automatic	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Select network</i> → <i>Automatic</i> or <i>Manual</i> • If <i>Manual</i> is selected, select an option from $3G/GSM$ , $3G$ , and $GSM$ .
Save International Code Default 0046010	$\begin{array}{l} Optional \ services \rightarrow International \ call \rightarrow International \ code \rightarrow {\tt Enter Phone Password} \rightarrow \\ \hline \bullet & ({\tt OK}) \rightarrow {\tt Enter an international code} \end{array}$
Add/change/delete Country Number Default 1: 日本 (Japan), 2: 韓国 (KOR), 3: イギリス (GBR), 4: イタリア (ITA), 5: スイス (CHE), 6: スペイン (ESP), 7: ドイツ (DEU), 8: ポルトガル (PRT), 9: オランダ (NLD), 0: フランス (FRA), *: モナコ (MCO), #: アメリカ合衆国 (USA), スウェーデン (SWE), オーストラリア (AUS), 中国 (CHN), 香港 (HKG), 台湾 (TWN)	Optional services → International call → Country number → Add, change, or delete item         • To add/save, highlight an item from Country code → <ul> <li>(Change) → select Country name field → enter country name field → enter country name → highlight Enter country code field → enter country number →              </li> <li>(Save).</li> </ul> • To delete, highlight item → <ul> <li>(Delete) → Yes.</li> </ul>
Select Global Roaming network	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Select operator</i> → <i>Automatic</i> or <i>Manual</i> • When <i>Manual</i> is set, select a network.
Select Preferred Network from list	$\begin{array}{l} Optional \ services \rightarrow International \ call \rightarrow Select \ operator \rightarrow Preferred \ network \rightarrow Set \\ preferred \rightarrow Select \ a \ network \ to \ insert \rightarrow Highlight \ a \ network \ from \ Network \ list \rightarrow \ \hline \ (Insert) \end{array}$
Add Preferred Network	$\begin{array}{l} Optional \ services \rightarrow International \ call \rightarrow Select \ operator \rightarrow Preferred \ network \rightarrow Add \\ operator \rightarrow Enter \ Country \ number \rightarrow Enter \ Network \ code \rightarrow GSM \ or \ 3G \end{array}$
Check Call Time/Cost	Call time & cost → All calls • To reset call time/cost, $\boxdot$ (Reset) → Enter PIN2 → $\blacksquare$ (OK).

Check last Call Time/Cost	Call time & cost $\rightarrow$ Last calls • To reset last call time/cost, press $\square$ (Reset).
Check Data Counter	Call time & cost $\rightarrow$ Data counter• To reset sent/received data counter, press (Reset).
Show or hide Call Time/Cost after calls Default Off	Call time & cost $\rightarrow$ Show charge after call $\rightarrow$ On or Off • This function may not be available.
Change Call Cost Currency	<i>Call time</i> & <i>cost</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Set currency</i> $\rightarrow$ Enter PIN2 $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ Select Price field $\rightarrow$ Enter rate to the yen $\rightarrow$ Select Currency field $\rightarrow$ Enter currency unit $\rightarrow \boxtimes$ (Save)
Set Call Cost Limit	Call time & cost → Set max cost limit →        Image: (Edit) → Enter PIN2 →        Image: (OK) → Select         Upper limit after changing field → Enter upper limit →        Image: (Save)         • After reaching the call cost limit, only emergency calls can be made; messaging, web connections (fee-based operations) are disabled.         • When Show charge after call is not available, this function is also unavailable.
Cancel Call Cost Limit	Call time & cost $\rightarrow$ Set max cost limit $\rightarrow \mathbf{x}$ (Release) $\rightarrow$ Enter PIN2 $\rightarrow \mathbf{\Box}$ (OK)
Activate or cancel Answering Machine Default Off	Answering machine $\rightarrow$ Setting $\rightarrow$ On or Off
Set Answering Machine response time Default 18 seconds	Answering machine → Ringing duration → 5 seconds, 10 seconds, 15 seconds, 30 seconds, or Other (0-30secs) →        Image: Seconds of the second of the seconds of the second of the
Play Answering Machine records	Answering machine $\rightarrow$ Recordings $\rightarrow$ Highlight a record $\rightarrow$ (Play)         • To delete one record, highlight it $\rightarrow$ (Delete) $\rightarrow$ Yes.         • To delete all records, in list, press       Y         • To delete all records, in list, press       Y         • To delete all records, in list, press       Y         • To delete all records, in list, press       Y         • To delete all records, in list, press       Y         • To delete all records, in list, press       Y         • To delete all records, in list, press       Y         • To delete all records, in list, press       Y         • To delete all records, in list, press       Y         • To delete all records, in list, press       Y         • To delete all records, in list, press       Y         • To delete all records, in list, press       Y         • To delete all records, in list, press       Y         • To delete all records, in list, press       Y         • To delete all records, in list, press       Y         • To delete all records, in list, press       Y         • To delete all records, in list, press       Y         • To delete all records, in list, press       Y         • To delete all records, press       Y         • To delete all records, pres       Y
Set Answering Machine response language Default 日本語	Answering machine → Sound language → 日本語, English, or 한국어 • Press 図 (Play) to hear response in the selected language.
Set Preset Picture to appear in place of your own image	<i>Video call</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Alternative picture</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Preset picture</i> $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ (OK)

Set Alternative Picture to appear in place of My Image	<ul> <li>Video call → Alternative picture → Pictures → Select a file → </li> <li>When Memory Card is inserted, after selecting Pictures, select Pictures or Digital camera, then select a picture.</li> </ul>
Adjust incoming video quality Default Standard	Video call $\rightarrow$ Incoming video quality $\rightarrow$ Motion prioritized, Standard, or Quality prioritized
Adjust outgoing video quality Default Standard	Video call $\rightarrow$ Outgoing video quality $\rightarrow$ Motion prioritized, Standard, or Quality prioritized
Set Preset Picture to appear when Video Call is on hold	<i>Video call</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Hold setting</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Preset picture</i> $\rightarrow$ <b>(</b> (0K)
Set Hold setting	<ul> <li>Video call → Hold setting → Pictures → Select a file → ● (OK)</li> <li>When Memory Card is inserted, after selecting Pictures, select Pictures or Digital camera, then select a picture.</li> </ul>
Activate or cancel voice muting for Video Call Default Off	Video call $\rightarrow$ Mute my voice $\rightarrow$ On or Off         • If On, press $\square$ (Mute) $\rightarrow$ uncheck Voice $\rightarrow$ press $\square$ (Done), to temporarily send voice.
Activate or cancel Speaker Phone during Video Call Default On	Video call $\rightarrow$ Loud speaker $\rightarrow$ On or Off
Set Backlight Default On	<i>Video call</i> → <i>Backlight</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> • When <i>Off</i> is set, Display becomes dim.
Set handset response when Video Call cannot be connected Default Always ask	<ul> <li>Video call → Retry with → Always ask, Voice call, Message, or None</li> <li>None: Calls are disconnected with no notification.</li> <li>When a Video Call cannot be connected, prompt appears to retry with the selected setting.</li> </ul>
Answer Voice Call from specified party automatically Default Off	<ul> <li>Video call → Auto answer → On/Off → On or Off</li> <li>When a Video Call arrives from the specified party, a tone sounds and the call is automatically answered.</li> </ul>
Create Auto Answer List	<ul> <li>Video call → Auto answer → Auto answer list → x → Add → Enter Phone Password →</li> <li>(OK) → Direct input, Phonebook, or Call log, and add an entry →</li> <li>To delete the specified party, after selecting Auto answer list, highlight the party → x → Delete → Selected or All → Yes. When All is selected, enter Phone Password.</li> </ul>
Show or hide your own image for Video Calls Default On	Video call $\rightarrow$ Show my image $\rightarrow$ On or Off

Accept or reject calls from specified phone numbers Default Off	<ul> <li>Reject incoming calls → Reject list → On/Off → On or Off</li> <li>When a call from Reject list arrives, a caller hears a busy tone and call is not connected. Rejected appears in Standby. Press </li> <li>(View) to check missed call.</li> </ul>
Create or edit Black List	<ul> <li>Reject incoming calls → Reject list → Edit black list → x → Add → Direct input, Phonebook, or Call log, and add an entry → (Save)</li> <li>To delete saved phone numbers, select Edit black list → highlight phone number → x → Delete → Selected or All → Yes. When All is selected, enter Phone Password.</li> </ul>
Accept or reject calls from unknown numbers Default Off	Reject incoming calls $\rightarrow$ Unknown $\rightarrow$ On or Off
Accept or reject calls when number is withheld Default Off	Reject incoming calls $\rightarrow$ Withheld $\rightarrow$ On or Off
Accept or reject calls from payphones Default Off	Reject incoming calls $\rightarrow$ Payphone $\rightarrow$ On or Off
Accept or reject calls when number is unavailable Default Off	Reject incoming calls $\rightarrow$ Unavailable $\rightarrow$ On or Off
Activate or cancel Offline mode Default Off	$Offline \rightarrow On \text{ or } Off$
Show or hide your own number when placing calls	Show my number $\rightarrow On/Off \rightarrow On$ or $Off$ • To check current status, select <i>Get status</i> .
Set 820SC to automatically redial busy numbers Default Off	Auto redial → On or Off         • On: 820SC automatically disconnects call and redials busy numbers. Auto redial repeats up to 10 times until           • Auto redial setting takes priority when Video Call retry setting is selected.         • If called party uses Call Forwarding or Voice Mail, call is forwarded accordingly.
Activate or cancel automatic ringer reduction Default On	Ringtone reducer $\rightarrow$ On or Off • When ringtone volume level is high, the volume level is reduced to Level 1 for the first two seconds, then returns to the set level.
Enable or disable calling via Stereo Earphone Microphone Default Earphone call: Off	<ul> <li>Earphone call → Earphone call activate → On or Off → Call number → Direct input, Phonebook, or Call log, and add a phone number → 🖾 (Save)</li> <li>On: Press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to call specified number. To change specified number, repeat setup operation, saving the new number.</li> </ul>
Adjust Earpiece volume	Hearing volume $\rightarrow$ Use $\blacksquare$ to adjust volume $\rightarrow$ $\blacksquare$ (Select)
------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

#### **Mode Settings Start Here** $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Mode settings$

	Normal, Manner, Drive, Meeting, or Outdoor
Change mode	ullet To change settings for each mode, highlight a mode, press 🖾 (Edit) and set each item.

#### **Connectivity Settings**

Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> Start Here	$\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Connectivity \rightarrow Bluetooth$
Activate or cancel Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> functions Default Off	Bluetooth $On/Off \rightarrow On \text{ or } Off$
Search for a new Bluetooth $^{\textcircled{m}}$ device	Search for devices $\rightarrow$ Search new devices $\rightarrow$ Select device $\rightarrow$ Enter Authorization Code (4 to 16 digits) $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ Enter same code on device within 30 seconds
Reference connected device files	<ul> <li>Paired devices → Select device → Enter Authorization Code on device</li> <li>To receive referred files, after authorization, select files to receive.</li> <li>To receive referred folders, after authorization, highlight a folder, press referred folders.</li> </ul>
Search/save from Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> devices Default Show my phone	Bluetooth settings $\rightarrow$ Visibility $\rightarrow$ Show my phone or Hide my phone • To search and save from other Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> devices, make 820SC visible.
Adjust Handsfree setting Default Handsfree mode	Bluetooth settings → Handsfree → Private mode or Handsfree mode • Each setting is as follows. Private mode: Use Microphone for handset calls or handsfree device for device calls. Handsfree mode: Talk via handsfree device.
Set Secure mode Default On	Bluetooth settings $\rightarrow$ Secure mode $\rightarrow$ On or Off • On: A confirmation appears before transfers.
Set Answering mode Default Normal	Bluetooth settings → Answering mode → Normal, Any key, or Automatic • To set automatic answer time, select Automatic then answer time.

Confirm 820SC device address	Bluetooth settings $\rightarrow$ My phone details		
Edit 820SC name Default 820Sc	Bluetooth settings $\rightarrow$ My phone details $\rightarrow$ Bluetooth name $\rightarrow$ Edit name		
Confirm available Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> functions	Bluetooth settings $\rightarrow$ Bluetooth services $\rightarrow$ Select a function to check		
Activate or cancel S! Appli communication Default O	S! Appli request $\rightarrow$ On or Off		
Transfer all Phonebook or Calendar entries, or Bookmarks at once	<i>Transfer all</i> $\rightarrow$ Select a device $\rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password $\rightarrow$ $\blacksquare$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ <i>Phonebook, Calendar, or Bookmarks</i>		
Infrared Start Her	$\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Connectivity \rightarrow Infrared$		
Activate or cancel Infrared transmission Default O	f Infrared $On/Off \rightarrow On (3min.)$ or $Off$		
Transfer Phonebook or Calendar entries, and Bookmarks at once	Transfer all $\rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password $\rightarrow$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ Phonebook, Calendar or Bookmarks $\rightarrow$ Yes $\rightarrow$ Enter Authorization Code (4 digits) $\rightarrow$ (OK)         • For Phonebook, choose Yes to transfer images.		
Mass Storage Start Her	$\blacksquare  \blacksquare  \Rightarrow Settings  \Rightarrow Connectivity$		
Activate Mass Storage	$Mass\ storage \rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password $\rightarrow$ $\blacksquare$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ Connect 820SC to PC via USB Cable $\rightarrow$ Exchange files with PC		
Network Start Her	$\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Connectivity$		
Retrieve Network Information manually	Retrieve NW info $\rightarrow$ Yes or No		
Memory Settings Start Here $\blacksquare \rightarrow Settings$	$\rightarrow$ Memory settings		
Check Memory Card details	Memory card → Memory card details • Check Memory Card name, memory capacity, or remaining memory.		
Check Memory Card details Format Memory Card			

Backup Memory	$\begin{array}{l} Memory \ card \rightarrow Backup \ \& \ Restore \rightarrow Backup \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow {\sf Enter \ Phone \ Password } \rightarrow \blacksquare \ ({\sf OK}) \\ \rightarrow \ Phonebook, \ Calendar, \ Tasks, \ Contents \ keys, \ or \ Bookmarks \rightarrow Yes \end{array}$	
Restore Memory	<i>Memory card</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Backup &amp; Restore</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Restore</i> $\rightarrow$ <i>Yes</i> $\rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ <i>Phonebook, Calendar, Tasks, Contents keys,</i> or <i>Bookmarks</i> $\rightarrow$ Select a file $\rightarrow$ <i>Add</i> or <i>Overwrite</i>	
Confirm total or remaining Phone Memory	<ul> <li>Phone memory → Phone memory details</li> <li>View Phone memory capacity or remaining memory.</li> </ul>	
Clear Phone Memory	Phone memory $\rightarrow$ Clear phone memory $\rightarrow$ Check All, Data Folder, Messaging, Phonebook, Calendar, or User's dictionary $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Delete) $\rightarrow$ Enter Phone Password $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (OK) $\rightarrow$ Yes	
Set Default Memory to Phone or Memory Card Default Phone	<ul> <li>Set default memory → Phone, Memory card, or Always ask</li> <li>With Memory Card inserted, select 8205C (Phone) or Memory Card. Available when editing images, saving S! Mail attachments, downloading files, receiving data via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>, etc.</li> <li>When Memory card or Always ask is selected with no Memory Card inserted, files are automatically saved to 820SC.</li> </ul>	
View Memory status	Memory status → Shared memory, Messaging, Data Folder, Calendar, or Phonebook • To delete viewed memory, press  ☐ (Delete) (�P.2-47 Deleting Registered/Saved Data).	

## Appendix

Battery & Charger	14-2
Before Using Battery or Charger	. 14-2
Inserting & Removing Battery	. 14-3
USIM Card	14-4
Information & Precautions	. 14-4
Inserting & Removing USIM Card	. 14-5
PIN	
Troubleshooting	14-7
Software Update	
Function List	
Key List for Text Entry	
Symbols & Pictograms	
	14-15
	14-16
	14-17
	14-17
	14-19
Objective Index	14-26
	14-28
	14-29
	14-30



#### **Battery & Charger**

#### Before Using Battery or Charger

Charge battery before first use of 820SC or after long periods of disuse.

#### **Charging Battery**

- Long periods of disuse may affect battery's ability to hold a full charge. Charge battery at least once every six months while not in use. Otherwise, battery may become unusable.
- 820SC uses a lithium-ion battery; charge battery in anytime without damaging its ability to hold a charge.
- Do not charge battery under the following conditions:
- In ambient temperatures beyond 5°C 40°C
- In high levels of humidity, vibration or dust (May cause malfunction)
- Near a radio receiver (May cause feedback)
- 820SC or Charger may warm while charging. This is normal, however, should they become very hot to the touch, stop charging and contact Customer Service (€P. 14-30).
- Battery is a consumable; replace it if operating time shortens noticeably.

#### Note

- Use specified Charger only. Do not use it for devices other than 820SC.
- Battery must be inside 820SC to charge it.
- When not in use, unplug Charger from outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

#### **Battery Life**

Battery time/life may be reduced by any of the following:

- Environmental Factors
- Storing/using 820SC beyond 5°C 40°C
- Using 820SC when signal is poor/out-of-range
- Debris to collect on 820SC, battery or Charger Port
- Operational Factors
- Active S! Appli
- Camera use
- Media Player use
- Excessive Keypad use (e.g. for using S! Appli or messaging)
- Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> transmissions
- Frequently opening and closing 820SC
- Watching TV
- Settings
- Using Slide Show
- Increasing Brightness higher or Backlight time
- Using Media Player with Backlight set to Always

#### **Battery Disposal**

Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse. Tape over battery terminals before disposal or take to a SoftBank shop. Follow any and all local regulations regarding battery disposal. Lithium-ion batteries are recyclable.

#### When Battery Runs Out

When battery is weak, a warning appears and 820SC beeps. Charge or replace battery; otherwise 820SC will automatically turn off.

14

Appendix

#### **Inserting & Removing Battery**

#### Inserting



Press Lock and fully remove Battery Cover as shown





Align Battery Slots and 820SC Notches to insert battery as shown



Align Battery Cover Tabs and 820SC Slots and attach Battery Cover as shown



#### Note

- Remove battery cover with care; stress on tabs may damage them.
- Gently insert battery to avoid damaging 820SC tabs.

#### Removing

Always turn 820SC off before removing battery. Never remove battery while AC Charger or In-Car Charger is connected.

#### Press Lock and fully remove Battery Cover as shown





Lift battery up and remove as shown



#### **USIM Card**

#### **Information & Precautions**

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including handset number and limited storage for Phonebook entries and SMS. Install USIM Card to use 820SC; turn 820SC power off to insert/remove USIM Card.



Insert USIM Card into another compatible handset to access SMS and Phonebook entries saved on USIM Card. Note the following precautions regarding USIM Card usage and care (see USIM Card User Guide for details):

- Avoid using excessive force when inserting/removing USIM Card.
- SoftBank is not liable for damage resulting from inserting USIM Card into IC card readers or other third party devices.

- Always keep USIM Card IC chip clean.
- Clean USIM Card IC chip with a soft, dry cloth.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card; malfunction may result.

#### Note

- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- If USIM Card is lost or damaged, you will be charged for reissuing it.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon termination of subscription.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- If USIM Card or 820SC with USIM Card inserted is lost or stolen in Japan or abroad, immediately contact Customer Service (€P.14-30) to suspend service.
- Handset/USIM Card repairs, replacement, or upgrades may deactivate Chaku-Uta<sup>®</sup>, Chaku-Uta Full<sup>®</sup>, S! Appli, or video files on handset/Memory Card.
- Inserting another USIM Card (not the included one) into 820SC may deactivate preinstalled S! Appli or BookSurfing<sup>®</sup> files on handset.
- Back-up USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.

#### Inserting & Removing USIM Card

Always turn power off before opening 820SC to remove battery, or insert/remove USIM Card.

#### Inserting



- Remove battery (€P.14-4)
- With IC chip down, insert USIM Card into card slot





Push in USIM Card until it stops and locks



#### Removing



Remove battery (€P.14-4)

Press down on USIM Card and gently slide it out



#### Note

- Inserting USIM Card with excessive force may damage it or 820SC.
- Do not misplace a removed USIM Card.
- To prevent damaging it, avoid touching the IC chip when Inserting or removing USIM Card. Do not touch battery contacts.

#### PIN

USIM Card features 2 security codes: PIN and PIN2.

#### PIN

Use PIN (4- to 8-digit) to prevent unauthorized use of 820SC by others.

- Modify PIN (●P.11-3).
- When PIN lock is activated, PIN entry is required each time 820SC is turned on or whenever USIM Card is re-inserted (●P.11-2).

#### PIN2

PIN2 (4- to 8-digit) is required for Reset Call Cost or Edit Cost Limit, etc.

● Modify PIN2 (●P.11-3).

#### Canceling PIN Lock (PUK/PUK2 Code)

Incorrectly entering PIN or PIN2 three consecutive times activates PIN Lock and limits 820SC function access. Enter PUK (PIN Unlocking Key) Code to cancel PIN Lock. For more information, contact Customer Service

(€P.14-30).

#### Note

- Entering PUK or PUK2 incorrectly ten consecutive times locks USIM Card and deactivates 820SC. Take a note of PUK and PUK2.
- A locked USIM Card cannot be unlocked. Contact Customer Service (⊕P.14-30).

14 14-6

#### Troubleshooting

#### 820SC does not turn on

- ☑ Is battery empty?
- ➡ Replace or charge battery.
- ☑ Is battery installed in 820SC?
- ➡ Install battery correctly.

#### When power is turned on, PIN entry window appears

- ☑ Is PIN certification set to On?
- → If *PIN certification* is *On*, enter PIN.

#### When power is turned on, USIM password entry window appears

- ☑ Is USIM lock set to On?
- → If USIM lock is On, enter USIM password.

#### Please insert USIM card, Incorrect USIM or USIM card failed appears when 820SC is turned on or executing a function

- ☑ Is USIM Card correctly installed?
- → Check to see if USIM Card is correctly installed. If the message appears even though USIM Card is correctly installed, it may be damaged.
- ☑ Is USIM Card still being loaded?
- ➡ Try again after a while.
- ☑ Is an incorrect USIM Card used?
- → Check to see if correct USIM Card is used. Use USIM Card specified by SoftBank.
- ☑ Is there debris on USIM Card IC chip?
- → Remove debris with a clean, dry cloth, and then install USIM Card correctly.

### ■ 圏外 or Out appears and no calls can be made

- ☑ 820SC is out-of-range.
- Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.

## Calls are interrupted or disconnected

- ☑ Does 圏外 or **Out** appear?
- Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.
- ☑ Is battery empty?
- ➡ Replace or charge battery.

#### Unable to make a call

- ☑ Is Call Barring set?
- ➡ Deactivate Call Barring.
- ☑ Is Offline set to On? ( 📓 appears)
- ➡ Set Offline to Off.

#### Unable to open Phonebook entry, Data Folder, Call Log, Calendar, or Messaging

- ☑ Is Application lock set?
- ➡ Cancel Application lock.

#### Clicking noise is heard during a call

Noise may be generated when the signal is weak or while moving between coverage areas.

#### Unable to charge battery

- ☑ Is AC Charger Connector securely inserted into SBM Charger Connector Adapter?
- ➡ Insert AC Charger Connector securely.
- ☑ Is SBM Charger Connector Adapter securely inserted?
- → Insert SBM Charger Connector Adapter securely.
- ☑ Is AC Charger plug securely inserted?
- ➡ Insert AC Charger plug securely.
- ☑ Is battery installed in 820SC?
- ➡ Install battery correctly.
- Are 820SC terminals and AC Charger clean?
- → Clean contacts with a dry cotton swab.
- ☑ Was battery charged in ambient temperature below 5 °C or above 40 °C?
- → Charge battery in ambient temperature between 5 °C and 40 °C.
- ☑ Battery may need to be replaced.
- ➡ Install a new battery.
- Does battery always lose its charge quickly after being charged?
- ➡ Battery life has expired. Replace with a new battery.

- ☑ Does 820SC or battery become very warm during charging?
- If the temperature rises too much, charging may stop. After 820SC and battery are cool, retry charging.

#### Devices become hot

- During charging, AC Charger may heat up.
- 820SC may heat up during charging/long calls.
- → If 820SC can be touched with your hand, it is normal. If it is too hot to touch, immediately stop charging and contact Customer Service (◆P.14-30).

#### Battery drains quickly

- Battery may drain quickly depending on the operating environment (Ambient temperature, charging conditions, or Signal Strength), operations, and settings.
- → Use 820SC in an appropriate environment and reduce operations requiring high power (◆P.14-2).

#### Unable to watch TV

- ☑ Is USIM Card removed?
- → Unable to watch TV with no USIM Card inserted. Insert USIM Card.
- ☑ Is subscription terminated?
- TV is enabled only during subscription period.

#### Display flickers

- ☑ Is 820SC used near a fluorescent light?
- → Use 820SC as far away from a fluorescent light as possible.

#### Display is dim or unlit

This may be due to the characteristics of Display and not a problem. The time (seconds) until Display is dimmed or unlit can be changed by adjusting the Backlight time.

#### Unable to play music via speaker

- ☑ Is Manner mode set?
- ➡ Cancel Manner mode.
- ☑ Is the stereo earphone microphone connected?
- → Disconnect the connector for the stereo earphone microphone from 820SC.

## Too many applications are already running. appears

- Memory is low or full.
- → Delete unnecessary S! Mail messages. If multiple functions are active, close some.

#### Unable to establish Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> or USB connections using Samsung PC Studio

- ☑ Is the USB driver installed? (for USB connection)
- → If communications are executed connecting to a personal computer with the supplied USB cable, installing the driver is required. Install the driver from the supplied CD-ROM.
- ☑ Is the connection method set correctly on the personal computer?
- → Set the connection method to USB or Bluetooth on the Connection Manager of Samsung PC Studio or the Connection Wizard for the communication in use.
- Are Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> or PC USB connection port and Samsung PC Studio the same?
- → Make sure port settings match those set for Samsung PC Studio Connection Manager or Connection Wizard.

#### Phonebook entry, Message folder, schedule event in Calendar, or Tasks do not appear

- ☑ Is 820SC set to *Hide* in *Secret mode*?
- → Set to Show in Secret mode.

#### Sending message failed appears

- When sending message failed, the error message and the reason appear.
- ➡ Check the unsent reason and try again.

#### Service not allowed appears

- 820SC is outside the service area.
- ➡ Send from within the service area.

#### **Offline mode set.** appears

- Ø Offline is set to On.
- → Set *Offline* to *Off* and try again.

#### Storage space short by \*\* bytes. Edit data folder files? appears

- ☑ 820SC memory is full.
- ➡ Delete unnecessary files and try again.

## *Cannot download. File corrupt.* appears

 File cannot be downloaded; cancel download.

#### Unable to call via Stereo Earphone Microphone or Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>

- ☑ Is Earphone call activate set to Off?
- Even though the specified number is saved for *Earphone call*, unable to call with *Earphone call activate* set to *Off*. Set *Earphone call activate* to *On*.

#### Software Update

Check for 820SC software updates and download as required. Choose to begin *Update* or *Schedule update*.





• 820SC connects to network by pressing (Yes).



#### Read Terms of Use and then

Agree



• Read through Terms of Use before selecting Agree.

### Enter Center Access Code





Update Result appears.



## Select one from the following updating methods

#### To update immediately

- Update now
- The update starts. When completed, 820SC turns the power off and on again; then Notification window appears.



Appendix



- For procedures, find details on SoftBank Website (http://www.softbank.jp).
- No fees are applied to update checks or downloads.
- At scheduled update time, message appears. Press
   (OK) or wait ten seconds. Update will not start while 820SC is in use. When operation ends, a message window appears. However if operation does not end within ten minutes of scheduled update time, scheduled update is automatically canceled.



Message Window

• To cancel Schedule update, perform Steps 1 to 4, select *Cancel schedule* and press 🖾 (Yes).

#### Note

- Charge battery beforehand; if low, update may fail.
- If Scheduled update time arrives while 820SC is out-of-range, Software Update is canceled.
- Remain within strong, stable signal conditions.
- 820SC Phonebook entries, media files, and other contents are not affected by software updates, but always back-up important information (note that some files cannot be copied). SoftBank is not liable for damage from lost information, etc.
- 820SC transmissions are disabled during update.
- Update may take some time to complete.
- Update failure may disable 820SC. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

#### **Function List**

	Main Menu Item Page			
Mess	Messaging			
	Received messages	P.4-10,		
		P.4-12		
	Create new	P.4-3		
	Retrieve new	P.4-22		
	Drafts	P.4-12,		
		P.4-24		
	Templates	P.4-12,		
		P.4-20,		
		P.4-21		
	Sent messages	P.4-12		
	Unsent	P.4-12		
	Server mail	P.4-25		
	Create new SMS	P.4-8		
	Settings	P.13-2		
	Memory Status	P.2-37		
Yaho	Yahoo! Keitai			
	Yahoo! Keitai	P.5-3		
	Bookmarks	P.5-6		
	Saved pages	P.5-7		
	Enter URL	P.5-3,		
		P.5-4		

Appendix

14 14-11

	Main Menu Item	Page			
Yaho	Yahoo! Keitai				
	History	P.5-15,			
		P.5-20			
	PC site browser	P.5-4			
	Yahoo! Keitai browser	P.13-5			
	settings				
Medi	a Player				
	Music	P.8-4			
	Movie	P.8-6			
	Streaming	P.5-8			
	Settings	P.13-7			
Com	munication				
	S! Town	P.5-13			
	S! Loop	P.5-14			
	S! Friend's Status	P.10-2			
	S! Circle Talk	P.10-6			
	Near Chat (Japanese)	P.10-10			
Came	era				
	Take photo	P.7-5			
	Record video	P.7-11			
	Bar code reader	P.9-11			
	Dynamic effect	P.7-14			
	Video editor	P.8-9			
	Slide show	P.2-6			

	Main Menu Item	Page			
S! Ap	5! Appli				
	S! Appli library	P.8-10			
	Settings	P.13-9			
Tools					
	Alarms	P.9-2			
	Calendar	P.9-3			
	Calculator	P.9-5			
	Converter	P.9-5			
	World clock	P.9-7			
	Notepad	P.9-7			
	Tasks	P.9-8			
	Voice recorder	P.9-9			
Voice recognition		P.9-10			
	Bar code reader	P.9-11			
	Stopwatch	P.9-14			
	Dictionary	P.9-15			
	Software update	P.14-10			
Data	Folder				
	Pictures	P.2-24			
	My Pictograms	P.2-24			
	Ring songs · tones	P.2-24			
	S! Appli	P.2-24			
	Music	P.2-24			
	Videos	P.2-24			

Main Menu Item		Page	
Data Folder			
	Books	P.2-24	
	S! Familiar Usability	P.2-8,	
		P.2-24	
	S! Mail templates	P.2-24	
	Flash <sup>®</sup>	P.2-24	
	Flash <sup>®</sup> Ringtones	P.2-24	
	Other documents	P.2-24	
	Memory status	P.2-25	
Enter	tainment		
	S! Quick News	P.5-9	
	BookSurfing <sup>®</sup>	P.9-16	
TV			
	Watch TV	P.6-6	
	Program guide	P.6-6	
	TV links	P.6-7	
	TV player	P.6-9	
	Reservation list	P.6-9	
	Settings	P.13-9	
Phonebook			
	Phonebook	P.2-21	
	Create new entry	P.2-18	
	Call log	P.3-9	
	Group settings	P.2-43	

Appendix

<mark>1</mark>4-12

Main Menu Item Pag					
Phon	Phonebook				
	Account details	P.2-23			
	Speed dial	P.3-7			
	S! Addressbook Back-up	P.12-13			
	Settings	P.13-11			
	Memory status	P.2-42			
Settir	ngs				
	Standby window	P.13-12			
	Sounds & Alerts	P.13-14			
	Manner mode settings	P.13-15			
	Display settings	P.13-16			
	Phone settings	P.13-18			
	Security	P.13-20			
	Call settings	P.13-21			
	Mode settings	P.13-26			
	Connectivity	P.13-26			
	Memory settings	P.13-27			

Appendix

14-13

#### **Key List for Text Entry**

Key	Kanji/Hiragana	Katakana	Alphanumerics	Numbers
1.0	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ 1	アイウエオァィゥェォー	.@/:~ <sup>1</sup> 1	1
<b>5</b> Web	かきくけこ2	カキクケコ2	abcABC2	2
Βœ	さしすせそ3	サシスセソ3	defDEF3	3
4 @H	たちつてとっ4	タチツテトッ4	ghiGHI4	4
05.20	なにぬねの5	ナニヌネノ5	jklJKL5	5
Быхо	はひふへほら	ハヒフヘホ6	mnoMNO6	6
7 git	まみむめも7	マミムメモ7	pqrsPQRS7	7
8 <sup>.p</sup>	やゆよゃゅょ8	ヤユヨャユョ8	tuvTUV8	8
9 ww.2	らりるれろ9	ラリルレロ9	wxyzWXYZ9	9
D+	わをん、。一〇	ワヲン、。-0	,!? 〈Space〉 0	0
×	Add * / * to unfixed, convertible kana     Toggle Pictograms, Emoticons     Toggle Pictograms, Emoticons			
# º	Toggle Double-byte Symbols, Single-byte Symbols			
<b></b>	Reverse toggle characters assigned to the same key before finalizing character selection			
l₽ A/a	Toggle upper/lower-case			

Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key repeatedly until the target character appears.

 $^1$  When double-byte, "~" cannot be used ("  $\sim$  " appears on Display).

14-14

#### Symbols & Pictograms

#### Symbols

#### **Double-byte Symbols**



#### Single-byte Symbols

₹.	。!?	<スペース	> "	#	\$	%	&	,	(	)	*	+	,	-	/	:	;	< =	= >
@ [	¥ ]	^ _ `	{		}		Γ	1	•	-		0							

#### **Symbol Conversions**

Symbol Label	Symbol	Symbol Label	Symbol
あっと	@@	こめ	*
いこーる	==	ころん	:;
えん	¥¥	さんかく	
おんぷ	<u>ک</u>	しかく	♦
かける	×	どう	> // 々
かっこ	0 [] [] () 🛇	ぱーせんと	%%
	[] '' "" ()	ほし	☆★
	〔〕〔〕{} 〈〉 《》	まる	$\bigcirc \bullet \bigcirc$
から	~	やじるし	→←↑↓

Appendix

14-1<mark>5</mark>

#### Pictograms

- 💿				Ģ	683	×		2	ĸ	OFF	9	0	000,00		_1	. 0 V 6	-	0
	₽ A		<b>1</b>	- 36		F		н	M		×	×	(6)	- 25			Ö	E9
0	4þ.	Čn	3	Ř	۲		×	4	K	8	10	×	1	T	D	Ш	慶	TM
٩		<u> </u>	۲	Ŭ	2		10	5		ų.	鳯	★	್ತಂ	¢	鲁		<u>_</u>	
0	0	ŧ.	\$\$	۳i	(Ē)	~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~	0	E .	$\triangleleft$	X	P	?	5	4	Ň		- Á	
Î	୍ଷ	61	<b>a</b>	Q	VS		X	7		ЗХ	×	ų.	3	1	ÂÂ	£\$£	5	
3			0	~	ŝ	8)V	- M	B	41	Ð	Ð	۲	<u>е</u>	<u> </u>	Ű	20	<b>\$</b>	
Ō		- Pa	9	Ð	0	<b>9</b> //	Ġ	9	Ø	3 <sup>4</sup>	Ľ		3 WL	9	- M		- A	
þ	</td <td>, en en</td> <td>۲</td> <td>۲</td> <td>T</td> <td><ul><li>A</li></ul></td> <td>Tal</td> <td>Ū</td> <td>Τ</td> <td>١ الله</td> <td></td> <td>- O</td> <td>;*) ;*)</td> <td>()¤</td> <td></td> <td>À</td> <td>2</td> <td></td>	, en	۲	۲	T	<ul><li>A</li></ul>	Tal	Ū	Τ	١ الله		- O	;*) ;*)	()¤		À	2	
9	6	5	\$	₩	1995	2	•	得	8	Ť	Û		8 <sup>13</sup>	60	Î	1	3	
í	9	R	Q	ø	777	BK	•	割		Ĵ	- 😌	, s <sup>o</sup>	2 2 1 1 1	2	°≜°	۲		
	9	Ś	8	1				サ	69	w c			9	Ø	9		(J	
Ē	0	đ	ц.	ġ.	<u>1</u>	P	-		J.	Ģ	1	9	0Ĵ	M	- Ar		(F)	
9	0	- Ale		•	20	SUS BUS	я́й	満		Ş	Q	4	Ĵ,	63			20	
-	$\bigcirc$	71		1	722	Ţ.	50	空	Ω	<u>م</u>	玙	$\overline{\mathbf{A}}$	a_0	69	8		8	
ЗĘ	Ø	h	Ð		0	Ø	NEW	指		8	- 1901	0	1		7	2 K 2 K	1	
ŝ	$\odot$	ð	8	3	4	E		Ē	$\mathbf{\mathbf{x}}$	J	$\heartsuit$		1.	44	9	•	<ul> <li>(1)</li> <li>(2)</li> <li>(2)</li> <li>(3)</li> <li>(4)</li> <li>(4)</li></ul>	
•	Ð	-	0	99	9	8TM		5	٧3	00	. M	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	ê		2		35	
	Θ	1	•		4		有	Ŷ	**	Q		Ø	31. 1 C		63	*	S.	
ţ.	3	8	$\Box$	1	, <sup>2</sup>	24	無	Ģ	ж	<b>O</b>		۲	ેું	යි.	en 📥		87	
P.	Θ	0		222		101	A	Ċ,	¢	×4	$\sim$	Ó	Ĩ	2	Ø	G	<b>4</b>	
Ø	\$	Ó	Q	R	A	3	ŧ	1	TÔP	-8	- W	۲	0	-	3		1	
Ś	Ş		6	Ø	<u>k</u>	ļ		Ŧ	ЪК	ж	-\$i		E;	<b>.</b>		8	8	
0	<b>\$</b>	Ŷ	9	99	, The second sec		F	•	©	0	$\sim$	۲	35		B-mi		A	
S.	<u>Å</u>	×	sego		- (()	一天	٥	+	ß	MD	40).	ð	÷ ;;			8	B	
1	Ô	X	<b>***</b>			<u></u>	1		$\heartsuit$	s)	s.	4	ê, Î	4	4	Q	æ	

Pictograms with are animated.

• Some pictograms and animated pictograms may not appear properly on some models of SoftBank handsets or other devices.

Appendix

#### **Memory List**

S! Mail	Received messages	Up to 500 messages				
	Drafts	Up to 10 messages				
	Sent messages	Up to 250 messages				
	Unsent	Up to 10 messages				
SMS	Received messages	Up to 500 messages				
	Drafts	Up to 10 messages				
	Sent messages	Up to 250 messages				
	Unsent	Up to 10 messages				
Data Folder	Pictures					
	My Pictograms					
	Ring songs · tones					
	S! Appli					
	Music	Up to 999 items (files and subfolders) per folder				
	Videos					
	Books					
	S! Familiar Usability					
	S! Mail templates					
	Flash <sup>®</sup>					
	Flash <sup>®</sup> Ringtones	1				
	Other documents					

#### Specifications

820SC specifications may change without prior notice.

#### SoftBank 820SC

Item	Specification
Weight	132 g*
Continuous Talk Time	Voice Call: 250 minutes* (in Japan, W-CDMA)/400 minutes* (GSM) Video Call: 120 minutes* (in Japan, W-CDMA)
Continuous Standby Time (820SC closed)	450 hours* (in Japan, W-CDMA, GSM)
Dimensions (W x H x D)	51.3 x 102.8 x 18.4 mm* (820SC closed)
Maximum Output	0.25 W

\*Approximate Value

• 820SC with battery installed.

- Battery Time is calculated by SoftBank under stable signal conditions. Calling in poor signal conditions or leaving 820SC on out-of-range will consume more power and may reduce Battery Time by more than half.
- Frequent 820SC operations requiring Backlight (e.g., Yahoo! Keitai) may reduce Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time.
- Using video for Wallpaper may significantly reduce Continuous Talking and Continuous Standby Times.
- Using S! Appli may reduce Continuous Talking and Continuous Standby Times.

 Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a battery in stable signal conditions. Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery with 820SC closed without calls or operations, in Standby, in stable signal conditions. Alternating between usage and Standby shortens Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time. Talk Time/Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, ambient temperature, etc.).

#### Battery

Item	Specification
Voltage	3.7 V
Туре	Lithium-ion
Capacity	1100 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	44.3 x 36.8 x 6.6 mm* (without protruding parts)

\* Approximate Value

#### Index

#### 7

AC Charger 1-6
Account details
Reset 2-43
Alarms
All reset
Answering Machine
Cancel
Play recordings 3-4
Set
Any key answer
Application lock11-5
Auto active
Auto answer
Auto answer list
Add
Auto redial

Bar code reader9-11
Create QR Code 9-13
Scanning
Battery
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup>
Activate

Address
Answering mode13-26
Applicable profiles 12-5
Authorization Code
Bluetooth services
Connect to compatible device 12-7, 13-26
Delete paired devices 12-16
Edit device name13-27
Edit name of paired device
New devices
Paired device
Paired devices indicators
Print
Receive data 12-7, 12-8
Search setting 12-16
Secure mode
Send data
Visibility
Bookmark
Delete
Internet connection
Save
Send URL 5-22, 5-23
BookSurfing <sup>®</sup> 9-16

#### 

Delete schedule
Display settings9-19
Holiday9-19
Schedule
View schedule
Call barring service
Call forwarding service
Call log
Check
Delete
Call time & cost
Check
Reset
Set max cost limit13-23
Show charge after call
Call waiting service
Camera
Attach to message for sending still image7-17
Attach to message for sending video7-19
Capture video
Composite still image
Dynamic effect
Edit still image7-12
Edit video8-9
Effect
Face detection
Flash
Frame shot
Macro
Multi-shot

# Appendix

14-1<mark>9</mark>

Normal 7-4
Panorama shot
Photo Combination
Quick play 7-17
Scene
Self-timer
Send a still image via Bluetooth $^{ extsf{B}}$ 7-17
Send a still image via infrared 7-17
Send video via Bluetooth <sup>®</sup>
Send video via infrared
Settings 13-8
Shortcut operations
Switch cameras
Viewfinder 7-3
Cancel PIN lock
Center access code1-16
Center access code
Change mode
Change mode1-11 Change mode settings1-11
Change mode         1-11           Change mode settings         1-11           Phone sounds         1-12, 1-16
Change mode         1-11           Change mode settings         1-11           Phone sounds         1-12, 1-16           Phone sounds volume         1-11
Change mode         1-11           Change mode settings         1-11           Phone sounds         1-12, 1-16           Phone sounds volume         1-11           Volume         1-11
Change mode         1-11           Change mode settings         1-11           Phone sounds         1-12, 1-16           Phone sounds volume         1-11           Volume         1-11           Change PIN         11-3
Change mode         1-11           Change mode settings         1-11           Phone sounds         1-12, 1-16           Phone sounds volume         1-11           Volume         1-11           Change PIN         11-3           Change PIN2         11-3
Change mode         1-11           Change mode settings         1-11           Phone sounds         1-12, 1-16           Phone sounds volume         1-11           Volume         1-11           Change PIN         11-3           Change PIN2         11-3           Charge         1-6, 1-8
Change mode         1-11           Change mode settings         1-11           Phone sounds         1-12, 1-16           Phone sounds volume         1-11           Volume         1-11           Change PIN         11-3           Change PIN2         11-3           Charge         1-6, 1-8           Charger Port         1-3
Change mode         1-11           Change mode settings         1-11           Phone sounds         1-12, 1-16           Phone sounds volume         1-11           Volume         1-11           Change PIN         11-3           Change PIN2         11-3           Charge         1-6, 1-8           Charger Port         1-3           Clear memory         11-11

Convert currency or unit9-5
Copy item2-42, 2-44
Country number

Data Folder         .2-24           Date & Time         .13-18
Daylight saving time9-20
Dictionary9-15
Digital TV6-2
Alarm Duration
Alarm Volume
Alert tone
Area Setup 6-5
Auto power off 13-11
Calls & Alarms13-11
Data Broadcast6-7
Delete station data 13-10
Display brightness
Image location
Light
Manufacture Number
Notify connection
One Seg6-3
Panel Display6-14
Phone closing 13-11
Record Programs6-8
Reminder timer 13-9
Set recording 13-10

Settings 6-15, 13-9
Sound language
Sound mode
Sound output
Subtitle Display
Touch Key Lock popup
Touch Key Lock timing
TV Alarm6-14
TV Links
TV Player
TV Timer
TV Window6-5
Watch TV6-6
Display
Backlight
Brightness
Brightness
5
Clock/Calendar13-16
Clock/Calendar13-16 Dialing display13-17
Clock/Calendar
Clock/Calendar         .13-16           Dialing display         .13-17           Font size         .13-16           Main menu style         .13-16           Operator name         .13-17
Clock/Calendar         .13-16           Dialing display         .13-17           Font size         .13-16           Main menu style         .13-16           Operator name         .13-17           Popup menu         .13-17
Clock/Calendar         .13-16           Dialing display         .13-17           Font size         .13-16           Main menu style         .13-16           Operator name         .13-17           Popup menu         .13-17           Sub Display         .1-4, 13-16
Clock/Calendar       .13-16         Dialing display       .13-17         Font size       .13-16         Main menu style       .13-16         Operator name       .13-17         Popup menu       .13-17         Sub Display       .1-4, 13-16         Wallpaper       .2-6
Clock/Calendar       .13-16         Dialing display       .13-17         Font size       .13-16         Main menu style       .13-16         Operator name       .13-17         Popup menu       .13-17         Sub Display       .1-4, 13-16

# Appendix

Emergency call 1-17
Emergency Location Report 1-17
Encoding
External device port 1-3
External light1-12

Facial Recognition 11-8
Activate 11-10
User registration
File
Сору 2-30
Delete
Details
Displayed icon
Lock/Unlock
Rename file 2-28
Set image to Wallpaper etc
Set Ringtone
Sort
File Viewer
Shortcut operations
Folder
Сору 2-30
Create
Delete
Rename folder

### G Global Roaming ......3-11

#### 

### 



### Language ......13-18

#### M

Make a call
Make international call
Make Video Call
Manner mode1-10
Mass Storage12-12
Media Player

Add to Playlist       8-11, 8-13         Adjust Tone volume       13-7         Create Playlist       8-8         Download       8-2         Edit video       8-9         Play music       8-4         Play video       8-8
Repeat mode
Settings
Video resolution
Memory Card
Insert/remove
Memory card backup 12-10
Memory Status
Memory Status
•
Message
Message
Message       .4-2         Action settings       .4-19         Add new folder       .4-16
Message.4-2Action settings.4-19Add new folder.4-16Add text template.2-39
Message         .4-2           Action settings         .4-19           Add new folder         .4-16           Add text template         .2-39           Arrange         .4-5, 4-20
Message         .4-2           Action settings         .4-19           Add new folder         .4-16           Add text template         .2-39           Arrange         .4-5, 4-20           Attach a file         .4-4
Message.4-2Action settings.4-19Add new folder.4-16Add text template.2-39Arrange.4-5, 4-20Attach a file.4-4Change folder name.4-26
Message.4-2Action settings.4-19Add new folder.4-16Add text template.2-39Arrange.4-5, 4-20Attach a file.4-4Change folder name.4-26Character code.4-22
Message.4-2Action settings.4-19Add new folder.4-16Add text template.2-39Arrange.4-5, 4-20Attach a file.4-4Change folder name.4-26Character code.4-22Create.4-3, 4-8
Message.4-2Action settings.4-19Add new folder.4-16Add text template.2-39Arrange.4-5, 4-20Attach a file.4-4Change folder name.4-26Character code.4-22Create.4-3, 4-8Custom mail address.4-2
Message.4-2Action settings.4-19Add new folder.4-16Add text template.2-39Arrange.4-5, 4-20Attach a file.4-4Change folder name.4-26Character code.4-22Create.4-3, 4-8Custom mail address.4-22Delete.4-15, 4-22

# Appendix

Draft message indicators 4-13
Drafts 4-12
Feeling Setting 4-18
Forward 4-11
Forward messages in server 4-25
Indicators for attached files 4-5
Lock 4-23
Mail Server
Mailbox 4-12
Memory status 4-26
Message list view
Message notice 13-2
Move 4-16
Picture appearance 4-22
Receive server mail 4-25
Received message indicators 4-13
Received messages 4-12
Reply
Retrieve all mails 4-25
Retrieve mail list 4-25
Retry function
Save attachment 4-23
Save to drafts
Scroll jump 4-22
Scroll unit
Send from Drafts 4-24
Send S! Mail template 4-20
Send unsent message
Sending options
Sent message indicators 4-13

Sent messages 4-12
Server mail 4-25
Server mail memory 4-26
Set secret
SMS 4-2, 4-21
Sort
Sort by
S! Mail
Templates
Unlock
Unsent
Unsent message indicators
Use text template
View
View attachment
3D Pictogram display 4-19, 4-22
3D Pictograms4-9
3D pictogram display setting
Aissed call
Aobile Internet
Nobile tracker
Aulti Search
Aulti Selector Operations
Aute

Network password .....1-17

Change															. :	3-2	1
Notepad																.9-	7



#### Password lock ..... 11-5 PC Site Browser 5-4 Font size ..... 5-20, 13-6 PC screen 5-21 Phonebook 2-16 Сору.....2-42

Default number 2-42
Delete
Edit 2-42
Group 2-41
Save 2-18
Search 2-21
Set Secret mode 2-40
Setting search method
Picture browser
PIN
PIN Certification
PIN lock
PIN2
Position
Closed Position
Open Position1-5
Viewer Position 1-5
Power On/Off 1-9
Prediction On/Off2-40
Preferred network
Print still images
PUK Code

#### R

Receive a call
Receive Video Call
Record
Reject incoming calls

Edit black list13-25
Payphone
Reject list 13-25
Side key 13-19
Unavailable13-25
Unknown 13-25
Withheld 13-25
Reset settings11-12
Ringtone reducer13-25

Saved pages5-7
Delete
Rename5-24
Save
View
Secret data folder11-6
Secret mode11-5
Security code1-16
Select function from Main Menu
Select function with Switch Bar
Select item with keypad2-2
Select network
Send DTMF
Set Default memory13-28
Shortcuts
Show my number
Side key

Simple search
Slide call 13-19
Slide show
Softkeyvi
Software update 14-10
Sounds & Alerts 1-12
Speaker phone call
Speed dial
SSL/TLS
Standby Window 1-18
Add member 1-21, 1-22
Add news content 1-20, 1-22
Add/overwrite shortcut
Cancel shortcut1-22
Change mode1-19
Display settings1-18
News mode
Shortcut mode display settings1-19
Use communication mode1-21
Use shortcut mode1-19
Stopwatch 9-14
Streaming5-8
SVG-T/Flash <sup>®</sup> viewer 2-27
S! Addressbook Back-up 12-13
Sync log12-16
Sync mode12-13
S! Appli
Activate8-10
Backlight

# Appendix

14-2<mark>3</mark>

S!	Delete       8-17         Details       8-16         Download       8-11         Exit/Pause       8-10         Lock       8-16         Network S! Appli       8-10         Permission       8-16         Reset settings       13-9         Resume       8-11         Settings       13-9         Sort       13-9         Unlock       8-16         Vibration       13-9         Volume       13-9         Circle Talk       10-6         Delete       10-14
	Members list 10-9
S!	Familiar Input13-18
S!	Familiar Usability         2-8           Cancel         2-8           Download         2-8           Set         2-8
	Friend's Status         10-2           Members list         10-2, 10-3           My Status         10-3, 10-5           S! Friend's Status notification         10-3           Town         5-13
	10WII

Tasks
Delete
Text
Text entry
Сору 2-39
Cursor position 2-39
Cut
Delete
Edit
Enter emoticon
Enter pictogram 2-13
Enter symbol
Entry Mode
Paste
Quick Address List 2-39
Quote
Undo
Time zone13-18

#### l

USB connection12-9
User's dictionary2-14
Add
USIM Card14-4
Insert/remove14-5
USIM lock11-4
USIM password11-4

vFile2-24, 2-46
Via infrared 12-2
Authorization Code12-2
Receive data 12-3, 12-4
Send data 12-3, 12-4
Vibration
Video Call
Adjust ringtone volume
Alternative picture
Auto answer
Mute
Put a call on hold
Retry with13-24
Show my image13-24
View Account details 2-23
Voice Call
Adjust ringtone volume
Put a call on hold
Voice mail service
Voice Recognition
Voice recorder9-9
Lock/Unlock sound files
Play sound files9-10
Record settings9-23
Record sound9-9
Send sound files9-22

# Appendix

#### M

#### /

Yahoo! Keitai
Certificates
Clear cache
Cookie setting 5-16
Copy text
Delete cookies
Details 5-16
Enter URL
Font size
Manufacture number
Refresh 5-14
Reset settings 5-16
Root certificates
Save image5-15, 5-17
Save sound
Script
Search 5-15
Send URL

Appendix



#### **Objective Index**

#### Adjust volume

Hearing volume	3-23, 13-26
Media Player	13-7
Phone sounds	1-11
Ringtone volume	. 1-11, 3-3, 3-6
S! Appli	13-9

#### Back up

Memory card.												12-10
Phonebook												12-13

#### Cancel/Unlock

Mode ..... 1-11

Network Password ..... 3-21

Phone Password 11-	2
PIN 11-	3
PIN2	3

#### Сору

2-30
2-44
2-42
2-39

#### Delete/Clear

Calendar
File/Folder
Messages 4-15, 4-26
Phonebook
S! Appli
S! Circle Talk 10-14
Tasks9-22

#### Edit

Calendar													9-	18
Phonebook													2-	42
Text			•				•			•	•		2-	14

#### Insert/Remove

Battery 1	4-3
Memory Card	-36
USIM Card 1	4-5

#### Make

Emergency call 1-17, 1-18
International call
Video Call
Voice Call

#### Play

,
Voice recorder9-10
Answering Machine
Media Player
TV Player

#### Protect/Lock

File	6
Messages	23
Phonebook Secret mode2-4	0
S! Appli	6

#### Receive

Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> 12	2-7, 12-8
Messages 4-	13, 4-25
Via infrared 12	2-3, 12-4

#### Reset

Account details2-43
All reset
Call time & cost
PC site browser5-21
Reset settings11-12
S! Appli
Yahoo! Keitai5-16

#### Save

Facial Recognition11-8
Messages
Phonebook 2-16, 2-18
S! Friend's Status 10-2, 10-3
Standby Window
User's dictionary2-15

Appendix

#### Search

Bluetooth®	 	 	 	12-6
Multi Search	 	 	 	2-4
Phonebook .	 	 	 	2-21

#### Send

Bluetooth®		1	2-7, 12-8
Manufacture	number	5-16, 5-2	1, 13-10
Messages			.4-3, 4-8
URL		. 5-15, 5-16, 5-	20, 5-21
Via infrared.		1	2-3, 12-4

#### Set

All keys lock
Answering Machine
Any key answer 13-19
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> 12-6
Calendar
Call barring
Call forwarding
Call waiting
Clock/Calendar
Date & Time 13-18
Facial Recognition
Images
International code
Manner mode
Media Player
Mode 1-11
Offline mode
Phone lock 11-4
Phone sounds

Phonebook
Photo/Video
Reject incoming calls
S! Appli
S! Familiar Usability2-8
Secret mode
Side key
Simple search
Sounds & Alerts
Standby Window
TV Alarm 6-14
Voice mail

#### Show

Calendar
Call log
Cost after call 13-23
Data Folder
Standby Window 1-18

#### View

Account details
Calendar
Call log
Call time & cost
Memory status
Messages 4-9, 4-12, 4-23, 4-26



#### Advanced Settings Index

Account Details 2-43
Alarm
Bar Code Reader
Basic Operations
•
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> Settings 12-15
Bookmarks
Calendar
Call Logs 3-26
Capturing Still Images 7-16
Conference Call 3-27
Currency or Unit Conversion
Editing Still Images 7-19
Facial Recognition 11-13
File Viewer
File/Folder Management 2-45
Folder Management 4-26
Memory Status
Music Playback8-11
Notepad
Page Operations 5-22
PC Site Browser 5-19
Phonebook
Playlist 8-15
Received Messages 4-22
Recording Videos 7-18

S! Addressbook Back-up 12-16
S! Appli 8-16
S! Circle Talk 10-14
S! Friend's Status 10-12
S! Quick News 5-25
S! Town 5-26
Saved Pages 5-24
Sending S! Mail 4-18
Sending SMS 4-21
Slide Show 2-38
Standby Window Settings 1-22
Streaming 5-24
Tasks 9-21
Text Entry 2-39
Timer/Timer Recording 6-16
TV
TV Operation
User's Dictionary 2-40
Using & Managing Messages 4-23
Video Call 3-24
Video Playback 8-13
Viewing Files 2-44
Voice Call
Voice Recorder 9-22
World Clock
Yahoo! Keitai 5-14

# Appendix

14-28

#### Warranty & Service

#### Warranty

820SC purchase includes Warranty.

- Confirm shop name and date of purchase.
- Read through the contents of the Warranty and keep it in a safe place.
- The warranty period can be found in the Warranty.

SoftBank is not liable for damage to you or a third party from missed calls, etc. due to handset failure or malfunction, etc.

#### **Repair Requests**

Before submitting 820SC for repair, consult the "Troubleshooting" for a solution. If a problem persists, contact Customer Service (�P.14-30) or the nearest SoftBank shop; be prepared to describe problem in detail.

- During the warranty period, repairs will be made under the terms and conditions described in the warranty.
- After the warranty period, repairs will be upon request; if said repairs can be made, you will be charged for them.

#### Note

- 820SC files and settings may be lost or altered due to accidents or repairs. Keep a copy of important files, etc. like Phonebook entries. SoftBank is not liable for damage resulting from accidental loss or alteration of 820SC files (Phonebook, Data Folder, etc.) or settings.
- Disassembling or modifying this product may be a violation of the Radio Law. Note that SoftBank will not accept repair requests for disassembled or modified products.

#### **Customer Service**

For SoftBank handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Customer Center
From a SoftBank handset, dial 157 for General Information, or 113 for
Customer Assistance, toll free

#### SoftBank Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial +81-3-5351-3491 (Please take care to dial correctly. International charges will apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Areas	Contact	
	General Information	(Toll-free) 0088-240-157 (Toll-free)
	Customer Assistance	(Garage 0088-240-113 (Toll-free)
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	(🕼)0088-241-157 (Toll-free)
	Customer Assistance	(Constant) (Coll-free)
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	(Toll-free) 0088-242-157 (Toll-free)
	Customer Assistance	(Toll-free) (Toll-free)
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	🕼 0088-250-157 (Toll-free)
	Customer Assistance	(Toll-free) (Toll-free)

<mark>1</mark>4-30

### SoftBank 820SC User Guide

March 2008, First Edition

#### SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For more information, please visit your nearest SoftBank Shop.



To help protect the environment and recycle valuable resources, mobile phone, and PHS shops displaying the above mark accept mobile phones, batteries, and chargers of all manufacturers.

Mobile phones, batteries, and chargers collected for recycling cannot be returned.

To protect your privacy, delete any personal information (telephone numbers, call log records, messages, etc.) beforehand.

Model Name: SoftBank 820SC Manufacturer: Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.